



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

100

100

7

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED

TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

BY THE LATE

ALEXANDER ADAM, LL.D.

RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habeat operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa; quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit.

QUINTILIAN. l. 4. 5.

A NEW EDITION,

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED,

BY WILLIAM PEPER, A.M. LL.D.

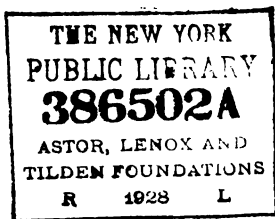
PROFESSOR OF HUMANITY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST ANDREW'S.

EDINBURGH :

BELL & BRADFUTE, 12. BANK STREET ;

LONGMAN & CO., WHITTAKER & CO., SIMPKIN, MARSHALL & CO.,
& AYLOTT & JONES, LONDON.

MDCCCXLVI.



THE Copyright of this Book was given to the Society of Burgh and Parochial Schoolmasters of Scotland by Dr WALTER ADAM, son of the Author, the late Dr ALEXANDER ADAM, in pursuance of the known wish of his father that it should serve as the commencement of a Series of School-books to be published under the immediate inspection of the Society.—A Premium for each subsequent Edition has accordingly been paid by the Publishers, and applied to the uses of the Fund for the Relief of the Widows and Children of the Burgh and Parochial Schoolmasters of Scotland,—of which Dr ADAM had been a zealous promoter.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE present edition of this excellent elementary work has been carefully revised and corrected. It has been compared throughout with the last edition superintended by the author ; and many errors which appear in recent impressions have been detected and removed. In order to secure accuracy of pronunciation, and promote an early practical acquaintance with Prosody, the quantities of syllables have been marked to a much greater extent than formerly. The quotations and references with which the work abounds have been compared with the original authorities, and rectified in numerous instances. The object of the Editor has been, not to make any alteration on the body of the work, but to restore the text to its original integrity ; and it is hoped that this edition will be found more accurate than any that has preceded it.

WILLIAM PYPER.

1928
SEP
S
HIGH SCHOOL, EDINBURGH, }
April 1841.

STER FROM C. O.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

MAN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought ; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, "two mans," instead of "two men ;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts, but judgment must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The Principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Children first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known

to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts; we must divide and analyse them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged: Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention; and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects; and then we learn the words which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs, employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyse our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the na-

ture of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules, which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has been generally preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has been paid to the study of English Grammar; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference, which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary; and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order, therefore, to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the Compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr Harris's *Hermes*, with regard to the principles of universal Grammar; to Wallis and Dr Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject, must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay, that arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles, and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters; and the committing of these to memory, together with the examples, will, to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammars may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The Compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of, both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom: and the attention which they have been pleased to pay it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection.

EDINBURGH, *May* 1772.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE THIRD EDITION.

In this Edition there are several improvements. — In *Etymology*, under the different terminations of nouns and verbs, are enumerated, in alphabetical order, not only all the simple and primitive words of the Latin tongue, but also the most common derivatives and compounds, with their signification, gender, declension, conjugation, and quantity carefully marked; so that the Learner may see the various accidents of each word at once, without being obliged to consult different books for that purpose, or in the same book to turn to one place for the gender of a noun, to another place for its declension, and to a third place for its quantity.

The *Syntax* is greatly enlarged, by the addition of many useful observations and examples; and particularly by a full explanation of the different meanings and construction of Verbs and Prepositions, and of those Phrases which occasion most difficulty to Learners, collected from the Classics, and from the best writers on Latinity.

By the natural division of words and sentences into Simple and Compound, no rule or example is introduced in *Syntax* or *Prosody*, till the learner is properly prepared, by what goes before, to understand it; which is not the case in the Latin Grammars commonly used; where, not to mention other instances, the construction of the Relative, which requires a previous acquaintance with most of the other rules of construction, is placed near the beginning of *Syntax*; and, what appears still more preposterous, in *Prosody*, the rules concerning the quantity of compounds are placed before those concerning the quantity of simple words. These improprieties in arrangement occasion greater inconvenience to Learners than is generally imagined.

After the *Syntax*, there is a brief account and explanation of the various *Tropes* and *Figures* of words and of thought, which occur in the Classics, compiled from the most approved authors, chiefly from *Quintilian*, and *Marsais sur les Tropes*.

The greatest care has every where been taken, to make the translation of Latin words and phrases subservient to the knowledge of English.

These, and several other particulars, not mentioned, it is hoped, will be found to be improvements of some importance in the plan of Education.—1786.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

The Compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin Verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius*, *Diomedes*, *Priscianus*, *Probus*, *Donatus*, *Servius*, *Victorinus*, *Augustinus*, *Cassiodorus*, *Macrobius*, *Beda*, *Alcuinus**, &c. have no verse rules; and so in later times, *Perotte*, *Manutius*, *Erasmus*, *Valerius*, *Buchanan*, *Milton*, &c. Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The Compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia, anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer, but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the Compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar, *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar, was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first master of St Paul's School in London, by Dr Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was cotemporary with Despauter. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors, as *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddi-*

* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

man, &c. to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily ; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the principles of Grammar in Latin verse ; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded on reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account, the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar ; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys ; and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the Compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book ; and such as choose it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the Rules of Latin Grammar in French verse. Some authors in England, as *Clarke*, *Phillips*, &c. have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflection of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better ; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules, in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself ; because though the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning : Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory ; as when there is a number of exceptions

from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage : and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short a time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison ; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition, is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the means of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the ancient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek, so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin ; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek ; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English, in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it, boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr Lowth, to use his own words, “ the connection of the English with the “ Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, “ might be of good service *.”

EDINBURGH, *Oct. 25. 1793.*

* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated Cuddesdon, Sept. 27. 1771.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of LETTERS,	1
Diphthongs, ...	2
Syllables, ...	3
Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS, ...	4
Division of WORDS or PARTS of SPEECH, ...	ib.
The ARTICLE ;—wanting in Latin, ...	6
I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE, ...	6
English Nouns, ...	ib.
Latin Nouns, ...	9
DECLENSION of NOUNS, ...	ib.
GENDER of NOUNS, ...	10
First Declension, ...	13
Second Declension, ...	19
Third Declension, ...	28
Fourth Declension, ...	47
Fifth Declension, ...	49
IRREGULAR NOUNS, ...	ib.
DIVISION of NOUNS, according to their signification and derivation,	56
ADJECTIVE, ...	58
Numeral Adjectives, ...	66
COMPARISON of Adjectives, ...	69
II. PRONOUN, ...	72
English Pronouns, ...	ib.
Latin Pronouns, ...	73
1. Simple Latin Pronouns, ...	ib.
2. Compound Latin Pronouns, ...	76
III. VERB, ...	78
English Verbs, ...	81
CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS, ...	86
First Conjugation, ...	90
Second Conjugation, ...	95
Third Conjugation, ...	97
Fourth Conjugation, ...	98
FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs, ...	99
SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES, ...	100

	Page.
VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION, ...	104
SECOND CONJUGATION, ...	108
THIRD CONJUGATION, ...	112
FOURTH CONJUGATION, ...	122
DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS, ...	124
IRREGULAR VERBS, ...	128
DEFECTIVE VERBS, ...	133
IMPERSONAL VERBS, ...	135
REDUNDANT VERBS, ...	136
<i>Obsolete Conjugation</i> , ...	138
DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of VERBS, ...	ib.
IV. PARTICIPLE, ...	140
V. ADVERB, ...	142
VI. PREPOSITION, ...	143
VII. INTERJECTION, ...	149
VIII. CONJUNCTION, ...	ib.
Part III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, which treats of SENTENCES, ...	151
Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound, ...	152
I. SIMPLE SENTENCES, ...	ib.
CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences, ...	ib.
GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences, ...	157
I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES, ...	ib.
II. Government of ADJECTIVES, ...	160
III. Government of VERBS, ...	166
1. VERBS governing only one case, ...	ib.
2. VERBS governing two cases, ...	173
Government of PASSIVE VERBS, ...	177
of IMPERSONAL VERBS, ...	179
Construction of the INFINITIVE, ...	181
of PARTICIPLES, &c.	182
of GERUNDS, ...	183
of SUPINES, ...	186
of ADVERBS, ...	187
Government of ADVERBS, ...	189
of PREPOSITIONS, ...	190
Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES, ...	196
1. Price, ...	ib.
2. Manner and Cause, ...	197
3. Place, ...	ib.
4. Measure and Distance, ...	201
5. Time, ...	ib.
I. COMPOUND SENTENCES, ...	202
Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions, ...	203

	Page.
Construction of RELATIVES, ...	203
of CONJUNCTIONS, ...	206
of COMPARATIVES, ...	211
The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, ...	213

APPENDIX to SYNTAX ; containing

I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS, ...	216
II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX, ...	236
III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION, ...	240
IV. Different kinds of STYLE, ...	243
V. FIGURES of RHETORIC, ...	245
1. Figures of Words, or TROPES, ...	ib.
2. Repetition of Words, ...	250
3. Figures of Thought, ...	251

Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity of
Syllables, of Accent and Verse, ... 254

I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, ...	ib.
1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables, ...	257
2. Quantity of final Syllables, ...	264
3. Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds, ...	268
II. ACCENT, ...	270
III. VERSE, ...	271
The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING, ...	ib.
Different kinds of Verses, ...	272
FIGURES in SCANNING, ...	277
Different kinds of POEMS, ...	280
Combination of Verses in Poems, ...	281
Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan, ...	282
ENGLISH VERSE, ...	285

APPENDIX I. Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	291
II. Declension of Substantives joined with Adjectives, Conjugation of Simple Verbs, &c.	296
III. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar, ...	309

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words ; Words consist of one or more syllables ; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of Letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five ; A, a ; B, b ; C, c ; D, d ; E, e ; F, f ; G, g ; H, h ; I, i ; J, j ; K, k ; L, l ; M, m ; N, n ; O, o ; P, p ; Q, q ; R, r ; S, s ; T, t ; U, u ; V, v ; X, x ; Y, y ; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w*.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels ; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself ; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel ; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound* ; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are *p, b ; t, d ; c, k, q*, and *g* ; but *b, d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*, because their sound may be continued ; whereas the sound of *p, t, k*, cannot be prolonged. *C* and *G*, when sounded softly, are semi-vowels ; as in *face, age*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as, *pe, be, &c.* : but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are *x, z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks*, or *gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly ; as, *freeze, frozen, brazen*.

In Latin, *x*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *you, your, yes, year, youth*. It is always reckoned a consonant when it begins a word, and elsewhere a vowel.

So *w* ; as in *was, were, wo, woo, water, wall, ware, &c.* ; but in *crew, drew, now, sow, down, drown, &c.* it is properly a vowel.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong* ; as *oi* in *voice*, *ou* in *ounce* : if not, an *Improper Diphthong* ; as *ea* in *eagle*, *oa* in *boat*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned

three ; *au, eu, ei* ; as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three ; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia* ; *oi*, as in *Troia* ; and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two ; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ* ; as, *aetas*, or *ætas* ; *oe*, or *æ* ; as, *poena*, or *pæna* ; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas, poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which, practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded ; as in *beauty, lieutenant, adieu, purlieu*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice ; as, *a, to, strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds ; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it ; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g, q, or s*, as in *lingua, qui, suadeo* ; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables* ; of two, *Dissyllables* ; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up ; as, *up-on, with-out, un-even, dis-ease, &c.* ; and so in Latin words, *ab-ūtor, in-ops, proptēr-ea, et-ēnim, vēl-ut, &c.* In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb ; as, *lov-ed, lov-ing, lov-eth, will-ing, &c.*

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-] ; as, *amāre* ; or sometimes with a circumflex accent, thus, [^] ; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus, [ˇ] ; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Ety-mology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and, 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, “*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home,*” the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ēgo*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other word; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piētās*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were

said to be declined or inflected. But *Declension*, or *Inflection*, is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

A is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite* Article.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of names undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common nouns, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number; *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*. We also say, *many a man*, for *many men*.

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser*," "*the better*;" "*the more* I think of it, *the better* I like it."

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy*, *school*, *book*.

Substantives are of two sorts ; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals ; as the names of persons and places : such are *Cæsar, Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts ; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them ; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name ; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude : men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind ; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it ; as when we say of some great conqueror, " He is *an* Alexander ;" or, " *The* Alexander of his age." So we say of a distinguished orator or poet, " He is *the* Cicero, or *the* Virgil of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns* ; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number* ; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male, or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender* ; females, of the *feminine* ; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender* ; that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most other modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive : in Latin, by declension, or by different cases ; that is, by changing the termination of the noun ; as, *rex*, a king, or the king ; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by

adding an *s*, with an apostrophe or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the '*s*' a contraction for *his*: but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that, by the addition of the '*s*', the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings* *. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*: but here there are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings*; *church, churches*; *brush, brushes*; *kiss, kisses*; *witness, witnesses*; *fox, foxes*; *leaf, leaves*; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Nouns ending in *o* have sometimes *es*; as, *cargo, cargoes*; so, *echo, heroes*, *negro, manifestos*, *potato, volcanos*, *wo*; and sometimes only *s*, when the *o* is preceded by *i*; as, *folio, nuncio, punctilio, seraglio*; *folios, nuncios*, &c.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as, *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men*, &c. for *brotheren, sowen*, &c. Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries*; *city, cities*; *cherry's, city's*, &c. are in the possessive case.

But *y* with a vowel before it is not changed; as, *day, days*; *delay, delays*; so, *key, journey, attorney, joy*, &c. *Penny* makes *pence*, or *pennies*, when the coin is meant; *die, dice*, for play; *die, dies*, for coining.

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly; as, *mouse, mice*; *louse, lice*; *tooth, teeth*; *foot, feet*; *goose, geese*, &c.

The words *sheep, deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, others only in the plural form; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride*, &c. and *bellows, scissors, lungs, bowels*, &c.

* But the apostrophe is now commonly added after such nouns; as, *for goodness' sake, soldiers' wives, servants' wages*, &c.

Nouns adopted from the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin languages, form the plural variously; as, *Cherub*, *cherubim*; *seraph*, *seraphim*:—*Automaton*, *automata*; so, *criterion*, *phenomënon*:—*Antithësis*, *antithëses*; so, *axis*, *basis*, *crisis*, *diarësis*, *ellipsis*, *emphäsis*, *metamorphösis* (pronounced short in English, though long in Greek and Latin):—*Arcanum*, *arcana*; so, *datum*, *effluvium*, *erratum*, *medium*, *stratum*: *encomium*, *encomia* (or in the English form, *encomiums*); so, *memorandum*: *magus*, *magi*; *radius*, *radii*: *genius*, *genii*, when denoting aerial spirits; *geniuses*, (in the English manner,) when signifying men of genius: *index*, *indexes*, when it signifies pointers, or tables of contents; *indices*, when referring to Algebraic quantities; so, *appendix*: *genus*, *genera*; *lamina*, *laminae*; *calx*, *calces*; *vortex*, *vortices*; *stamen*, *stamina*; and some others, which, by a small knowledge of Latin, will be better understood. Some words are used only in the plural; as, *antipödes*, *credenda*, *literäti*, *minutiæ*, &c. Some are the same in both numbers, as in Latin, *hiätus*, *apparätus*, *series*, *species*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender; as, *prince*, *princess*; *actor*, *actress*; *lion*, *lioness*; *hero*, *heroine*; *duke*, *duchess*; *count*, *countess*, &c.

To these add, *Abbot*, *abbess*; *administrator*, *administratrix*; *adulterer*, *adulteress*; *ambassador*, *ambadress*; *arbiter*, *arbitress*; *bridegroom*, *bride*; *benefactor*, *benefactress*; *caterer*, *cateress*; *chanter*, *chantress*; *conductor*, *conductress*; *deacon*, *deaconess*; *elector*, *electress*; *emperor*, *empress*; *enchanter*, *enchantress*; *executor*, *executrix* (with the penult short, though long in Latin); *governor*, *governess*; *heir*, *heiress*; *hunter*, *huntress*; *host*, *hostess*; *Jew*, *Jewess*; *Landgrave*, *Landgravine*; *Marquis*, *Marchioness*; *master*, *mistress*; *mayor*, *mayoress*; *patron*, *patroness*; *peer*, *peeress*; *poet*, *poetess*; *priest*, *priestess*; *prior*, *prioress*; *prophet*, *prophetess*; *protector*, *protectress*; *shepherd*, *shepherdess*; *songster*, *songstress*; *sorcerer*, *sorceress*; *Sultan*, *Sultanness* or *Sultāna*; *tiger*, *tigress*; *traitor*, *traitress*; *tutor*, *tutoress*; *Viscount*, *Viscountess*; *votary*, *votaress*; *widower*, *widow*.

Different words are also used, as in Latin, for distinguishing the sex; thus, *father*, *mother*; *son*, *daughter*; *brother*, *sister*; *husband*, *wife*; *uncle*, *aunt*; *nephew*, *niece*; *boy*, *girl*; *lad*, *lass*; *king*, *queen*; *lord*, *lady*; *friar*, *nun*; *bachelor*, *maid*; *boar*, *sow*; *buck*, *doe*; *bull*, *cow*; *bullock* or *steer*, *heifer*; *cock*, *hen*; *dog*, *bitch*; *drake*, *duck*; *gander*, *goose*; *hart*, *roe*; *horse*, *mare*; *ram*, *ewe*; *sloven*, *slut*; *stag*, *hind*; *wizard*, *witch*, &c. Sometimes a noun or pronoun is prefixed to the substantive; as, *a man-servant*, *a maid-servant*; *a male-child*, *a female-child*; *a cock-sparrow*, *a hen-sparrow*; *a he-goat*, *a she-goat*; *a he-bear*, *a she-bear*, &c. Without the word prefixed, these nouns are either masculine or feminine. So, *parent*, *cousin*, *friend*, *neighbour*, *singer*, and several others, are used indifferently for males and females.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender; unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as

persons ; as when we say of the sun, *he shines* ; or of the moon, *she shines* ; and of a ship, *she sails*.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

There are six cases, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions*.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cădo* to fall, because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore named *căsus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *căsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another, by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *ae* or *æ* diphthong ; the second has *i* ; the third has *is* ; the fourth has *us* ; and the fifth has *ei* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns are said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the sin-

gular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma*; *Anchises, Anchise*; *Pāris, Pāri*; *Panthus, Panthu*; *Pallas, -antis, Palla*; names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *O Achilles*, rarely *-e*: *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e*: and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thāis, Mýsis, Pallas, -ādis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duodēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>a king.</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>kings.</i>

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the king.</i>	Ab. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the kings.</i>

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *Hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adōlescens,	{ a young man or woman.	Conjux, a husband or	Nēmo, nobody.
Jūvēnis,		wife.	Obses, a hostage.
Affinis, a relation or connection by mar- riage.		Conviva, a guest.	Patruēlis, a cousin-ger- man by the father's
Antistes, a prelate.		Custos, a keeper.	Præs, a surety. [side.
Auctor, an author.		Dux, a leader.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
Augur, a soothsayer.		Hæres, an heir.	Sacerdos, a priest or
Cānis, a dog or bitch.		Hostis, an enemy.	priestess.
Civis, a citizen.		Infans, an infant.	Sus, a swine.
Cliens, a client.		Interpres, an interpreter.	Testis, a witness.
Cōmes, a companion.		Jūdex, a judge.	Vātes, a prophet or prophetess.
		Martyr, a martyr.	Vindex, an avenger*.
		Miles, a soldier.	
		Mūnceps, a burgess.	

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistīta*, *clīenta*,

* *Conjux, atque pārens, infans, patruēlis, et hæres, Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et hostis, Augur, et antistes, jūvēnis, conviva, sacerdos, Muni-que-ceps, vates, adolescens, civis, et auctor, Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bos-que, canis-que, Interpres-que, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr, et obses.*—RUDN.

hospita ; in the same manner with *leo*, a lion, *leona*, a lioness ; *equus*, *equa* ; *mulus*, *mula* ; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective ; as, *advēna*, a stranger ; *agricōla*, a husbandman ; *assec̃la*, an attendant ; *accōla*, a neighbour ; *exul*, an exile ; *latro*, a robber ; *fur*, a thief ; *ōpifex*, a mechanic, &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter ; as, *scortum*, a courtesan ; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *ōpēræ*, slaves or day-labourers ; *vīgilīæ*, watches by night ; *excūbiæ*, watches by day or night ; *noxæ*, guilty persons, though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine ; so, *āquīla*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmīna* ; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow ; *fēmīna passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *flūvius*, and *mons*, are masculine ; as, hic *Aprilis*, April ; hic *Aquīlo*, the north wind ; hic *Afrīcus*, the south-west wind ; hic *Tibēris*, the river Tiber ; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination ; as, hæc *Matrōna*, the river Marne in France ; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily ; hoc *Sōracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine ; as, hæc *Ægyptus*, Egypt ; *Sāmos*, an island of that name ; *Cōrinthus*, the city of Corinth ; *pōmus*, an apple-tree ; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship.—Thus also the names of poems ; as, hæc *Ilias*, *-ādos*, and *Odyssēa*, the

t. , poems of Homer ; hæc *Ænëis*, -*idos*, a poem of Virgil ; hæc *Terentiūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination ; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name ; hic *Sulmo*, -*ōnis* ; *Pessinus*, -*untis* ; *Hydrus*, -*untis*, names of towns ; hæc *Persis*, -*idis*, the kingdom of Persia ; *Carthāgo*, -*inis*, the city Carthage ; hoc *Albion*, Britain ; hoc *Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine ; as, *gelidā Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190 ; *alta Ilion*, Ovid, Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine : *ōleaster*, -*tri*, a wild olive-tree ; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine : *cýttus*, a kind of shrub ; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush ; *lārix*, the larch-tree ; *lōtus*, the lote-tree ; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine ; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter ; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree ; *ligustrum*, a privet : so likewise are *sūber*, -*ēris*, the cork-tree ; *sīler*, -*ēris*, the osier ; *rōbur*, -*ōris*, oak of the hardest kind ; *ācer*, -*ēris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter ; as, *arbustum*, *quercētum*, *esculētum*, *sālictum*, *frūticētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow : also the names of fruits and timber ; as, *pōmum*, or *mālum*, an apple ; *pīrum*, a pear ; *ebēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

OBS. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender* ; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another ; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine ; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are : Nom. and Voc. Sing. *ā* ; Gen. and Dat. *ae* or *æ* diphthong ; Acc. *am* ; Abl. *ā* ; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *ae* or *æ* ; Gen. *ārum* ; Dat. and Abl. *īs* ; Acc. *ās* ; thus :

Penna, a pen, Fem.		Te lion- ns.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. Penna, a pen.	N. Pennæ, pens.	ă, æ.	
G. Pennæ, of a pen.	G. Pennarum, of pens.	æ, ārum.	
D. Pennæ, to a pen.	D. Pennis, to pens.	æ, is.	
A. Pennam, a pen.	A. Pennas, pens.	am, ās.	
V. Penna, O pen.	V. Pennæ, O pens.	ă, æ.	
A. Pennâ, with a pen.	A. Pennis, with pens.	ă, is.	

In like manner decline,

Ăcerra, a censer.	Auriga, m. a charioteer.	Căterva, a body of men.
Acta, the shore.	Ăvia, a grandmother.	Căthedra, a chair, a pulpit.
Ăera, a period of time.	Axilla, the arm-pit.	Cauda, the tail.
Ăerumna, toil.	Bălœna, a whale.	Caula, a sheep-cote.
Ăgricôla, a husband.	Barba, a beard.	Causa, a cause.
Ăla, a wing. [man.	Bellua, any large beast.	Căverna, a cavern.
Ălăpa, a blow.	Bestia, a beast.	Căvilla, a banter.
Ălauda, a lark.	Bēta, beet, an herb.	Cella, a cell.
Alga, sea-weed.	Bibliöpôla, a bookseller.	Cēra, wax.
Ălŭta, tanned leather.	Bibliôthēca, a library.	Cērēmônia, a ceremony.
Ambrôsia, the food of the gods.	Blatta, a moth.	Cervisia, ale, beer.
Ămĭta, an aunt, the father's sister.	Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.	Cērussa, white lead, paint.
Amphōra, a cask.	Brassica, cauliflower.	Cetra, a square target.
Ampulla, a jug; plur. bombast.	Brŭma, the winter solstice.	Charta, paper.
Ămurca, the lees of oil.	Bucca, the hollow of the cheek.	Chorda, a string.
Ancilla, a handmaid.	Bulla, a bubble, a ball, or boss.	Cicăda, a kind of insect.
Anchōra, an anchor.	Byrsa, an ox-hide.	Cicōnia, a stork.
Anguilla, an eel.	Căliga, a kind of shoe set with nails.	Cicŭta, hemlock.
Ansa, a handle.	Caltha, marigold.	Cĭnăra, an artichoke.
Antenna, a sail-yard.	Calva, & Calvăria, a skull.	Cista, a chest.
Antlia, a pump.	Călumnia, a slander.	Cisterna, a cistern.
Ăqua, water.	Cămēna, a muse, a song.	Cĭthăra, a harp.
Ăquila, an eagle.	Cămēra, a vault.	Clăva, a club.
Ăra, an altar.	Campăna, a bell.	Clepsydra, an hour-glass.
Ărănea, a spider.	Canna, a cane or reed.	Cloăca, a sink.
Arca, a chest.	Candēla, a candle.	Cochlea, a snail.
Ardea, & -eôla, a heron.	Capra, a she-goat.	Cœna, a supper.
Ărea, an open place.	Capsa, a coffer.	Côlumba, a pigeon.
Ărēna, sand.	Cărina, the keel of a ship.	Côma, the hair.
Argilla, potter's earth.	Căsa, a cottage. [ny.	Cômœdia, a comedy.
Ărista, an ear of corn.	Castănea, a chestnut.	Concha, a shell.
Arrha, an earnest pen- Arvina, fat. [ny.	Cătăpulta, an engine to cast darts.	Côpia, plenty.
Ascia, an axe.	Cătēna, a chain.	Côpŭla, a bond.
Athlēta, m. a wrestler.		Corrigia, a shoe-latchet.
Aula, a hall.		Côrôna, a crown, a circle.
Aura, a breeze.		Cortina, a caldron.

<i>Costa, a rib.</i>	<i>Fovea, a pit.</i>	<i>Lacerna, a riding-coat.</i>
<i>Coxa, the haunch.</i>	<i>Frænea, a short spear.</i>	<i>Lacerta, a lizard.</i>
<i>Crâpula, a surfeit.</i>	<i>Fulca, a sea-fowl.</i>	<i>Lacunia, a fringe.</i>
<i>Crâtëra, a cup.</i>	<i>Funda, a sling.</i>	<i>Lacrÿma, a tear.</i>
<i>Crâticula, a gridiron.</i>	<i>Furca, a fork.</i>	<i>Lactuca, lettuce.</i>
<i>Crëna, a notch.</i>	<i>Fuscina, a trident.</i>	<i>Lacuna, a ditch.</i>
<i>Crëpida, a slipper.</i>	<i>Gälëa, a helmet.</i>	<i>Lägëna, a flagon.</i>
<i>Crëta, chalk.</i>	<i>Gallina, a hen. [ulcer.</i>	<i>Läma, a ditch.</i>
<i>Crista, a crest.</i>	<i>Gangræna, an eating</i>	<i>Lämia, a sorceress.</i>
<i>Crümëna, a purse.</i>	<i>Gaza, a treasure.</i>	<i>Lämina, a plate.</i>
<i>Crusta, & -um, a morsel.</i>	<i>Gemma, a gem.</i>	<i>Läna, wool.</i>
<i>Culecta, a cushion.</i>	<i>Gëna, the cheek.</i>	<i>Lancea, a lance or spear.</i>
<i>Cüllina, a kitchen.</i>	<i>Gënista, broom.</i>	<i>Länista, m. a fencing master.</i>
<i>Culpa, a fault.</i>	<i>Gingiva, the gum.</i>	<i>Larva, a mask.</i>
<i>Cümëra, a corn-basket.</i>	<i>Glärea, gravel.</i>	<i>Lätërna, a lantern.</i>
<i>Cûpa, a large cash.</i>	<i>Glëba, a clod.</i>	<i>Latrina, a house of office.</i>
<i>Cûra, care.</i>	<i>Gûla, the gullet.</i>	<i>Lectica, a sedan or chair.</i>
<i>Cûria, a senate-house.</i>	<i>Gutta, a drop.</i>	<i>Lëna, a band.</i>
<i>Currûca, a hedge-spar-row.</i>	<i>Häbëna, a rein.</i>	<i>Lëpra, the leprosy.</i>
<i>Cymba, a boat.</i>	<i>Hära, a hog-sty.</i>	<i>Libra, a pound.</i>
<i>Dëcompëda, a pole of ten feet.</i>	<i>Härûga, sacrifice.</i>	<i>Ligula, a latchet.</i>
<i>Diæta, diet, food.</i>	<i>Hasta, a spear.</i>	<i>Lima, a file.</i>
<i>Döläbra, an axe.</i>	<i>Hëdëra, ivy.</i>	<i>Linea, a line.</i>
<i>Drachma, a drachm; a weight or coin.</i>	<i>Herba, an herb.</i>	<i>Lingua, the tongue.</i>
<i>Ëpistola, a letter.</i>	<i>Herma, or -es, m. a statue of Mercury.</i>	<i>Lira, a ridge or furrow.</i>
<i>Eca, a bait.</i>	<i>Hernia, a rupture.</i>	<i>Litera, a letter.</i>
<i>Fäba, a bean.</i>	<i>Hilla, a sausage.</i>	<i>Löcusta, a locust.</i>
<i>Fäbula, a fable.</i>	<i>Höra, an hour.</i>	<i>Lücerna, a light.</i>
<i>Fäma, fame.</i>	<i>Hostia, a victim.</i>	<i>Lûna, the moon.</i>
<i>Färina, meal.</i>	<i>Hydria, a water-pot.</i>	<i>Luscinia, a nightingale.</i>
<i>Fascia, a bandage.</i>	<i>Jactura, loss.</i>	<i>Lympha, water.</i>
<i>Fävilla, embers.</i>	<i>Jänua, a gate.</i>	<i>Lÿra, a lyre.</i>
<i>Fënestra, a window.</i>	<i>Ïdea, a form, an idea.</i>	<i>Mächina, a machine.</i>
<i>Fëra, a wild beast.</i>	<i>Ïdiöta, m. an illiterate person.</i>	<i>Mactra, a kneading-trough.</i>
<i>Fërula, a rod.</i>	<i>Ignöminia, an affront.</i>	<i>Mäcûla, a stain.</i>
<i>Festûla, the shoot of a tree.</i>	<i>Illëcebra, an allure-ment.</i>	<i>Mäla, the cheek-bone.</i>
<i>Fibra, a fibre.</i>	<i>Impensa, expense.</i>	<i>Mäläcia, a calm.</i>
<i>Fibula, a clasp.</i>	<i>Indigëna, m. a native.</i>	<i>Malva, a mallow.</i>
<i>Fidëlia, an earthen vessel.</i>	<i>Inëdia, hunger.</i>	<i>Mamma, a pap.</i>
<i>Fimbria, a fringe. [sel.</i>	<i>Infûla, a mitre.</i>	<i>Mänica, a sleeve.</i>
<i>Fiscina, a bag or basket.</i>	<i>Injûria, a wrong.</i>	<i>Mantica, a wallet.</i>
<i>Fistûca, a rammer.</i>	<i>Ïnöpia, want.</i>	<i>Mappa, a napkin.</i>
<i>Fistula, a pipe.</i>	<i>Instita, a fringe.</i>	<i>Margärîta, a pearl.</i>
<i>Flamma, a flame.</i>	<i>Insûla, an island.</i>	<i>Marra, a mattock.</i>
<i>Fœmina, a woman.</i>	<i>Ïnûla, elicampane, an herb.</i>	<i>Massa, a lump.</i>
<i>Forma, a form.</i>	<i>Invidia, envy.</i>	<i>Mätëria, matter, stuff, timber.</i>
<i>Formica, an ant.</i>	<i>Îra, anger.</i>	<i>Mätërtëra, the mother's sister.</i>
<i>Fossa, a ditch.</i>	<i>Jûba, the mane.</i>	

Matta, a mat or mat-tress.	Ostrea, an oyster.	Plāga, a climate.
Mātūla, a chamber-pot.	Pænūla, a riding-coat.	Plāga, a blow.
Médulla, marrow.	Pāgina, a page.	Planta, a plant.
Membrāna, a thin skin, a film; parchment.	Pāla, a shovel.	Plātēa, or Plātēa, a broad street.
Mēmōria, memory.	Pālæstra, a wrestling, or place for it.	Plūma, a feather.
Mensa, a table.	Pālea, chaff.	Plūvia, rain.
Mensūra, a measure.	Pālinōdia, a recantation.	Pōdagra, the gout.
Merda, dung.	Palla, a large gown.	Pōna, a punishment.
Merga, a pitchfork.	Palma, the palm.	Poēta, m. a poet.
Mērūla, a blackbird.	Palpebra, the eye-lid.	Poētria, a poetess.
Mēta, a goal.	Pāpilla, the nipple.	Pōlenta, malt.
Mētāphōra, a trope.	Pāpūla, a pimple.	Pōlittia, polity.
Mīca, a crumb.	Pārābōla, comparing things together.	Pompa, a procession.
Mitra, a mitre.	Parma, a shield.	Pōpa, m. a priest who slew the sacrifice.
Mōla, a mill.	Parra, a jay.	Pōpina, a tavern.
Mōnēdūla, a jackdaw.	Pātēra, a goblet.	Porta, a gate.
Mōnēta, money.	Pausa, a stop or pause.	Præda, plunder.
Mōra, a delay.	Pēdica, a fetter.	Prærogātiva, sc. tribus, or centūria, that voted first.
Multa, or mulcta, a fine.	Pēnūla, a mantle.	Prēcella, a storm.
Mūræna, a lamprey.	Pēnūria, want.	Prōra, the prow.
Mūria, pickle, brine.	Pēra, a purse.	Prōsa, prose.
Mūsa, a muse.	Perca, a perch.	Prōsāpia, a race.
Musca, a fly.	Perfūga, m. a deserter.	Pruina, hoar-frost.
Mustēla, a weasel.	Pergāmēna, sc. charta, parchment.	Prūna, a burning coal.
Myrrha, myrrh.	Perna, a gammon of bacon.	Psaltria, a music girl.
Mýrica, a tamarisk.	Persōna, a mask.	Puella, a girl.
Mysta, or -es, m. a priest.	Pertica, a pole.	Pugna, a battle.
Nænia, a funeral song.	Petra, a rock.	Pulpa, the pulp.
Nassa, a net.	Phālārica, a long spear.	Pūpūla, the apple of the eye.
Nausea, sea-sickness.	Phāretra, a quiver.	Purpūra, purple.
Nauta, m. a mariner.	Phāsiāna, sc. avis, a pheasant.	Pustūla, a blister.
Nitēdūla, a field-mouse.	Phiāla, a vial.	Pūra, a funeral pile.
Norma, a rule.	Phillōmēla, a nightingale.	Quadra, & -um, a square.
Nōvācūla, a razor.	Phyllūra, the linden-tree, a leaf of paper.	Rābūla, m. a wrangler.
Nōverca, a stepmother.	Phōca, a sea calf.	Rāna, a frog.
Nympha, a nymph.	Pica, a magpie.	Rēpulsā, a refusal.
Occa, a harrow.	Pila, a ball.	Rēsina, resin.
Ocrea, a boot.	Pila, a pillar.	Rhēda, a chariot.
Ōda, or -e, an ode or song.	Pincerna, m. a butler.	Rīma, a chink.
Offa, a morsel.	Pinna, a fin, a wing.	Rīpa, a bank.
Ōlea, an olive.	Pirāta, a pirate.	Rixa, a scold.
Olla, a pot.	Piscina, a fish-pond.	Rōsa, a rose.
Ōra, a coast.	Pituita, phlegm.	Rōta, a wheel.
Orbīta, a path.	Plācenta, a cake.	Rūga, a wrinkle.
Orca, a jar.		Ruina, a downfall.
Orchestra, the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.		Runcina, a saw or plane.

Būta, <i>roe.</i>	Sōcordia, <i>sloth.</i>	Tābūla, <i>a table.</i>
Sāburra, <i>ballast.</i>	Sōlea, <i>a shoe.</i>	Tæda, <i>a torch.</i>
Sāga, <i>a sorceress.</i>	Sōphista, or -es, <i>m. a</i>	Tænia, <i>a ribbon.</i>
Sāgina, <i>cramming.</i>	<i>sophist.</i>	Techna, <i>a trick or wile.</i>
Sāgitta, <i>an arrow.</i>	Spēcūla, <i>a watch-tower.</i>	Tēgūla, <i>a tile.</i>
Sālebra, <i>a rugged way.</i>	Spēlunca, <i>a cave.</i>	Tēla, <i>a web.</i>
Sāliunca, <i>lavender.</i>	Sphæra, <i>a sphere.</i>	Tērebra, <i>a wimble.</i>
Sālva, <i>spittle.</i>	Spica, <i>an ear of corn.</i>	Terra, <i>the earth.</i>
Salpa, <i>stock-fish.</i>	Spina, <i>the back-bone.</i>	Tessera, <i>a dye.</i>
Sambūca, <i>a harp, or an</i>	Spīra, <i>a wreath.</i>	Testa, <i>an earthen pot.</i>
<i>engine of war.</i>	Sponda, <i>a bedstead.</i>	Textrina, <i>a weaver's</i>
Sanctimōnia, <i>devotion.</i>	Spongia, <i>a sponge.</i>	<i>shop.</i>
Sandāpīla, <i>a bier.</i>	Sponsa, <i>a bride.</i>	Thēca, <i>a case.</i>
Sanna, <i>a scoff.</i>	Sporta, <i>a basket.</i>	Tibia, <i>a pipe, the leg.</i>
Sarcīna, <i>a burden.</i>	Spūma, <i>foam.</i>	Tilia, <i>the linden-tree.</i>
Sārissa, <i>a long spear.</i>	Squāma, <i>a scale.</i>	Tinea, <i>a moth.</i>
Satrāpa, or -es, <i>m. a</i>	Squilla, <i>a prawn or</i>	Tonstrina, <i>a barber's</i>
<i>Persian governor.</i>	<i>shrimp.</i>	<i>shop.</i>
Sātūra, <i>a satire.</i>	Stātēra, <i>a balance.</i>	Trāgœdia, <i>a tragedy.</i>
Scandūla, <i>a lath to</i>	Stātua, <i>a statue.</i>	Trāgūla, <i>a javelin with</i>
<i>cover houses.</i>	Stella, <i>a star.</i>	<i>a barbed head.</i>
Scāpha, <i>a boat.</i>	Stipūla, <i>stubble.</i>	Trahea, <i>a sledge, a dray.</i>
Scāpūla, <i>the shoulder.</i>	Stiria, <i>an icicle.</i>	Trāma, <i>the woof.</i>
Scēna, <i>a stage.</i>	Stīva, <i>the plough-tail.</i>	Trochlea, <i>a pulley.</i>
Schēda, <i>a sheet or</i>	Stōla, <i>a gown.</i>	Trulla, <i>a trowel.</i>
<i>scroll.</i>	Strangūria, <i>making wa-</i>	Trūtina, <i>a balance.</i>
Schōla, <i>a school.</i>	<i>ter with great pain,</i>	Tūba, <i>a trumpet.</i>
Scintilla, <i>a spark.</i>	<i>strangury.</i>	Tūnica, <i>a waistcoat.</i>
Scriblita, <i>a tart or</i>	Strēna, <i>a new year's</i>	Turba, <i>a crowd.</i>
<i>wafer.</i>	<i>gift.</i>	Turma, <i>a troop.</i>
Serōfūla, <i>the king's evil.</i>	Strūma, <i>a botch.</i>	Ulna, <i>an ell.</i>
Scurra, <i>m. a buffoon.</i>	Stūpa, <i>tow.</i>	Ūlūla, <i>an owl.</i>
Scūtīca, <i>a scourge.</i>	Sublica, <i>a pile.</i>	Ulva, <i>sedge.</i>
Seytāla, <i>a kind of ser-</i>	Sūbūcūla, <i>a shirt.</i>	Umbra, <i>a shade.</i>
<i>pent, or round staff.</i>	Sūbūla, <i>an awl.</i> [con.	Unda, <i>a wave.</i>
Sēlibra, <i>half a pound.</i>	Succidia, <i>a flitch of ba-</i>	Ungūla, <i>a nail, the</i>
Sēmīhōra, <i>half an hour.</i>	Summa, <i>a sum, the</i>	<i>hoof.</i>
Sēmīta, <i>a path.</i>	<i>whole.</i>	Ūpūpa, <i>the hoopoo, a</i>
Sententia, <i>an opinion.</i>	Sūperbia, <i>pride.</i>	<i>bird.</i>
Sentīna, <i>a sink.</i>	Sūra, <i>the calf of the leg.</i>	Ūrina, <i>urine.</i>
Sēra, <i>a lock.</i>	Sūtrina, <i>sc. taberna, a</i>	Urna, <i>an urn.</i>
Serra, <i>a saw.</i>	<i>shoemaker's shop.</i>	Urtica, <i>a nettle.</i>
Sesquihōra, <i>an hour and</i>	Sūtūra, <i>a seam.</i>	Ūva, <i>a grape.</i>
<i>a half.</i>	Sycōphanta, <i>m. a shar-</i>	Vacca, <i>a cow.</i>
Sēta, <i>a bristle.</i>	<i>per.</i>	Vāgina, <i>a scabbard.</i>
Sibylla, <i>a prophetess.</i>	Syllāba, <i>a syllable.</i>	Vappa, <i>palled wine, a</i>
Sica, <i>a dagger.</i>	Symbōla, <i>a club, a share</i>	<i>spendthrift.</i>
Silliqua, <i>a husk.</i>	<i>of a reckoning.</i>	Vēna, <i>a vein.</i>
Silva, <i>a wood.</i>	Symphōnia, <i>harmony.</i>	Vēnia, <i>leave.</i>
Sīmia, <i>an ape.</i>	Syngrāpha, <i>a bill or</i>	Verna, <i>m. a home-born</i>
Sīmlla, <i>flower.</i>	<i>bond.</i>	<i>slave.</i>
Sītūla, <i>a bucket.</i>	Tāberna, <i>a shop.</i>	Verrūca, <i>a wart.</i>

Vēsica, the bladder.	Vindēmia, vintage.	Vita, life.
Vespa, a wasp.	Vindicta, vengeance; a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed.	Vitta, a fillet.
Via, a way.		Viverra, a ferret.
Vicia, a vetch or tare.	Viōla, a violet.	Vōla, the palm of the hand.
Victīma, a victim.	Vipēra, a viper.	Zōna, a girdle, a zone.
Victōria, a conquest.	Virga, a rod.	
Villa, a country-seat.		

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *plānēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole, and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmīlias*, the mistress of a family, gen. *mātris-fāmīlias*; plur. *mātres-fāmīlias*, or *mātres-fāmīliārum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, when it is necessary to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Ānīma, the soul, the life.	Fīlia, & Nāta, a daughter.
Dea, a goddess.	Liberta, a freed-woman.
Ēqua, a mare.	Mūla, a she-mule.
Fāmūla, a female servant.	

Thus, *deābus*, *filiābus*, unless construed with *duābus*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ēnēas*, *Aeneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ēnēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc. *-am* or *-an*; voc. *-ā*; abl. *-ā*. So, *Bōrēas*, *-æ*, the north wind; *tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the accusative, in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined:

Anchises, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Anchisēs.	<i>Acc.</i> Anchisēn.
<i>Gen.</i> Anchisæ.	<i>Voc.</i> Anchisē, v. Anchisā.
<i>Dat.</i> Anchisæ.	<i>Abl.</i> Anchisē, v. Anchisā.

Pēnēlōpē, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Pēnēlōpē,	<i>Acc.</i> Penelopēn,
<i>Gen.</i> Penelopēs,	<i>Voc.</i> Penelopē,
<i>Dat.</i> Penelopē,	<i>Abl.</i> Penelopē.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *as*, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*, m. the son of Atreus; *Persa*, for *Perses*, m. a Persian; *geōmetra*, for *-tres*, m. a geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *ēpitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *rhētōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clīnia*, for *Clīnias*, a man's name, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note.—We sometimes find the gen. plur. contracted in compound words, when they are masculine and patronymics; as, *Cælicolūm*, for *Cælicolarum*, Virg. *Æn.* iii. 21; *Æneidūm*, for *-arum*, ib. i. 565.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the Gen. Sing. in *i*; the Dat. and Abl. in *ō*; the Acc. in *um*; the Voc. like the Nom.; (but nouns in *us* make the vocative in *ē*); the Nom. and Voc. Plur. in *i*, or *ā*; the Gen. in *ōrum*; the Dat. and Abl. in *īs*; and the Acc. in *ōs*, or *ā*; as,

Gēner, a son-in-law, Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Terminations.
<i>Nom.</i> Gēner.	<i>Nom.</i> Gēnēri.	ēr, ir, ūs, i.
<i>Gen.</i> Genēri.	<i>Gen.</i> Generōrum.	i, ōrum.
<i>Dat.</i> Genero.	<i>Dat.</i> Generis.	ō, is.
<i>Acc.</i> Generum.	<i>Acc.</i> Generos.	um, ōs.
<i>Voc.</i> Gener.	<i>Voc.</i> Generi.	ēr, ir, ē, i.
<i>Abl.</i> Genero.	<i>Abl.</i> Generis.	ō, is.

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: so, *furcifer*, a villain; *Lūcifer*, the morning-star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour-bearer;

presbyter, an elder; *Mulctber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber*, -*ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the genitive long, and its compound *Celtiber*, -*ēri*; also, *vir*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *levir*, *soror*, a brother-in-law; *sēmivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *satur*, -*ūri*, full, (of old *sātūrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

Āger, a field, Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Ager</i> .	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Agri</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Agri</i> .	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Agrōrum</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Agro</i> .	<i>Dat.</i> <i>Agris</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Agrum</i> .	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Agros</i> .
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Ager</i> .	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Agri</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Agro</i> .	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Agris</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Āper</i> , a wild boar.	<i>Cāper</i> , a he-goat.	<i>Fāber</i> , a workman.
<i>Arbiter</i> , an arbiter or arbitrator, a judge.	<i>Cōlūber</i> , & - <i>bra</i> , a serpent.	<i>Māgister</i> , a master.
<i>Auster</i> , the south wind.	<i>Culter</i> , the coulter of a plough, a knife.	<i>Minister</i> , a servant.
<i>Cancer</i> , a crab-fish.		<i>Ōnāger</i> , a wild ass.
		<i>Scalper</i> , a lancet.

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names; as, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēleāger*, &c., gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Dōmīnus, a lord, Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Dōmīnus</i> .	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Dōmīni</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Domini</i> .	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Dominōrum</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Domino</i> .	<i>Dat.</i> <i>Dominis</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Dominum</i> .	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Dominos</i> .
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Domine</i> .	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Domini</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Domino</i> .	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Dominis</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Ābācus</i> , a table or desk.	<i>Angūlus</i> , a corner.	<i>Argentārius</i> , a banker.
<i>Ācervus</i> , a heap.	<i>Ānīmus</i> , the mind.	<i>Armus</i> , the shoulder of a beast; also of a man.
<i>Ācūleus</i> , a sting.	<i>Annus</i> , a year.	<i>Āsillus</i> , a gad-fly.
<i>Agnus</i> , a lamb.	<i>Annūlus</i> , a ring.	<i>Āsinus</i> , & - <i>a</i> , an ass.
<i>Alnus</i> , f. an alder-tree.	<i>Ānus</i> , a circle.	<i>Autumnus</i> , autumn.
<i>Alveus</i> , the channel of a river.	<i>Architectus</i> , a master-builder.	

Avuncŭlus, an uncle, the mother's brother.	Condus, a butler.	Fāgus, f. a beech-tree.
Avus, a grandfather.	Condylus, the knuckle.	Fāmŭlus, a man-servant.
Bajŭlus, a porter.	Congius, a gallon.	Fāvōnius, the west wind.
Barrus, an elephant.	Consōbrinus, a cousin- german by the mo- ther's side.	Fāvus, a honeycomb.
Bōlus, a morsel.	Contus, a long pole.	Figŭlus, a potter.
Bombus, a buzz.	Cōnus, a cone.	Fiscus, the exchequer.
Cāballus, a pack-horse.	Cōphŭnus, a basket.	Floccus, a lock of wool.
Cācābus, a kettle.	Cōquus, a cook.	Flūvius, a river.
Cāchinnus, a loud laugh.	Cornus, f. the cornel- tree.	Fōcus, a hearth.
Cādūceus, a wand.	Corvus, a raven.	Fraxinus, f. an ash-tree.
Cādus, a cask.	Cōrylus, f. a hazel-tree.	Fritillus, a dice-box.
Cālāmus, a reed.	Cōrymbus, a bunch of ivy berries.	Fūcus, a drone-bee, paint.
Cālāthus, a basket.	Cōryphæus, a ring- leader.	Fūmus, smoke. [dancer.
Calceus, a shoe.	Cōrytus, or -os, a bow- case.	Fūnambŭlus, a rope- dancer.
Callus, & -um, hard flesh, brown.	Cōthurnus, a buskin.	Fundus, a farm.
Cāmīnus, a chimney.	Cūbitus, a cubit.	Fungus, a mushroom.
Campus, a plain.	Cūcullus, a hood.	Furnus, an oven.
Cantharus, a cup or jug.	Cūcŭlus, or cūcŭlus, a cuckoo.	Fūsus, a spindle.
Cardus, a thistle.	Cūleus, a leathern bag.	Gallus, a cock.
Carpus, the wrist.	Culmus, a stalk.	Gērŭlus, a porter.
Carrus, & -um, a cart or car.	Culullus, a pot or jug.	Gibbus, a swelling.
Cāseus, cheese.	Cūmŭlus, a heap.	Glādius, a sword.
Cātālōgus, a roll.	Cūneus, a wedge.	Glōbus, a globe.
Cātinus, a platter.	Cūnicŭlus, a rabbit.	Grābātus, a couch.
Caurus, the north-west wind.	Cyāthus, a cup or glass.	Grācŭlus, a jackdaw.
Cedrus, f. a cedar-tree.	Cygnus, a swan.	Grūmus, a hillock.
Cervus, a stag.	Cylindrus, a roller.	Guttus, a cruet or vial.
Cētus, a whale, pl. ce- te, n. indecl.	Diālōgus, a discourse between two or more.	Gŷrus, a circle.
Chirurgus, a surgeon.	Dīgītus, a finger.	Hædus, a kid.
Chōrus, a choir.	Discus, a quoit.	Hāmus, a hook.
Cibus, meat.	Divus, a god.	Hāriōlus, a diviner.
Cīcīnnus, a curl.	Dōlus, deceit.	Hērus, a master.
Cinnus, a medley.	Dūmus, a bush.	Hespērus, the evening.
Cippus, a grave-stone.	Ēchinus, an urchin.	Hinnŭleus, a young hind or fawn.
Circēnus, a pair of com- passes. [circle.	Ēlēgus, an elegy.	Hinnus, a mule.
Circus, & circŭlus, a	Ēphēbus, a youth.	Hircus, a goat.
Cirrus, a tuft or curl.	Ēplōgus, a conclusion.	Hortus, a garden.
Citrus, f. a citron-tree.	Ēpiscōpus, an overseer, a bishop.	Hūmērus, a shoulder.
Clathrus, a grate.	Equŭleus, an instru- ment of torture.	Hydrus, a water-ser- pent.
Clāvus, a nail.	Ēquus, a horse.	Internuntius, a go-be- tween.
Clibānus, a portable	Ērēbus, hell.	Isthmus, a neck of land between two seas.
Clivus, a hill. [oven.	Eurus, the east wind.	Juncus, a bulrush.
Clŷpeus, a round shield.		Jūvencus, a bullock.
Coccus, & -um, scarlet.		Lābŷrinthus, a maze.
Cōlāphus, a box on the ear.		Lācertus, the arm.
		Lānius, a butcher.

Lăqueus, a noose.	Nummus, a piece of money.	Primipilus, the chief centurion.
Lectus, a couch.	Nuntius, a messenger.	Privignus, a stepson.
Lēgātus, an ambassador.	Obolus, a farthing.	Procus, a suitor.
Lēgūleius, an ignorant lawyer, a pettifogger.	Oceanus, the ocean.	Promus, a butler.
Lēthargus, a lethargy.	Oculus, the eye.	Prunus, f. a plum-tree.
Limbus, a selvedge.	Orcus, hell.	Psittacus, a parrot.
Limus, slime.	Ornus, f. a wild ash.	Pugnus, the fist.
Lituus, a crooked staff.	Ostracismus, a voting with shells.	Pullus, a chicken.
Lūcus, a sacred grove.	Pædagōgus, a servant who attended boys.	Pulvinus, a pillow.
Lumbricus, an earth-worm.	Pagus, a canton or vil- lage.	Pupillus, an orphan.
Lumbus, the loin.	Pālus, a stake.	Pūpus, a young child, a babe.
Lūpus, a wolf.	Pannus, cloth.	Puteus, a well.
Lychnus, a lamp.	Pārāsitus, a flatterer.	Quālus, & quāsilus, a basket.
Māgus, a magician.	Pardus, a panther.	Racemus, a cluster of grapes.
Malleus, a mallet.	Pārōchus, an enter- tainer.	Rādus, a ray.
Mālus, the mast of a ship.	Patruus, an uncle, the father's brother.	Rāmus, a branch.
Mālus, f. an apple-tree.	Patrōnus, a patron.	Rēmus, an oar.
Mannus, a little horse.	Pēdiculus, a louse.	Rhombus, a turbot.
Māthēmāticus, a ma- thematician.	Pessulus, a bolt.	Rhynchus, a snorting.
Mēdiastinus, a slave, a drudge.	Pētāsus, a broad-brim- med hat.	Rhythmus, metre, rhyme.
Mēdicus, a physician.	Pharus, or -os, a watch- tower.	Riscus, a trunk.
Mendicus, a beggar.	Philosophus, a lover of wisdom. [sun.]	Rivus, a rivulet.
Mergus, a cormorant.	Phœbus, (poet.) the	Rōgus, a funeral pile.
Milvus, a kite.	Physicus, an inquirer into nature.	Saccus, a sack.
Mimus, a mimic.	Picus, a woodpecker.	Sarcophagus, a stone in which dead bodies were enclosed.
Mōdius, a peck.	Pileus, a hat.	Sātyrus, a satyr, a kind of demigod.
Mōdus, a manner.	Pilus, a hair.	Scalmus, a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung.
Mœchus, an adulterer.	Pirus, f. a pear-tree.	Scāpus, a stalk, a shaft, or shank.
Mōrus, f. a mulberry- tree.	Plāgiārius, a plagiarist, a manstealer; or one who steals from others' books.	Scārus, the scar, a fish.
Mūcus, the filth of the nose, snot.	Plānus, a vagrant, a beggar.	Scirpus, a rush.
Mullus, a mullet-fish.	Plūteus, a pent-house, a press for books.	Sciurus, a squirrel.
Mullus, & -a, a mule.	Pōlus, the pole, heaven.	Scōpulus, a rock.
Mūrus, a wall.	Pontus, the sea.	Scōpus, a mark.
Muscus, moss.	Pōpulus, a people.	Scrūpulus, a doubt or scruple.
Myrtus, f. a myrtle-tree.	Pōpulus, f. a poplar- tree.	Scrūpus, a little stone.
Nævus, a spot.	Porcus, a hog.	Scyphus, a bowl.
Nānus, a dwarf.	Porrus, a leek.	Servus, a slave.
Nāsus, the nose.		Sestertius, two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.
Nervus, a string.		Sicārius, an assassin.
Nidus, a nest.		
Nimbus, a cloud.		
Nōdus, a knot.		
Nōthus, a bastard.		
Nōtus, the south wind.		
Nucleus, a kernel.		
Nūmērus, a number.		

Simius, & -a, an ape.	Thälāmus, a marriage	Tümülus, a hillock.
Sirius, the dog-star.	bed-chamber.	Turdus, a thrush.
Soccus, a kind of shoe.	Theōlōgus, a divine.	Týpus, a figure or type.
Somnus, sleep.	Thēsauros, a treasure.	Týrannus, a tyrant.
Sōnus, a sound.	Thōlus, the roof of a	Ulmus, f. an elm-tree.
Spārus, a spear.	temple.	Umbilicus, the navel.
Sponsus, a bridegroom.	Thrōnus, a royal seat.	Uncus, a hook.
Stimulus, a sting, a spur.	Thyāsus, a chorus in	Urceus, a pitcher.
Stōmāchus, the stomach.	honour of Bacchus.	Ursus, a bear.
Strūpus, a thong, a	Thyrsus, a spear wrapt	Ūrus, a buffalo.
strap.	with ivy.	Ūterus, the womb.
Stylus, a style or iron	Titulus, a title.	Vallus, a stake.
pen to write with on	Tōmus, a volume.	Vēnēficus, a sorcerer.
waxed tables.	Tōnus, a note in music.	Ventus, the wind.
Sūbulcus, a swineherd.	Tōphus, a gravel stone.	Vicus, a village, a street.
Succus, juice.	Tornus, a turner's	Villcus, & -a, an over-
Sulcus, a furrow.	wheel.	seer of a farm.
Sureūlus, a young twig.	Tōrus, a couch.	Villus, shaggy hair.
Sūsurrus, a whisper.	Trībūlus, a thistle.	Vitellus, the yolk of an
Tālus, the ankle, a die.	Triumphus, a triumph.	egg.
Taurus, a bull.	Trōchus, a top.	Vitricus, a step-father.
Taxus, f. the yew-tree.	Tūbus, a tube or pipe.	Vitulus, a calf.
Terminus, a bound.	Truncus, the trunk.	Zēphýrus, the west wind.

Regnum, a kingdom, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. Regnum.

Nom. Regna.

Gen. Regni.

Gen. Regnōrum.

Dat. Regno.

Dat. Regnis.

Acc. Regnum.

Acc. Regna.

Voc. Regnum.

Voc. Regna.

Abl. Regno.

Abl. Regnis.

In like manner decline,

Ācētum, vinegar.	Argentum, silver.	Biennium, two years.
Ācōnītum, wolfsbane, a	Armentum, a herd.	Brāchium, an arm.
poisonous plant.	Arvum, & -us, a field.	Būtýrum, butter.
Ādāgium, a proverb.	Astrum, a star.	Cælum, a graving tool.
Adminicūlum, a prop.	Āsylum, a sanctuary.	Cæmentum, materials
Ādýtum, the most secret	Ātrium, a court or hall.	for building.
part of a temple.	Aulæum tapestry.	Cānistrum, a basket.
Album, a register.	Aurum, gold.	Cāpistrum, a halter or
Allium, garlic.	Auxillium, assistance.	muzzle.
Āmentum, a thong.	Āviārium, a cage.	Castrum, a castle.
Āmūlētum, a charm.	Balsāmum, balm.	Centrum, the centre.
Ānēthum, anise.	Bārathrum, an abyss.	Cērebrum, the brain.
Anticum, a fore-door.	Bāsium, a kiss.	Chirogrāphum, a hand-
Antrum, a cave.	Bellum, war.	writing.
Āpium, parsley.	Biduum, two days.	Cilium, the eye-lashes.

Citrum, <i>citron-wood.</i>	Ergastŭlum, <i>a work-house.</i>	Inġenium, <i>wit, genius.</i>
Classicum, <i>a trumpet.</i>	Ervum, <i>vetches.</i>	Īnitium, <i>a beginning.</i>
Cœlum, pl. -i, <i>heaven.</i>	Essêdum, <i>a chariot.</i>	Intervallum, <i>distance between.</i>
Cœnum, <i>mire, dirt.</i>	Everricŭlum, <i>a drag-net.</i>	Jŭdicium, <i>judgment.</i>
Collŏquium, <i>a conference.</i>	Exemplum, <i>an example.</i>	Jŭgŭlum, <i>the throat.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Exltium, <i>destruction.</i>	Jŭgum, <i>a yoke, the ridge of a hill.</i>
Commŏdum, <i>advantage.</i>	Exordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Jurgium, <i>a quarrel.</i>
Confĭnium, <i>a bound or limit.</i>	Fānum, <i>a temple.</i>	Jussum, <i>an order.</i>
Congiārĭum, <i>a largess.</i>	Faselnium, <i>witchcraft.</i>	Justitium, <i>a vacation.</i>
Convicium, <i>a reproach.</i>	Fastġgium, <i>the top.</i>	Lābium, <i>the lip.</i>
Cŏrium, <i>a hide.</i>	Fercŭlum, <i>a dish of meat.</i>	Lardum, <i>bacon.</i>
Costum, <i>spikenard.</i>	Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Lāsānum, <i>a chamber-pot.</i>
Crēmĭum, <i>a dry stick.</i>	Fĭlum, <i>a thread.</i>	Libum, <i>a sweet cake.</i>
Crēpuscŭlum, <i>the twilight.</i>	Flābellum, <i>a fan.</i>	Lĭcium, <i>the woof.</i>
Cribrum, <i>a sieve.</i>	Flagrum, & flāġellum, <i>a whip.</i>	Lġgnum, <i>wood.</i>
Cŭbĭcŭlum, <i>a bed-chamber.</i>	Flammeum, <i>a veil.</i>	Lĭlium, <i>a lily.</i>
Cŭminum, <i>cumin, an herb.</i>	Fœnum, <i>hay.</i>	Linteum, <i>a sheet.</i>
Cymbālum, <i>a cymbal.</i>	Fŏlium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Linum, <i>lint.</i>
Damnum, <i>loss.</i>	Fŏrum, <i>a market-place.</i>	Lŏrum, <i>a thong.</i>
Dēlŭbrum, <i>a temple.</i>	Frētum, <i>a narrow sea.</i>	Lucrum, <i>gain.</i>
Dēmensum, <i>an allowance of meat.</i>	Frŭmentum, <i>corn.</i>	Lŭdĭbrium, <i>a laughing-stock.</i>
Dētrĭmentum, <i>damage.</i>	Frustum, <i>a bit or piece.</i>	Lustrum, <i>a survey.</i>
Diārĭum, <i>a day's wages.</i>	Fulcrum, <i>a prop.</i>	Lŭteum, or lŭtum, <i>the yolk of an egg; woad.</i>
Dilŭcŭlum, <i>the dawning of the day.</i>	Furtum, <i>theft.</i>	Lŭtum, <i>clay.</i>
Dĭum, (poet.) <i>the open</i>	Grānārĭum, <i>a granary.</i>	Mācellum, <i>the shambles.</i>
Dŏlium, <i>a cask.</i> [air.	Grānum, <i>a grain.</i>	Mānubrium, <i>a hilt or handle.</i>
Dŏmicĭlium, <i>an abode.</i>	Grāphium, <i>a pencil.</i>	Mātrĭmŏnĭum, <i>marriage.</i>
Dŏnum, <i>a gift.</i>	Grēmĭum, <i>the bosom.</i>	Mausŏlēum, <i>any sumptuous monument.</i>
Dorsum, <i>the back.</i>	Gymnāsĭum, <i>a place of exercise.</i>	Membrum, <i>a member.</i>
Effŭġium, <i>an escape.</i>	Gŷnæcēum, <i>the women's apartment.</i>	Mendācium, <i>a lie.</i>
Electrum, <i>amber.</i>	Gypsum, <i>plaster.</i>	Mentum, <i>the chin.</i>
Ēlémentum, <i>an element, a letter.</i>	Haustrum, <i>a bucket.</i>	Mēttallum, <i>metal, a mine.</i>
Ēlŏġium, <i>a brief saying, a testimonial in one's praise.</i>	Hellēbŏrum, & -us, <i>hellebore, a plant.</i>	Mĭllium, <i>millet, a kind of grain.</i>
Ēmŏlŭmentum, <i>profit.</i>	Hŏrŏlŏġium, <i>a machine that tells the hours.</i>	Mĭnium, <i>vermilion.</i>
Emplastrum, <i>a plaster.</i>	Idŏlum, <i>an image.</i>	Mŏmentum, <i>weight, importance.</i>
Empŏrium, <i>a mart or market town.</i>	Idyllium, <i>a pastoral poem.</i>	Mŏnŏpŏlium, <i>the sole right of selling any thing.</i>
Ēphĭppium, <i>a saddle.</i>	Impĕrium, <i>command.</i>	Monstrum, <i>a monster.</i>
Ēpĭtāphĭum, <i>an inscription on a tomb.</i>	Inceptum, <i>an enterprise.</i>	
	Indlcium, <i>a discovery.</i>	
	Indŭsĭum, <i>a shirt.</i>	

<i>any thing against the common course of nature.</i>	Pētorritum, a waggon.	Rēpāgūlum, a bar.
Mortārium, a mortar.	Pilentum, a chariot.	Rēpūdiūm, a divorce.
Mūsēum, a study or library.	Pīlum, a javelin.	Responsum, an answer.
Mustum, new wine.	Pistillum, the pestle of a mortar.	Rētinācūlum, a cable.
Mystērium, a mystery; a thing not easily comprehended.	Pisum, pease.	Rostrum, the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.
Nasturtium, cresses.	Plaustrum, a waggon.	Rūdimentum, pl. -a, the first principles of any art.
Naulum, freight.	Plectrum, a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.	Rutrum, a pick-axe.
Naufrāgium, shipwreck.	Plumbum, lead.	Sabbātum, the sabbath.
Nēgōtium, a thing, business.	Pōmārium, an orchard.	Sābūlum, gravel.
Nitrum, nitre.	Pōmcerium, a void space on each side of a town wall.	Sacchārum, sugar.
Obaēquium, compliance.	Pōmum, an apple.	Sācellum, a chapel.
Ōdium, hatred.	Posticum, a back door.	Sācerdōtium, the priest-hood.
Ōmāsūm, the paunch.	Postlīmīnium, a return to one's country.	Sacrāmentum, a military oath.
Ōmentum, the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.	Prædium, a farm.	Sacrificiūm, a sacrifice.
Oppidum, a town.	Præjūdicium, a fore-judging.	Sacrillēgium, stealing sacred things.
Opprobrium, a reproach.	Prælium, a battle.	Sāgum, a soldier's cloak.
Opeōnium, fish, or any thing eaten with bread.	Præmium, a reward.	Sālārium, a salary.
Orgānum, any instrument. [the lips.	Præsidium, a defence, a garrison.	Sāllinum, a salt-cellar.
Oscūlum, a kiss, pl.	Prandium, a dinner.	Salsāmentum, salt meat.
Ostrum, purple.	Prātum, a meadow.	Sālum, the sea.
Ōtium, repose.	Prēlum, a press.	Sandālium, a slipper.
Ostium, the door.	Prētium, a price.	Sarcūlum, a weeding-hook, a spade.
Ōvum, an egg.	Primordium, } a beginning.	Sarmentum, a twig.
Pābūlum, fodder.	Principium, }	Sātisdātum, a bond of security.
Pactum, an agreement.	Privilegium, a private law or special right.	Saxum, a large stone.
Pālātium, a palace.	Probrum, a disgrace.	Scalprum, dim. Scalpellum, a knife.
Pālātum, the palate.	Prōdīgium, a prodigy, any thing preternatural.	Scamnum, dim. Scābellum, a bench or form.
Pallium, a cloak.	Prōmissum, a promise.	Sceptrum, a sceptre, a mace.
Pālūdāmentum, a general's robe.	Prōpōsītum, a purpose.	Scitum, a decree.
Pānārium, a bread basket.	Prōpugnācūlum, a bulwark. [saying.	Scortum, a harlot.
Pātībūlum, a gibbet.	Prōverbium, an old proverb.	Serīnium, a coffer.
Pensum, a task. [robe.	Pulpitum, a pulpit.	Scriptum, a writing.
Peplum, a woman's shawl.	Rāmentum, a chip or shaving.	Scrūpūlum, a scruple, a certain weight.
Perjūrium, perjury, taking a false oath.	Rastrum, a rake.	Scūtum, a shield.
Perpendicūlum, a straight line upwards or downwards.	Rēfūgium, a shelter.	Sēcūlum, an age.
	Rēmēdium, a cure.	Sēmīnārium, a nursery.
	Rēmūlcum, a rope or tow, a tow-barge.	

Sēnācŭlum, a senate-house.	Strātum, a couch.	Tirōcīnium, an apprenticeship.
Sēnātŭs-consultum, a decrees of the senate.	Strigmentum, a scrap-ing.	Tormentum, an engine, a torment.
Sēricum, silk.	Stŭdium, desire, study.	Toxicum, poison.
Servitium, slavery.	Stuprum, debauchery.	Tribŭtum, tax or custom.
Serpyllum, wild thyme.	Suāvium, a kiss.	Triclinium, a dining-room.
Sertum, a garland.	Subsellium, a bench.	Triduum, three days.
Sĕrum, whey.	Subsidium, help.	Triennium, three years.
Sestertium, a thousand sesterii.	Sŭburbānum, a house near the town.	Tripŭdium, a dancing.
Sĕvum, tallow.	Sŭburbium, the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.	Trivium, a place where three ways meet.
Signum, a sign, a standard.	Sŭdārium, a handkerchief.	Trŏpæum, a trophy, a token of victory.
Sigillum, a seal.	Suffrāgium, a vote.	Tŭgŭrium, a cottage.
Silicernium, a funeral-supper, an old man.	Suggestum, & -us, -ŭs, a place raised above others.	Tympānum, a drum.
Sinum, a milk-pail.	Summārium, an abridgement.	Vaocīnium, a berry.
Sistrum, a timbrel.	Sŭpercillium, the brow, pride.	Vādīmōnium, bail; a promise to appear in court.
Sŏdālĭtium, a company, a corporation.	Suspĭrium, a sigh.	Vādum, a ford, the sea.
Sŏlārium, a sun-dial.	Symbŏlum, a sign or token.	Vallum, a rampart.
Sŏlātium, comfort.	Sympŏsium, & -on, a banquet.	Vĕlum, a veil, a sail.
Sŏlium, a throne.	Tābernācŭlum, a tent.	Vĕnābŭlum, a hunting-pole.
Sŏlum, the ground.	Tābŭlātum, a story.	Vĕnĕnum, poison.
Somnium, a dream.	Tābum, black gore.	Ventilābrum, a fan.
Spātium, a space.	Tædium, weariness.	Verbum, a word.
Spectācŭlum, a shew.	Talentum, a talent.	Vestibŭlum, a porch.
Spectrum, a phantom or apparition.	Tectum, the roof, a house.	Vestigium, the print of the foot.
Spĕcŭlum, a looking-glass.	Tĕlum, a weapon.	Vexillum, a banner.
Spĕlæum, a den.	Templum, a church.	Viāticum, money or provisions for a journey.
Spicilĕgium, a gleanings.	Tergum, the back.	Vincŭlum, a chain.
Spicŭlum, a dart.	Testimōnium, an evidence.	Vinum, wine.
Spīracŭlum, a breathing hole.	Theātrum, a theatre.	Vitium, vice, a fault.
Spŏlium, spoil.	Thŭribŭlum, a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.	Vitrum, glass.
Spŭtum, spittle.	Tintinnābŭlum, a little bell.	Vivārium, a place to keep beasts in, a warren, or fish-pond.
Stābŭlum, a stable.		Vŏcābŭlum, a name or word.
Stādium, a furlong.		Vŏtum, a vow.
Stagnum, a pond.		
Stannum, tin.		
Sterquilĭnium, a dung-hill.		
Stipendium, pay.		
Strāgŭlum, a blanket.		

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine: *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os* :

Ābyssus, a bottomless pit.	Carbāsus, a sail.	Ērēmus, a desert.
Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.	Diālectus, a dialect, or manner of speech.	Mēthōdus, a method.
Arctos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.	Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.	Pēriōdus, a period.
	Pērimetros, the circumference of a circle.	
	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Phārus, a watch-tower.
		Sŷnōdus, an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Āmethystus, an amethyst.	Sapphīrus, a sapphire.	Byssus, fine flax or linen.
Chrŷsōlithus, a chrysolite; also mas.	Tōpazius, a topaz.	
Chrŷsoprāsus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus,	{ an Egyptian reed of which paper was made.
Crystallus, crystal.	Pāpŷrus,	
Leucōchrŷsus, a jacinth.		
		Costus, costmary.
		Crōcus, saffron.
		Hyssōpus, hyssop.
		Nardus, spikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *bēryllus*, a beryl; *carbuncūlus*, a carbuncle; *pŷrōpus*, a ruby; *smāragdus*, an emerald: and also names of plants; as, *asparāgus*, asparagus or sparrow-grass; *hellēbōrus*, hellebore; *rāphānus*, radish or colewort; *intŷbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine.

Ātōmus, an atom.	Barbītus, a harp.	Grossus, a green fig.
Bālānus, the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.	Cāmēlus, a camel.	Pēnus, a storehouse.
	Cōlus, a distaff.	Phāsēlus, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea; are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as,

Hōrātius, *Hōrāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Fīlius*, a son, also has *fili*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *gēni*; and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc., and in the

plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tābellārius*, *tābellārie*, a letter-carrier; *pīus*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīrynthius*, *Tīrynthie*; and these possessives, *Lāertius*, *Lāertie*; *Sāturnius*, *Sāturnie*, &c.; which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *flūvius*, *Lātīnus*, for *flūvie*, *Lātīne*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu, pōpūlus*, for *pōpule*, Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as, *Evander* or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander* or *Evandre*: so, *Meander*, *Leander*, *Thymber*, *Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puēre* from *puērus*.

Note.—When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tūgūrī*, for *tūgūrīi*; *ingēni*, for *ingēnīi*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deūm*, *libērūm*, *fabrūm*, *duūmvirūm*, &c. for *deorum*, *libērorum*, &c.; and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graiūm*, *Argivūm*, *Dānāūm*, *Pēlasgūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilīum*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. So, *Thēsēus*, *Prōmēthēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Andrōgeos*, gen. *Andrōgeo* or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho* or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third declension; thus, nom. *Andrōgeo*, gen. *Andrōgeōnis*: so, *Atho* or *Athon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollōdōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollōdōri*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Dēlus* or *Dēlos*, acc. *Dēlum* or *Dēlon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Georgica*, gen. pl. *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry; as, Virgil's *Georgics*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*: *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these: Nom. Sing. *ā, ē, &c.*; Gen. *is*; Dat. *i*; Acc. *em*; Voc. *the same with the nominative*; Abl. *ē, or i*; Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. *ēs, ā, or iā*; Gen. *um, or ium*; Dat. and Abl. *ibūs*; thus,

Sermo, a speech, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Sermo.	N. Sermōnes.
G. Sermōnis.	G. Sermōnum.
D. Sermōni.	D. Sermōnibus.
A. Sermōnem.	A. Sermōnes.
V. Sermo.	V. Sermōnes.
A. Sermōne.	A. Sermōnibus.

Capūt, the head, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Caput.	N. Capita.
G. Capitis.	G. Capitum.
D. Capiti.	D. Capitibus.
A. Caput.	A. Capita.
V. Caput.	V. Capita.
A. Capite.	A. Capitibus.

Rūpēs, a rock, Fem.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Rupes.	N. Rupes.
G. Rupis.	G. Rupium.
D. Rupī.	D. Rupibus.
A. Rupem.	A. Rupes.
V. Rupes.	V. Rupes.
A. Rupe.	A. Rupibus.

Sēdlē, a seat, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Sedile.	N. Sedilia.
G. Sedilis.	G. Sedilium.
D. Sedili.	D. Sedilibus.
A. Sedile.	A. Sedilia.
V. Sedile.	V. Sedilia.
A. Sedili.	A. Sedilibus.

Lāpis, a stone, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Lapis.	N. Lapides.
G. Lapidis.	G. Lapidum.
D. Lapīdi.	D. Lapidibus.
A. Lapīdem.	A. Lapides.
V. Lapis.	V. Lapides.
A. Lapīde.	A. Lapidibus.

Ītēr, a journey, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Iter.	N. Itinēra.
G. Itinēris.	G. Itinērum.
D. Itinēri.	D. Itinēribus.
A. Iter.	A. Itinēra.
V. Iter.	V. Itinēra.
A. Itinēre.	A. Itinēribus.

Turris, a tower, Fem.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Turris.	N. Turres.
G. Turris.	G. Turrium.
D. Turri.	D. Turribus.
A. Turrim, or -em.	A. Turres.
V. Turris.	V. Turres.
A. Turre, or -i.	A. Turribus.

Ānimāl, a living creature, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
N. Animal.	N. Animālia.
G. Animālis.	G. Animālium.
D. Animāli.	D. Animālibus.
A. Animal.	A. Animālia.
V. Animal.	V. Animālia.
A. Animāli.	A. Animālibus.

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i, and y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diādēma*, *diādēmātis*, a crown; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion.—So,

Ænigma, a riddle. *Ārōma*, sweet spices. *Ēpigramma*, an inscription, an epigram.
Āpōphthegma, a short pithy saying. *Axiōma*, a plain truth.
Diplōma, a charter. *Nūmisma*, a coin.

Phasma, an apparition. *Stemma*, a pedigree. *Thēma*, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.
Poēma, a poem. *Stigma*, a mark or brand, a disgrace.
Schēma, a scheme or figure. *Strātēgēma*, an artful contrivance. *Tōreuma*, a carved vessel.
Sōphisma, a sophism, a deceitful argument.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is* ; as, *rēte*, *rētis*, a net.—So,

Ancle, a shield. *Crināle*, a pin for the *Nāvāle*, a dock, or place for shipping.
Aplustre, the flag of a ship. *Cūble*, a couch. *Ōvile*, a sheep-fold.
Campestre, a pair of drawers. *Ēquille*, a stable for horses. *Præsēpe*, a stall ; a beehive.
Cochleāre, a spoon. *Lāqueāre*, a ceiled roof. *Sēcāle*, rye.
Conclāve, a room. *Mantle*, a towel. *Sulle*, a sow-cote.
Mōnile, a necklace. *Tībiāle*, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable ; as, *gummi*, gum ; *zingibēri*, ginger : but some Greek nouns add *itis* ; as, *hydrō-mēli*, *hydrōmēlitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os* ; as, *mōly*, *mōlyos*, an herb ; *mīsy*, *-yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis* ; as,

Sermo, *sermōnis*, a speech ; *drāco*, *drācōnis*, a dragon.—So,

Āgāso, a horse-keeper. *Cūrio*, the chief of a ward or curia. *Pāvo*, a peacock.
Āqullo, the north wind. *Ēquīso*, a groom or ostler. *Pēro*, a kind of shoe.
Arrhābo, an earnest-penny, a pledge. *Præco*, a common crier.
Bālatro, a pitiful fellow. *Erro*, a wanderer. *Prædo*, a robber.
Bambālio, a stutterer. *Fullo*, a fuller of cloth. *Pulmo*, the lungs.
Bāro, a blockhead. *Helluo*, a glutton. *Salmo*, a salmon.
Būbo, an owl. *Histrio*, a player. *Sannio*, a buffoon.
Būfo, a toad. *Latro*, a robber. *Sāpo*, soap.
Cālo, a soldier's slave. *Lēno*, a pimp. *Sīpho*, a pipe or tube.
Cāpo, a capon. *Lūdio*, & -ius, a player. *Spādo*, an eunuch.
Carbo, a coal. *Lurco*, a glutton. *Stōlo*, a shoot or scion.
Caupo, an inn-keeper. *Mango*, a slave-merchant. *Strābo*, a goggle-eyed person.
Cerdo, a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade. *Tēmo*, the pole or draught-tree.
Mirmillo, a fencer. *Tiro*, a raw soldier.
Mōrio, a fool. *Umbo*, the boss of a shield.
Mucro, the point of a weapon. *Ūpilio*, a shepherd.
Ciniflo, a frizler of hair. *Mūlio*, a muleteer. *Vōlo*, a volunteer.
Crabro, a wasp or hornet. *Nēbūlo*, a knave.

Exc. 1.—Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body ; as, *rătio, rătioŋis*, reason.—So,

Captio, <i>a quirk.</i>	Perduellio, <i>treason.</i>	Sectio, <i>the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.</i>
Cautio, <i>caution, care.</i>	Portio, <i>a part.</i>	Sēdltio, <i>a mutiny.</i>
Concio, <i>an assembly, a speech.</i>	Pōtio, <i>drink.</i>	Sessio, <i>a sitting.</i>
Cessio, <i>a yielding.</i>	Prōdltio, <i>treachery.</i>	Stāfio, <i>a station.</i>
Dictio, <i>a word.</i>	Proscriptio, <i>a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.</i>	Suspicio, <i>mistrust.</i>
Dēdltio, <i>a surrender.</i>	Quæstio, <i>an inquiry.</i>	Titillatio, <i>a tickling.</i>
Lectio, <i>a lesson.</i>	Rēbellio, <i>rebellion.</i>	Translatio, <i>a transferring.</i>
Lēgio, <i>a legion, a body of men.</i>	Rēgio, <i>a country.</i>	Usucāpio, <i>the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.</i>
Mentio, <i>mention.</i>	Rēlatio, <i>a telling.</i>	Vācātio, <i>freedom from labour, &c.</i>
Nōtio, <i>a notion or idea.</i>	Rēligio, <i>religion.</i>	Visio, <i>an apparition.</i>
Ōpīnio, <i>an opinion.</i>	Rēmīssio, <i>a slackening.</i>	
Optio, <i>a choice.</i>	Sanctio, <i>a confirmation.</i>	
Ōrātio, <i>a speech.</i>		
Pensio, <i>a payment.</i>		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or when they signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

Cureūlio, <i>the throat-pipe, the weasand.</i>	Scpio, <i>a staff.</i>	Unio, <i>a pearl.</i>
Pāpilio, <i>a butterfly.</i>	Scorpio, <i>a scorpion.</i>	Vespertilio, <i>a bat.</i>
Pūgio, <i>a dagger.</i>	Septemtrio, <i>the north.</i>	Ternio, <i>the number three.</i>
Pūcio, <i>a little child.</i>	Stellio, <i>a lizard.</i>	Quāternio, <i>four.</i>
	Titio, <i>a firebrand.</i>	Sēnio, <i>six.</i>

Exc. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *nis* ; as, *ārundo, ārundīnis*, a reed ; *īmāgo, īmāgīnis*, an image.—So,

Ærūgo, <i>rust (of brass.)</i>	Hirundo, <i>a swallow.</i>	Sartāgo, <i>a frying-pan.</i>
Cālgo, <i>darkness.</i>	Intercāpēdo, <i>a space between.</i>	Scātūrlgo, <i>a spring.</i>
Cartilāgo, <i>a gristle.</i>	Lānūgo, <i>down.</i>	Testūdo, <i>a tortoise.</i>
Crēpldo, <i>a creek, a bank.</i>	Lentlgo, <i>a pimple.</i>	Torpēdo, <i>a numbness.</i>
Farrāgo, <i>a mixture.</i>	Ōrlgo, <i>an origin.</i>	Ūlgo, <i>the natural moisture of the earth.</i>
Ferrūgo, <i>rust (of iron.)</i>	Porrlgo, <i>scurf or scales in the head ; dandruff.</i>	Vālētūdo, <i>health.</i>
Formldo, <i>fear.</i>	Prōpāgo, <i>a lineage.</i>	Vertlgo, <i>a dizziness.</i>
Fūlgo, <i>soot.</i>	Rūbigo, <i>rust, mildew.</i>	Virgo, <i>a virgin.</i>
Grando, <i>hail.</i>		Vōrāgo, <i>a gulf.</i>
Hirūdo, <i>a horse-leech.</i>		

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -īnis, <i>a hinge.</i>	Margo, -īnis, <i>the brink of a river ; also fem.</i>
Cūdo, -ōnis, <i>a leather cap.</i>	Ordo, -īnis, <i>order.</i>
Harpāgo, -ōnis, <i>a drag.</i>	Tendo, -īnis, <i>a tendon.</i>
Llgo, -ōnis, <i>a spade.</i>	Ūdo, -ōnis, <i>a kind of shoe.</i>

Cūpido, desire, is often maso. with the poets ; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3.—The following nouns have *inis* :

Āpollo, -inis, *the god Apollo.* Nēmo, -inis, m. or f. *nobody.*
Hōmo, -inis, *a man or woman.* Turbo, inis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Cāro, flesh, fem. has *carnis* : *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis* ; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars ; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has -ōnis.

Exc. 4.—Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ūs* in the genitive, and *ō* in the other cases singular ; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman ; gen. *Didūs* ; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly ; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis* : so, *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood, an echo ; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship ; *hālo*, -ōnis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

Anīmal, *anīmālis*, a living creature ; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover ; *hālec*, *hālēcis*, a kind of pickle.—So,

Cervīcal a bolster. *Mīnerval*, *entry-money*. *Pūteal*, a well-cover.
Cūbital, a cushion. *Mīnūtal*, minced meat. *Vectīgal*, a tax.

Except. Consul, -ūlis, m. a consul. *Mūgīl*, -lis, m. a mullet-fish.
Fel, *fellis*, n. gall. *Sal*, *sālis*, m. or n. salt.
Lac, *lactis*, n. milk. *Sāles*, -ium, pl. m. witty sayings.
Mel, *mellis*, n. honey. *Sōl*, *sōlis*, m. the sun.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is* ; as, *Dāvid*, *Dāvīdis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive ; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, a rule. *Phŷsiognōmon*, -ōnis, one who
Dæmon, -ōnis, a spirit. guesses at the dispositions of men
Delphin, -inis, a dolphin. [of a dial. from the face.
Gnōmon, -ōnis, the cock, pin or stile *Ren*, *rēnis*, the reins.
Hŷmen, -ēnis, the god of marriage. *Splen*, *splēnis*, the spleen.
Lien, -ēnis, the milt. *Sŷren*, -ēnis, f. a Syren.
Pēan, -ānis, a song. *Titan*, -ānis, the sun.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis* ; as, *flūmen*, *flūmīnis*, a river.—So,

Abdōmen, the paunch. *Agmen*, an army on *Ālūmen*, alum.
Āctūmen, sharpness. march. *Bītūmen*, a kind of clay.

Căcūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>	Grămen, <i>grass.</i>	
Cognōmen, <i>a surname.</i>	Lěgūmen, <i>all kinds of pulse.</i>	Sěmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>	Lūmen, <i>light.</i>	Spēcīmen, <i>a proof.</i>
Crīmen, <i>a crime.</i>	Nōmen, <i>a name.</i>	Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>
Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the deity.</i>	Subtēmen, <i>the woof.</i>
Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Ōmen, <i>a presage.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
		Vōlūmen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glūten, -inis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* : *pecten*, a comb ; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter ; *tībīcen*, a piper ; and *oscen*, or *oscīnis*, sc. *āvis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the King's fisher ; *īcon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Lāōmēdon*, -ontis, the name of a king of Troy. So, *Achēron*, *Chamæleon*, *Phāēthōn*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

Calcar, *calcāris*, a spur ; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise.—
So,

Guttur, -ūris, <i>the throat.</i>	Nectar, -āris, <i>the drink of the gods.</i>
Jūbar, -āris, <i>a sun-beam.</i>	Pulvīnar, -āris, <i>a pillow.</i>
Lăcūnar, -āris, <i>a ceiling.</i>	Sulphur, -ūris, <i>sulphur.</i>

Except. Ēbur, -ōris, n. <i>ivory.</i>	Jēcūr, -ōris, or jēcīnōris, n. <i>the liver.</i>
Far, farris, n. <i>corn.</i>	Rōbur, -ōris, n. <i>strength.</i>
Fēmūr, -ōris, n. <i>the thigh.</i>	Sălar, -āris, m. <i>a trout.</i>
Furfur, -ūris, m. <i>bran.</i>	Turtur, -ūris, m. <i>a turtle-dove.</i>
Fur, fūris, m. <i>a thief.</i>	Vultur, -ūris, m. <i>a vulture.</i>
Hēpar, -ātis, or -ātos, n. <i>the liver.</i>	

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

Anser, *ansēris*, a goose or gander ; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart ; *āēr*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison ; *asser*, -ēris,

and *assis*, -is, a plank ; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain ; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour.—So,

Actor, a doer, pleader.	Ōdor, & -os, a smell.	Sōpor, sleep.
Crēditor, he that trusts	Ōlor, a swan.	Splendor, brightness.
or lends.	Pēdor, filth.	Sponsor, a surety.
Cruor, gore.	Pastor, a shepherd.	Squālor, filthiness.
Dēbitor, a debtor.	Prætor, a commander.	Stūpor, dulness,
Fætor, an ill smell.	Pūdor, shame.	Sūtor, a sewer.
Hōnor, honour.	Rūbor, blushing.	Tēpor, warmth.
Lector, a reader.	Rūmor, a report.	Terror, dread.
Liector, an officer among	Sāpor, a taste.	Tīmor, fear.
the Romans who at-	Sartor, a cobbler or tai-	Tonsor, a barber.
tended the magistrates.	lor.	Tūtor, a guardian.
Līvor, paleness, malice.	Sātor, a sower, a fa-	Vāpor, a vapour.
Nīdor, a strong smell.	ther.	Vēnātor, a hunter.

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has *rhētōris* ; *castor*, a beaver, *castōris*.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Ācer, -ēris, a maple-tree.	Marmor, -ōris, marble.
Ādor, -ōris, or -ōris, fine wheat.	Pāpāver, -ēris, a poppy.
Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.	Pīper, -ēris, pepper.
Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcase.	Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.
Cīcer, -ēris, vetches.	Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.
Cor, cordis, the heart.	Ūber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.
Īter, Ītīnēris, a journey.	Ver, vēris, the spring.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. *Tūber*, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. ; but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* for the genitive ; as, *hic imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So, *Insūber*, *September*, *Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris* ; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly ; *pāter*, *patris*, a father ; *frāter*, -tris, a brother ; *accipīter*, -tris, a hawk ; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris* ; *sōter*, a saviour, *sōtēris* ; *lāter*, a tile, *lātēris* : *Jūpīter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jōvis* ; *linter*, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *ætas*, *ætātis*, an age.—So,

Æstas, the summer.	Sīmultas, a feud, a	Vērītas, truth.
Piētas, piety.	grudge.	Vōluntas, will.
Pōtestas, power.	Tempestas, a time, a	Vōluptas, pleasure.
Prōbītas, probity.	tempest.	Ānas, a duck, has ānā-
Sātiētas, glut, disgust.	Ūbertas, fertility.	tis.

Except. 1. *As*, *assis*, m. a piece of money, *Mas*, *māris*, m. a male.
or any thing which may be *Vas*, *vādis*, m. a surety.
divided into twelve parts. *Vas*, *vāsis*, n. a vessel.

Note.—All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, feminine; *as*, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *sēmis*, 6; *sextunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *dēunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genitive; as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, *-adis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis*; as, *būcēras*, *-atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

Rūpes, *rūpis*, a rock; *nūbes*, *nūbis*, a cloud.—So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple;	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
plur. a house.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow,	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a	<i>Strues</i> , a heap.
destruction.	pigeon.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a stake.
<i>Crātes</i> , a hurdle.	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger.	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.
<i>Fīdes</i> , a fiddle.		

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive.

<i>Āles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Āmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Āries</i> , <i>-iētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>bessis</i> , two-thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a footman, or a foot soldier.
<i>Cespes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Ēques</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stīpes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Hæres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , an olive-bough.
<i>Indiges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vātis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obses</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *hæres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Ābies, -ētis, *a fir-tree.*
Cēres, -ēris, *the goddess of corn.*
Merces, -ēdis, *a reward, hire.*
Merges, -ītis, *a handful of corn.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*

Rēquies, -ētis ; or *rēquīsi*, (*of the fifth declension,*) *rest.*
Sēges, -ētis, *growing corn.*
Tēges, -ētis, *a mat or coverlet.*
Tūdes, -is, or -ītis, *a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives :

Alas, -ītis, *swift.*
Bīpes, -ēdis, *two-footed.*
Quadrūpes, -ēdis, *four-footed.*
Dēses, -īdis, *slothful.*
Dives, -ītis, *rich.*
Hēbes, -ētis, *dull.*
Perpes, -ētis, *perpetual.*

Prāpes, -ētis, *swift-winged.*
Rēses, -īdis, *idle.*
Sospes, -ītis, *safe.*
Sūperstes, -ītis, *surviving.*
Tēres, -ētis, *round and long, smooth.*
Lōcuples, -ētis, *rich.*
Mansues, -ētis, *gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine ; as, *hic ācīnāces*, -is, *a Persian sword, a scimitar* ; but some are neuter ; as, *hoc cācōēthes*, *an evil custom* ; *hippōmānes*, *a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal* ; *pānāces*, *the herb all-heal* ; *nēpenthes*, *the herb kill-grief*. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, *a Cretan*, have *ētis* in the genitive ; as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, *a load-stone* ; *tāpes*, -ētis, *tapestry* ; *lēbes*, -ētis, *a caldron*. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is* ; as, *Dāres*, *Dārētis* or *Dāris* ; which is also sometimes of the first declension : *Achilles* has *Achillis* ; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achilleī* or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus* : so, *Ulysses*, *Pēricles*, *Verres*, *Aristōtēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative ; as,

Auris, *auris*, *the ear* ; *āvis*, *āvis*, *a bird*.—So,

Āpis , <i>a bee.</i>	Messis , <i>a harvest or crop.</i>	Rātis , <i>a raft.</i>
Bilis , <i>the gall, anger.</i>	Nāris , <i>the nostril.</i>	Rūdis , <i>a rod.</i>
Classis , <i>a fleet.</i>	Neptis , <i>a niece.</i>	Vallis , <i>a valley.</i>
Fēlis , <i>a cat.</i>	Ōvis , <i>a sheep.</i>	Vestis , <i>a garment.</i>
Fōris , <i>a door, oftener</i>	Pellis , <i>a skin.</i>	Vītis , <i>a vine.</i>
plur. <i>fōres</i> , -ium.	Pestis , <i>a plague.</i>	

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Axis, axis, an axle-tree.	Ensis, a sword.	Patruēlis, a cousin-german.
Āquālis, a water-pot, an ewer.	Fascis, a bundle.	Piscis, a fish.
Callis, a beaten road.	Fēciālis, a herald.	Postis, a post.
Caulis, the stalk of an herb.	Follis, a pair of bellows.	Sōdālis, a companion.
Collis, a hill.	Fustis, a staff.	Torris, a fire-brand.
Cenchris, a kind of ser-pent.	Mensis, a month.	Unguis, the nail.
	Mūgillis, or -il, a mullet-fish.	Vectis, a lever.
	Orbis, a circle, the	Vermis, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis* ; as, *pānis*, bread ; *crīnis*, the hair ; *ignis*, fire ; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis* or *īdos* ; as, *týrannis*, *týrannīdis* or *-īdos*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently :

Cinis, -ēris, ashes.	Pūbis, or pūbes, -is, or oftener, -ēris, marriageable.
Cūcūmis, -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	Dis, dītis, the god of riches ; or, rich, an adj.
Dis, dītis, the god of riches ; or, rich, an adj.	Pulvis, -ēris, dust.
Glis, gliris, a dormouse, a rat.	Quiris, -itis, a Roman.
Impūbis, or Impūbes, -is, or -ēris, not marriageable.	Samnis, -itis, a Samnite.
Lāpis, -idis, a stone.	Sanguis, -inis, blood.
	Sēmis, -iasis, the half of any thing.
	Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives ; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 413 ; *Impūbe corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down, (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth, Hor. *Epod.* 5, 13. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Amnis, a river.	Finis, the end : fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories of a state, is always masculine.
Anguis, a snake.	Scrōbis, or scrobs, a ditch.
Cānālis, a conduit-pipe.	Torquis, a chain.
Clūnis, the buttock.	
Corbis, a basket.	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *īdis* : *cassis*, -īdis, a helmet ; *cuspis*, -īdis, the point of a spear ; *cāpis*, -īdis, a kind of cup ; *prōmulsis*, -īdis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously. Some have *eos* or *ios* ; as, *hērēsis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, a heresy : so, *bāsis*, f. the foot of a pillar ; *phrāsis*, a phrase ; *phthisis*, a consumption ; *poēsis*, poetry ; *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *īdis* or

īdos ; as, *Pāris*, -īdis, or -īdos, the name of a man ; *aspis*, -īdis, f. an asp ; *ēphēmēris*, -īdis, f. a day-book ; *īris*, -īdis, f. the rainbow ; *pyxis*, -īdis, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas ; *canthāris*, a sort of fly ; *pēriscēlis*, a garter ; *prōboscis*, an elephant's trunk ; *pȳrāmis*, a pyramid ; and *tigris*, a tiger, -īdis, seldom *tigris* : all feminine. Part have *īdis* ; as, *Psōphis*, -īdis, the name of a city : others have *īnis* ; as, *Eleusis*, -īnis, the name of a city : and some have *entis* ; as, *Sīmois*, *Sīmoēntis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the Graces, has *Chārītis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as,

Nēpos, -ōtis, a grand-child ; *sācerdos*, -ōtis, a priest ; also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Arbos, or -or, -ōris, a tree.

Cos, cōtis, a whetstone.

Dos, dōtis, a dowry.

Eos, eōis, the morning.

Glos, glōris, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

Flos, flōris, a flower.

Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, honour.

Lābos, or -or, -ōris, labour.

Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, wit.

Mos, mōris, a custom.

Ros, rōris, dew.

Custos, -ōdis, a keeper ; also fem.

Bos, bōvis. m. or f. an ox or cow.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *ossis*, a bone ; and *os*, *ōris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis* ; as, *hēros*, *hērōis*, a hero, or great man : so, *Mīnos*, -ōis, a king of Crete ; *Tros*, *Trōis*, a Trojan ; *thos*, *thōis*, m. a kind of wolf.—Other Greek nouns follow the general rule ; as, *mōnōcēros*, -ōtis, m. an unicorn ; *rhinōcēros*, -ōtis, m. a large beast with a horn on its nose : so, *Eros*, *Antēros*, *Phīlēros*, *Chrysēros*, proper names of men : also *agōcēros*, -ōtis, m. the sign Capricorn, Lucr. v. 614. But Lucan makes this word of the second declension, *agōcēros*, -i, m. accus. *agōcēron*, Pharsal. x. 213. So Germanicus in *Arato*, v. 394.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as,

Pectus, *pectōris*, the breast ; *tempus*, *tempōris*, time.—So,

Corpus, a body.

Dēcus, honour.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Fācīnus, a great action, *Fōenus*, usury.

a wicked action, a *Frīgus*, cold.

crime.

Littus, a shore.

Nēmus, *a grove.*
Pēcus, *cattle.*

Pēnus, *provisions.*
Pignus, *a pledge.*

Stercus, *dung.*
Tergus, *a hide.*

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris* :

Ācus, *chaff.*

Mūnus, *a gift, or office.* Scēlus, *a crime.*

Fūnus, *a funeral.*

Ōlus, *pot-herbs.*

Sidus, *a star.*

Fœdus, *a covenant.*

Ōnus, *a burden.*

Vellus, *a fleece of wool.*

Gēnus, *a kind, or kind-*

Ōpus, *a work.*

Viscus, *an entrail.*

Glōmus, *a clew.* [red. Pondus, *a weight.*

Ulcus, *a bile.*

Lātus, *the side.*

Rūdus, *rubbish.*

Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus, *ācĕris, fūnĕris, &c.* Glōmus, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has glōmi, of the second declension. Vēnus, the goddess of love, and vētus, old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.*

Jūventus, -ūtis, *youth.*

Pālus, -ūdis, *a pool or morass.*

Sālus, -ūtis, *safety.*

Pēcus, (not used,) -ūdis, *a sheep.*

Sēnectus, -ūtis, *old age.*

Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.*

Servitus, -ūtis, *slavery.*

Tellus, -ūris, *the earth, or goddess of the earth.*

Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*

Intercus, -ūtis, *an hydropsy.*

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.*

Rus, rūris, *the country.*

Jus, jūris, *law or right ; also broth.* Thus, thūris, *frankincense.*

Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore.* So Mus, mūris, *masc. a mouse.*

Līgus, or -ur, a Ligurian, has Līgūris ; lēpus, *masc. a hare, lēpōris ; sus, masc. or fem. a swine, suis ; grus, masc. or fem. a crane, gruis.*

Oedīpus, the name of a man, has Oedīpōdis : sometimes it is of the second declension, and has Oedīpi. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis* ; as, *trīpus, masc. a tripod, trīpōdis ;* but *lāgōpus, -ōdis, a kind of bird,* or the herb hares-foot, is *fem.* Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trāpezus, Trāpezuntis ; Opus, Opuntis ; Hiērichus, -untis, Jericho.*

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ysis* or *yos* ; as, *hæc chēlys, chēlyis* or *-yos, a harp ; Cāpys, Cāpyis* or *-yos, the name of a man : sometimes they have ydis* or *ydos* ; as, *hæc chlāmys, chlāmýdis* or *chlāmýdos, a soldier's cloak ;* and sometimes *ýnis* or *ýnos* ; as, *Trāchys, Trāchýnis* or *Trāchýnos, the name of a town.*

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, *n. brass or money*

Laus, laudis, *f. praise.*

Fraus, fraudis, *f. fraud.*

Præs, prædis, *m. or f. a surety.*

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos*; *Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables; thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphā*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine, and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

Trabs, trābis, a beam; *scobs, scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiēmīs*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stīpis*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chālybs, -ybis, steel.

Dens, -tis, a tooth.

Fons, -tis, a well.

Gryps, grȳphis, a griffin.

Hydrops, -ōpis, the dropsy.

Mērops, -ōpis, a wood-pecker.

Mons, -tis, a mountain.

Pons, -tis, a bridge.

Seps, sēpis, a kind of serpent; but

Seps, sēpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine:

Ādeps, ādīpis, fatness.

Rūdens, -tis, a cable.

Scrobs, scrōbis, a ditch.

Serpens, -tis, a serpent.

Stirps, stirpis, the root of a tree.

Stirps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcīpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cīpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælībis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cīpītis*; as, *præceps, præcīpītis*, headlong; *anceps, ancīpītis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cīpītis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.

Glands, glandis, an acorn.

Juglans, -dis, a walnut.

Lens, lendis, a nit.

So, *libripens, libripēdis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vēcors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rēdiens, rēde-*

untis; *nēquiens*, *nēqueuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput*, *cāptis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput*, *sincipitis*, the fore-head; and *occiput*, *-itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

Vox, *vōcis*, the voice; *lux*, *lūcis*, light.—So,

Appendix, -icis, an ad-	Crux, crūcis, a cross.	Merx, -cis, merchandise.
diction; dim. -icūla.	Fœx, -cis, dregs.	Nūtrix, -icis, a nurse.
Arx, arcis, a castle.	Falx, -cis, a scythe.	Nux, nūcis, a nut.
Cēlox, -ōcis, a pinnacle.	Fax, -ācis, a torch.	Pax, -ācis, peace.
Cervix, -icis, the neck.	Filix, -icis, a fern.	Pix, plois, pitch.
Cicātrix, -icis, a scar.	Lanx, -cis, a plate.	Rādix, -icis, a root.
Cornix, -icis, a crow.	Lōdix, -icis, a sheet.	Sālix, -icis, a willow.
Cōturnix, -icis, a quail.	Mēretrix, -icis, a cour-	Vibix, or -ex, -icis, the
Coxendix, -icis, the hip.	tezan.	mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax*, -ācis, a breast-plate; *cōrax*, -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -icis, m. the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine:

Āpex, the tuft or tassel	Cīmex, a bug.	Pōdex, the breech.
on the top of a priest's	Cōdex, a book.	Pontifex, a chief priest.
cap, the cap itself, or	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pūlex, a flea.
the top of any thing.	Frūtex, a shrub.	Rāmex, a rupture.
Artifex, an artist.	Index, an informer.	Sōrex, a rat.
Carnifex, an executioner.	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of
Caudex, the trunk of a	Mūrex, a shell-fish,	the head.
tree.	purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.
Vervex, a wether sheep, has	vervēcis; fanīsex, a mower of hay,	
fanīlēcis; rēsex, m. -ēcis, a vine branch cut off.		

To these masculines add,

Cālix, -icis, a cup.	Ōryx, -ygis, a wild goat.
Cālyx, -yicis, the bud of a flower.	Phœnix, -icis, a bird so called.
Coccyx, -ygis, or -yicis, a cuckoo.	Trādux, -ūcis, a graft, or off-set of
Fornix, -icis, a vault.	a vine; also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine :

Fornax, -ācis, a furnace.

Pānax, -ācis, the herb all-heal.

Climax, -ācis, a ladder.

Forfex, -īcis, a pair of scissors.

Hālex, -ēcis, a herring.

Smīlax, -ācis, the herb rope-weed.

Cārex, -īcis, a sedge.

Sūpellex, sūpellectilis, household-furniture.

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine ; as,

Calx, -cis, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal ; but calx, ūme, is always fem.

Cortex, -īcis, the bark of a tree.

Hystrix, -īcis, a porcupine.

Imbrex, -īcis, a gutter or roof-tile.

Lynx, -cis, an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.

Līmax, -ācis, a snail.

Ōbex, -īcis, a bolt or bar.

Perdix, -īcis, a partridge.

Pūmex, -īcis, a pumice-stone.

Rūmex, -īcis, sorrel, an herb.

Sandix, -īcis, a purple colour.

Sīlex, -īcis, a flint.

Vārix, -īcis, a swollen vein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

Āquilex, -ēgis, a well-maker.

Conjux, or -ux, -ūgis, a husband or wife.

Frux, (not used), frūgis, f. corn.

Grexx, grēgis, m. or f. a flock.

Lex, lēgis, f. a law.

Phālanx, -angis, f. a phalanx.

Rēmex, -īgis, a rower.

Rex, rēgis, a king.

Nix, nīvis, f. snow.

Nox, noctis, f. night.

Sēnex, sēnis, (an adj.) old.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns ; thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. ; but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine ; *ōnyx*, masc. or fem. *ōnŷchis*, a precious stone ; and so *sardōnyx* : *lārynx*, *lāryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe ; *Phryx*, *Phrŷgis*, a Phrygian ; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag ; *strix*, -īgis, f. a screech-owl ; *Styx*, -ŷgis, f. a river in hell ; *Hŷlax*, -ctis, the name of a dog ; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative Singular anciently ended also in *e* ; as, *Esuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, to pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. ; *Hæret pede pes*, foot sticks to foot, Virg. *Æn.* x. 361 ; for *esuriēti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

Åmussis, f. a mason's rule.	Rāvis, f. hoarseness.
Būris, f. the beam of a plough.	Sināpis, f. mustard.
Cannābis f. hemp.	Sītis, f. thirst.
Cūcūmis, m. a cucumber.	Tussis, f. a cough.
Gummis, f. gum.	Vis, f. strength.
Mēphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.	

To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places ; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain ; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya ;—2. of rivers ; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome ; *Batis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain : so, *Athēsis*, *Arāris*, *Albis*, *Liris*, &c. —3. Of gods ; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in* ; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im* ; as,

Clāvis, f. a key.	Pelvis, f. a bason.	Sēcūris, f. an axe.
Cūtis, f. the skin.	Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.	Sēmentis, f. a sowing.
Febris, f. a fever.		Strigillis, f. a horse-comb.
Nāvis, f. a ship.	Restis, f. a rope.	Turris, f. a tower.

Thus, *navem* or *navim* ; *puppem* or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a* ; as, *lampas*, *lampādis* or *lampādos*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it : *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Trōem* and *Trōa*, a Trojan ; *hēros*, a hero ; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a* : *Pan*, the god of shepherds ; *æther*, the sky ; *delphin*, a dolphin ; thus, *Pāna*, *athēra*, *delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in* ; sometimes in *idem*, never in *ida* ; as, *Pāris*, *Pāridis* or *Pāridos*, *Pārim* or *Pārin*, sometimes *Pāridem*, never *Pārida*.—So, *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in* ; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*, seldom *Elim* or *Elin*, a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ydos*, have *ydem* or *yda*, not *ym* or *yn*, in the accusative ; as, *chlāmys*, *-ydem* or *-yda*, not *chlāmyin*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n* ; as, *mētāmorphōsis*, *-eos* or *-ios*, *mētāmorphōsim* or *-in*, a change ; *Tēthys*, *-yos* or *-yis*, *Tēthym* or *-yn*, the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus* have the accusative in *ea* ; as, *Thēseus*, *Thēsea* ; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *sēdīle*, *sēdīli* ; *ānīmal*, *ānīmāli* ; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names ; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town ; and the following neuters in *ar* :

Far, *farre*, corn.

Nectar, -āre, the drink of the gods.

Hēpar, -āte, the liver.

Par, *pāre*, a match, a pair.

Jūbar, -āre, a sun-beam.

Sal, *sāle*, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi* ; but *cannābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i* ; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri* ; but *restis*, a rope, and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative ; as, *finis*, *sūpelle*, *vectis*, *pūgil*, a champion ; *mūgil* or *mūgilis* ; so, *rus*, *occiput* : also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi* ; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, *amnis*, and *ignis* ; but these have oftener *e*. *Cānālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i* ; as, *estūti*, *cani*, *lapīdi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives ; as, *bīpennis*, -i, a halbert ; *mōlāris*, -i, a millstone ; *quadrirēmīs*, -i, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilis*, -i ; *Dēcember*, -bri, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged ; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e* ; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns* ; as,

Adōlescens, a young man.

Princeps, a prince.

Torrens, a brook.

Infans, an infant.

Sēnex, an old man.

Vigil, a watchman.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y* ; as, *Atys*, *Atye* or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine ; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is* ; as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural ; as, *căpĭta*, *ĭtĭnĕra* : but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia* ; as, *sĕdĭlia*, *calcăria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium* ; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um* ; as, *sĕdĭle*, *sĕdĭli*, *sĕdĭlium* ; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium* ; *căput*, *căpĭte*, *căpĭtum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e* ; as, *mas*, a male, *măre*, *mărium* ; *vas*, a surety, *vădium* ; but polysyllables have rather *um* ; as, *cĭvĭtas*, a state or city, *cĭvĭtătum*, and sometimes *cĭvĭtătium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium* ; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants ; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium* ; *urbĭs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um* : *părens*, *vătes*, *pănis*, *jŭvĕnis*, and *cănis* ; *parentum*, *vatum*, &c. Horace, however, has *parentium*, Od. iii. 24, 21.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular :

Căro, <i>carnis</i> , f. <i>flesh</i> .	Lis, <i>litis</i> , f. <i>strife</i> .
Cohors, -tis, f. <i>a cohort, a company</i> .	Mus, <i>mŭris</i> , m. <i>a mouse</i> .
Cor, <i>cordis</i> , n. <i>the heart</i> .	Nix, <i>nĭvis</i> , f. <i>snow</i> .
Cos, <i>cōtis</i> , f. <i>a hone or whetstone</i> .	Nox, <i>noctis</i> , f. <i>the night</i> .
Dos, <i>dōtis</i> , f. <i>a dowry</i> .	Os, <i>ossis</i> , n. <i>a bone</i> .
Faux, <i>faucis</i> , f. <i>the jaws</i> .	Quĭris, -Itis, <i>a Roman</i> .
Glis, <i>glĭris</i> , m. <i>a rat</i> .	Samnis, -Itis, m. or f. <i>a Samnite</i> .
Lar, <i>lăris</i> , m. <i>a household god</i> .	Ūter, <i>ŭtris</i> , m. <i>a bottle</i> .
Liĭter, -tris, m. or f. <i>a little boat</i> .	

Thus, *Samnĭtium*, *ĭntrium*, *ĭtium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as* ; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium* ; *bes*, eight ounces, *besium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *bŭbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um* ; as, *Măcĕdo*, a Macedonian ; *Arabs*, an Arabian ; *Ēthiops*, an Ethiopian ; *Mōnōcĕros*, a unicorn ; *Lynx*, a beast so called ; *Thrax*, a Thracian ; *Măcĕdōnum*, *Arăbum*, *Ēthiōpum*, *Mōnōcĕrōtum*, *Lyncum*, *Thrăcum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on* ; as, *ĕpigramma*, *ĕpigrammătum* or *ĕpigrammătôn*, an epigram ; *mĕtămorphōsis*, -ium or -ôn.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, m. souls departed, *mānium*; *cælitēs*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cælitum*; because they would have had in the singular, *mānis* or *mānes*, and *cæles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Sātūrnālīa*, the feasts of Saturn, *Sātūrnālīum* and *Sātūrnālīōrum*. So, *Bacchānālīa*, *Compītālīa*, *Terminālīa*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are by the poets often contracted into *ūm*; as, *nōcentūm*, for *nōcentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cælitūum*, for *cælitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Synœpe*, and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poēmātis*, rather than *poēmātibus*, from the old nominative *poēmātum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Trōāsī* or *Trōāsīn*, for *Trōādibus*, from *Trōas*, *Trōādis* or *Trōādos*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural ends also in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*; *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So, *Tros*, *Trōas*; *hēros*, *hērōas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiōpas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis* or *-ādos*; *-ādi*; *-ādem* or *-āda*; *-as*; *-āde*. Plur. *-ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-ādes* or *-ādas*; *-ādes*; *-ādibus*.

Trōas, f. *Trōādis* or *-ādos*; *-i*; *-em* or *-a*; *-as*; *-e*. Pl. *Troādes*; *-um*; *-ibus*, *-si* or *-sin*; *-es* or *-as*; *-es*; *-ibus*.

Trōs, m. *Trōis*; *Trōi*; *Trōem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Trōe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *-idis* or *-idos*; *-idi*; *-idem* or *-ida*; *-i* or *-is*; *-ide*.

Pāris, m. *-idis* or *-idos*; *-idi*; *-idem*, *Pārim*, or *-in*; *-i*; *-de*.

Chlāmys, f. *-ydis* or *-ydos*; *-ydi*; *-ydem* or *-yda*; *-ys*; *-yde*, &c.

Cāpyis, m. *Cāpyis* or *-yos*; *-yi*; *-ym* or *-yn*; *-y*; *-ye* or *-y*.

Mētāmorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-eos*; *-i*; *-im* or *-in*; *-i*; *-i*, &c.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*; *-ēi* or *-ei*; *-ea*; *-eu*; abl. *-eo* of the sec. decl.

Dido, f. *Didūs* or *Didōnis*; *Didō* or *Didōni*; *Didō*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; Nom. Sing. *ūs*; Gen. *ūs*; Dat. *ūi*; Acc. *um*; Voc. *like the nom.*; Abl. *ū*; Nom. Acc. Voc. Plur. *ūs* or *ūā*; Gen. *uum*; Dat. and Abl. *ībūs*; as,

Fructus, *fruit*, Masc.

Sing.

Plur.

N. Fructus.

N. Fructus.

G. Fructūs.

G. Fructuum.

D. Fructui.

D. Fructibus.

A. Fructum.

A. Fructus.

V. Fructus.

V. Fructus.

A. Fructu.

A. Fructibus.

Cornu, *a horn*, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

N. Cornu.

N. Cornua.

G. Cornu.

G. Cornuum.

D. Cornu.

D. Cornibus.

A. Cornu.

A. Cornua.

V. Cornu.

V. Cornua.

A. Cornu.

A. Cornibus.

In like manner decline,

Āditus, *an access*.

Hābītus, *a habit, the state of mind or body*.

Prōventus, *an increase, revenue*.

Anfractus, *a winding*.

state of mind or body.

revenue.

Āditus, *the sense of hearing*.

Hālītus, *breath*.

Quæstus, *gain*.

[song. Haustus, *a draught*.

Questus, *a complaint*.

Cantus, *a singing or Ictus, a stroke*.

Rēdītus, *a return, an income*.

Cāsus, *a fall, an accident, or chance*.

Impētus, *an attack*.

income.

dent, or chance.

Incessus, *a stately gait*.

Rictus, *a grinning*.

Cæstus, *a gauntlet*.

Luctus, *grief*.

Rītus, *a rite, a ceremony*.

Cestus, *a marriage-girdle*.

Luxus, *luxury, riot*.

Rīsus, *laughter*. [ny.

girdle.

Mētus, *fear*.

Ructus, *a belching*.

Coetus, *an assembly*.

Missus, *a throw; a turn or heat in races*.

Saltus, *a leap, a forest*.

Cultus, *worship, dress*.

Mōtus, *a motion*.

Sēnātus, *the senate, the supreme council among*

Currus, *a chariot*.

Nexus, *servitude for*

the Romans.

Cursus, *a race*.

debt.

[law. Sensus, *a sense, feeling, meaning*.

Dēcessus, *a departure*.

Nūrus, *f. a daughter-in-law*.

Sexus, *a sex*.

Eventus, *an event*.

Nūtus, *a nod*.

Sīnus, *a bosom*.

Exercītus, *an army*.

Obtūtus, *a look*.

Singultus, *a sob, the hiccough or hiccup*.

Exitus, *an issue*.

Ōdōrātus, *the sense of smelling*.

Sitatus, *a situation*.

Fastus, *pride*.

Passus, *a pace*.

Stātus, *a posture*.

Flātus, *a blast*.

Prīncipātus, *pre-eminence*.

Socrus, *f. a mother-in-law*.

Flētus, *weeping*.

Prōcessus, *a progress*.

Spirītus, *a breathing, a spirit*.

Fluctus, *a wave*.

Prōgressus, *an advancement*.

Successus, *success*.

Fœtus, *an offspring*.

Prospectus, *a view*.

Gēlu, *ice*.

Gēmītus, *a groan*.

Grādus, *a step, a degree*.

Gustus, *the taste*.

Sumptus, <i>expense.</i>	Transitus, <i>a passage.</i>	Visus, <i>the sight.</i>
Tactus, <i>the touch.</i>	Tūmulus, <i>an uproar.</i>	Victus, <i>food.</i> [names.
Tōnitru, <i>thunder.</i>	Vēnātus, <i>hunting.</i>	Vultus, <i>the counte-</i>

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Ānus, <i>an old woman.</i>	Mānus, <i>the hand.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Pēnus, <i>a storehouse.</i>	Trībus, <i>a tribe.</i>

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. ; and so are the compounds of *manus* : *ūnimānus*, having one hand ; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the fourth declension ; thus,

Dōmus, a house, Fem.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Domus.	<i>Nom.</i> Domus.
<i>Gen.</i> Domūs, or -mi.	<i>Gen.</i> Domuum, or -ōrum.
<i>Dat.</i> Domui, or -mo.	<i>Dat.</i> Domībus.
<i>Acc.</i> Domum.	<i>Acc.</i> Domus, or -os.
<i>Voc.</i> Domus.	<i>Voc.</i> Domus.
<i>Abl.</i> Domo.	<i>Abl.</i> Domībus.

Note. *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house ; and *domi*, at home, or of home ; as, *meminēris domi*. Ter. Eun. iv. 7, 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural :

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Lācus, <i>a lake.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.</i>
Arcus, <i>a bow.</i>	Partus, <i>a birth.</i>	Trībus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Artus, <i>a joint.</i>	Portus, <i>a harbour.</i>	Vēru, <i>a spit.</i>
Gēnu, <i>the knee.</i>		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus* ; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *Iēsus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane ; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructus*, *fructue* ; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructūbus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructūbus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers we still find the genitive singular in *uis* ; as, *Ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*, Ter. Heaut. ii. 3, 46 ; and in others, the dative in *u* ; as, *Resistere impētū*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24 ; *Esse usu sibi*, for *usui*, Ib. xiii. 71. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted ; as, *currūm*, for *currūbus*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

Res, a thing, Fem.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res.</i>	<i>Nom. Res.</i>	<i>ēs.</i>	<i>ēs.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Reī.</i>	<i>Gen. Rērum.</i>	<i>eī.</i>	<i>ērūm.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Reī.</i>	<i>Dat. Rēbus.</i>	<i>eī.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rem.</i>	<i>Acc. Res.</i>	<i>em.</i>	<i>ēs.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res.</i>	<i>Voc. Res.</i>	<i>ēs.</i>	<i>ēs.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Re.</i>	<i>Abl. Rēbus.</i>	<i>ē.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Ācies, the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.</i>	<i>Inglūvies, gluttony.</i>	<i>Scābies, the scab or itch.</i>
<i>Cāries, rottenness.</i>	<i>Mācies, leanness.</i>	<i>Sēries, an order.</i>
<i>Cēsāries, the hair.</i>	<i>Mātēries, matter.</i>	<i>Spēcies, an appearance.</i>
<i>Fācies, the face.</i>	<i>Pernīcies, destruction.</i>	<i>Sūperfcies, the surface.</i>
<i>Glācies, ice.</i>	<i>Prōlūvies, a looseness.</i>	<i>Tempēries, temperateness.</i>
	<i>Rābies, madness.</i>	
	<i>Sānies, gore.</i>	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mēridies*, mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *ē*; as, *fide*, for *fideī*, Ov. Met. iii. 341; vi. 506; *die*, for *diēī*, Virg. G. i. 208. So, *et jam die vesper erat*, for *diēī*, Sall. Jug. 52, & 106.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three: *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four: *ābies*, a fir-tree; *āries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes: by Google

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Åvernus, a lake in Campania, hell. *Mænālus*, a hill in Arcadia.

Dindŷmus, a hill in Phrygia.

Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.

Ismārus, a hill in Thrace.

Tænārus, a promontory in Laconia.

Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.

Tärtārus, hell.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernōrum* ; *Dindyma*, *-ōrum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jūga* or *cācūmina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing., and masc. and neuter in the plur. :*

Jōcus, a jest, pl. *jōci* and *jōca* ; *lōcus*, a place, pl. *lōci* and *lōca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *lōci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Carbāsus, a sail, pl. *carbāsa* ; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergāma*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural :*

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven ; *Elŷsium*, pl. *Elŷsii*, the Elysian fields ; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the singular, masc. or neuter in the plural :*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra* ; *frēnum*, a bridle, pl. *frēni* and *frēna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

Dēlicium, a delight, pl. *dēliciæ* ; *ēpŷlum*, a banquet, pl. *ēpŷlæ* ; *balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclitēs* ; as, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa*, *vāsōrum* ; *jūgērūm*, *jūgērī*, an acre ; plur. *jūgēra*, *jūgērūm*, *jūgērībus*, which has likewise *jūgērīs* and *jūgēre* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable ; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds ; *fas*, right ; *nēfas*, wrong ; *sīnāpi*, mustard ; *māne*, the morning ; as, *clārum māne*, Pers. iii. 1 ; *a mane ad vespēram*, Plaut. ; *multo mane*, &c. ; *cēpe*, an onion ; *gau-*

sāpe, a rough coat, &c. ; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun ; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, Pers. v. 53. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow, Mart. v. 58. *O magnum Græcōrum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks ; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus* ; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names ; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin ; as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta* ; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular ; *dicis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing. ; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for form's sake ; *res nauci*, a thing of no value ; *inficias*, and *incita* or *incitas*, in the acc. plur. ; thus, *ire inficias*, to deny ; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus ; *ingrātis*, in spite of one, in the abl. plur. ; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time ; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time ; *promptu*, in readiness ; *nātu*, by birth ; *injussu*, without command or leave ; *ergō*, for the sake ; as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 670. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story ; *compēde*, f. with a fetter ; *casse*, m. with a net ; Plur. *ambāges*, -*ibus* ; *compēdes*, -*ium*, -*ibus* ; *casses*, -*ium*.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and are therefore called *diptōta* ; as, *nēcesse*, or -*um*, necessity ; *vōlūpe*, or *vōlup*, pleasure ; *instar*, likeness, bigness ; *astu*, a town ; *hir*, the palm of the hand ; in the nom. and accus. sing. ; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespère* or *vespēri*, the evening ; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse* ; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte*, in the ablative, of its own accord : so, *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force ; *veprem*, m. a briar, a thorn, and *vepre* ; *verbēris*, n. gen. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe ; in the plural entire ; *vepres*, -*um* or -*ium*, &c. ; *verbēra*, *verbērum*, *verbēribus*, &c. ; *rēpētundārum*, abl. *rēpētundis*, sc. *pēcūniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion ; *suppētiae*, nom. pl. *suppētias*, in the acc., help ; *infēriæ*, *infērias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta* ; as, *prēci*, *prēcem*, *prēce*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used : in the plural it is entire, *prēces*, *prēcum*, *prēcibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the ob-

solete *fēmen*, the thigh ; in the dat. and abl. sing. *fēmīni*, and *-e* ; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *fēmīna*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas* ; *tantundem*, nom. and acc., *tantīdem*, gen., even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative ; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuter : *mēlos*, a song ; *mēle*, songs ; *ēpos*, a heroic poem ; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom ; *cēte*, whales ; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c., used only in the nom. acc. and voc. : also, *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta* : *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another ; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast ; *sordis*, f. of filth ; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power ; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire ; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether : *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural ; *ōpis*, in the plural, generally signifies wealth or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter ; *daps*, a dish of meat ; and *frux*, corn ; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta* : thus, *os*, the mouth ; *lux*, light ; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the gen. sing. and the plural entirely ; dat. sing. *chao*. So, *sātiās*, i. e. *sātiētas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth declension, wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. ; also the gen. dat. and abl. plural.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. ; as, *justitia*, justice ; *ambitus*, ambition ; *astus*, cunning ; *mūsica*, music ; *āpium*, parsley ; *argentum*, silver ; *aurum*, gold ; *lac*, milk ; *tritium*, wheat ; *hordeum*, barley ; *āvēna*, oats ; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

Äer, äëris, <i>the air.</i>	Nëmo, -inis, <i>nobody.</i>
Æther, -ëris, <i>the sky.</i>	Pënus, -i, or -ûs, <i>all manner of provisions.</i>
Fîmus, -i, <i>dung.</i>	Pontus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>
Hespërus, -i, <i>the evening star.</i>	Pulvis, -ëris, <i>dust.</i>
Limus, -i, <i>slime.</i>	Sanguis, -inis, <i>blood.</i>
Mëridies, -iëi, <i>mid-day.</i>	Söpor, -öris, <i>sleep.</i>
Mundus, -i, <i>a woman's ornaments.</i>	Viscus, -i, <i>bird-lime.</i>
Muscus, -i, <i>moss.</i>	

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, <i>potter's earth.</i>	Sälus, -ütis, <i>safety.</i>
Fäma, -æ, <i>fume.</i>	Sîtis, -is, <i>thirst.</i>
Hûmus, -i, <i>the ground.</i>	Sûpellex, -ctilis, <i>household-furniture.</i>
Lues, -is, <i>a plague.</i>	Täbes, -is, <i>a consumption.</i>
Plebs, plëbis, <i>the common people.</i>	Tellus, -ûris, <i>the earth.</i>
Päbes, -is, <i>the youth.</i>	Vespëra, -æ, <i>the evening.</i>
Quies, -ëtis, <i>rest.</i>	

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, <i>a list of names.</i>	Lütum, -i, <i>clay.</i>
Dilüctûlum, -i, <i>the dawning of day.</i>	Nihil, nihillum, or nil, <i>nothing.</i>
Ëbur, -öris, <i>ivory.</i>	Pëlägus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>
Gëlu, ind. <i>frost.</i>	Pënum, -i, and pënus, -öris, <i>all kinds of provisions.</i>
Hilum, -i, <i>the black speck of a bean, a trifle.</i>	Sal, sälis, <i>salt.</i>
Justitium, -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i>	Sënum, -ii, <i>old age.</i>
Lëthum, <i>death.</i>	Ver, vëris, <i>the spring.</i>
	Virus, -i, <i>poison.</i>

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

Äpollinäres, -ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>	Ölympia, -örum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Bacchänälia, -ium, & -iorum, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i>	Sÿracûsæ, -ärum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
Bücölica, -örum, <i>a book of pastorals.</i>	Hiërösölyma, -örum, <i>Jerusalem ; or Hiërösölyma, -æ, of the first declension.</i>

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, <i>lattices or windows made with cross bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits.</i>	Cödicilli, <i>writings.</i>
Cäni, <i>grey hairs.</i>	Druïdes, -um, <i>the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.</i>
Cassæ, -ium, <i>a hunter's net.</i>	Fasces, -ium, <i>a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i>
Cëlëres, -um, <i>the light horse.</i>	

Fasti, -ōrum, or fastus, -uum, calendar, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.	Lēmūres, -um, hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.
Fines, -ium, the borders of a country, or a country.	Lībēri, children.
Fōri, the gangways of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.	Majōres, -um, ancestors.
Furfūres, -um, scales in the head.	Mīnōres, -um, successors.
Infēri, the gods below.	Nātāles, -ium, parentage.
	Postēri, posterity.
	Prōcēres, -um, the nobles.
	Pūgillāres, -ium, writing tables.
	Sentes, -ium, thorns.
	Sūpēri, the gods above.
	Vepres, -um, & -ium, briars.

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, the Alps.	Fēriæ, holidays.	Offūciæ, cheats.
Angustiæ, difficulties.	Gādes, -ium, Cadiz.	Ōpēræ, workmen.
Āpinæ, gewgaws.	Gerræ, trifles.	Pāriētīnæ, ruinous walls.
Argūtīæ, quirks, wit-ticisms.	Hyādes, -um, a cluster of stars.	Partes, -ium, a party.
Bigæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.	Indūciæ, a truce.	Phālēræ, trappings.
Trīgæ, — by three.	Indūviæ, clothes to put on.	Plāgæ, nets.
Quadrīgæ, — by four.	Īneptiæ, silly stories.	Pleiādes, -um, the seven stars. [ments.
Braccæ, breeches.	Insidiæ, snares.	Præstigiæ, enchant-
Branchiæ, the gills of a fish.	Kālendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.	Prīmītiæ, first fruits.
Chārites, -um, the three Graces.	Lāpīdīnæ, stone-quarries.	Quisquilliæ, sweepings.
Cūnæ, a cradle.	Litræ, an epistle.	Rēliquiæ, a remainder.
Dēcīmæ, tithes.	Lactes, -ium, the small guts.	Sālebræ, rugged places.
Diræ, imprecations, the Furies.	Mānūbiæ, spoils taken in war.	Sālīnæ, salt-pits.
Divitiæ, riches.	Mīnæ, threats.	Scālæ, a ladder.
Dryādes, -um, the nymphs of the woods.	Mīnūtīæ, little niceties.	Scātebræ, a spring.
Excūbiæ, watches.	Nūgæ, trifles.	Scōpæ, a broom, a besom.
Exsēquiæ, funerals.	Nundīnæ, a market.	Tēnebræ, darkness.
Exūviæ, spoils. [ings.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Thermæ, hot baths.
Fācētīæ, pleasant say-		Thermōpylæ, straits of mount Oeta.
Fācultates, -um, et -ium, one's goods and chattels.		Tricæ, toys.
		Valvæ, folding doors.
		Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
		Vindiciæ, a claim of liberty, a defence.

8. The following neuters want the singular :

Acta, public acts or records.	Clibāria, victuals.
Æstīva, sc. castra, summer quarters.	Cōmītia, an assembly of the people, to make laws, to elect magistrates, or to hold trials.
Arma, arms.	Crēpundia, children's baubles.
Bellāria, -iōrum, sweetmeats.	Cūnābūla, a cradle, an origin.
Bōna, goods.	Dictēria, scoffs, witticisms.
Brēvia, -ium, shallows.	Exta, the entrails.
Castra, a camp.	
Chāristia, -iōrum, a peace-feast.	

Februa, -ōrum, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>	Pārentālia, -ium, <i>solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>
Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>	Philtra, <i>love potions.</i>
Frāga, <i>strawberries.</i>	Præcordia, <i>the bowels.</i>
Hÿberna, <i>sc. castra, winter quarters.</i>	Principia, <i>the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
Ilia, <i>ilium, the entrails.</i>	Pÿthia, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>
Incūnābŭla, <i>a cradle.</i>	Rostra, <i>a place in Rome adorned with the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.</i>
Insecta, <i>insects.</i>	Scrŭta, <i>old clothes.</i>
Iusta, <i>funeral rites.</i>	Sponsālia, -ium, <i>espousals.</i>
Lāmenta, <i>lamentations.</i>	Stātīva, <i>sc. castra, a standing camp.</i>
Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>	Suōvētaurilia, -ium, <i>a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.</i>
Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>	Tālāria, -ium, <i>winged shoes.</i>
Māgālia, -ium, <i>cottages.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>
Mœnia, <i>the walls of a city.</i>	Pālæaria, -ium, <i>the dew-lap of a beast.</i>
Mūnia, -iōrum, <i>offices.</i>	Transtra, <i>the seats where the rowers sit in ships.</i>
Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>	Pārāpherna, <i>all things which the wife brings to her husband, except her dowry.</i>
Ōvilia, -ium, <i>an enclosure into which the people went to give their votes.</i>	Ustensilia, -ium, <i>utensils.</i>

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbo*, and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurūs*, a laurel-tree; *sēquester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātēria*, -iæ, or *mātēries*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -bis, the common people, or *plēbes*, -is, -eī, or contracted, *plebī*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tōnitrū*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -i, and *ūs*, m. or f., or *pēnus*, -ōris, neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther*, -ēris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or -idis, a tiger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidēnæ*, -ārum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ, and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis, and *cassida*, -æ, a helmet.—So,

Æcinus, et -um, <i>a grape-stone.</i>	Ancle, et -ium, <i>an oval shield.</i>
Alvear, et -e, et -ium, <i>a bee-hive.</i>	Angiportus, -ūs, et -i; et -um, <i>a narrow lane.</i>
Āmārācus, et -um, <i>sweet-marjoram.</i>	

Aphractus, et -um, <i>an open ship.</i>	Măcēria, et -ies, -iēi, <i>a wall.</i>
Aplustre, et -um, <i>the flag, colours.</i>	Milliāre, et -ium, <i>a mile.</i>
Băcūlus, et -um, <i>a staff.</i>	Mōnītum, et -us, -ūs, <i>an admonition.</i>
Balteus, et -um, <i>a belt.</i>	Mūria, et -ies, -iēi, <i>brine or pickle.</i>
Bătillus, et -um, <i>a fire-shovel.</i>	Nāsus, et -um, <i>the nose.</i>
Căpūlus, et -um, <i>a hilt.</i>	Obaldio, et -ium, <i>a siege.</i>
Căpus, et -o, <i>a capon.</i>	Oestrus, et -um, <i>a gad-fly.</i>
Cēpa, et -e, indec. <i>an onion.</i>	Ostrea, et -eum, <i>an oyster.</i>
Clŷpeus, et -um, <i>a shield.</i>	Peplus, et -um, <i>a veil, a robe.</i>
Collūvies, et -io, <i>filth, dirt.</i>	Pistrīna, et -um, <i>a bake-house.</i>
Compāges, et -go, <i>a joining.</i>	Prætextus, -ūs, et -um, -i, <i>a pretext.</i>
Conger, et -grus, <i>a large eel.</i>	Rāpa, et -um, <i>a turnip.</i>
Crōcus, et -um, <i>saffron.</i>	Rūma, et -men, <i>the cud.</i>
Cūbitus, et -um, <i>a cubit.</i>	Ruscus, et -um, <i>a brush.</i>
Dilūvium, et -ies, <i>a deluge.</i>	Seps, et sēpes, f. <i>a hedge.</i>
Ēlēphantus, et Ēlēphas, -antis, <i>an elephant.</i>	Segmen, et -mentum, <i>a piece or paring.</i>
Ēlēgus, et -ēla, et -ia, <i>an elegy.</i>	Sibillus, et -um, <i>a hissing.</i>
Essēda, et -um, <i>a chariot.</i>	Sīnus, et -um, <i>a milk-pail.</i>
Ēventus, et -um, <i>an event.</i>	Spureltia, et -ies, -iēi, <i>naughtiness.</i>
Fulgetra, et -um, <i>lightning.</i>	Strāmen, et -ntum, <i>straw.</i>
Gălērus, et -um, <i>a hat.</i>	Suffimen, et -ntum, <i>a perfume.</i>
Gibbus, et -a; et -er, -ēris, or -ēri, <i>a bunch, a swelling.</i>	Tignus, et -um, <i>a plank.</i>
Glūtīnum, et -en, <i>glue.</i>	Tōral, et -āle, <i>a bed-covering.</i>
Hebdōmas, et -āda, <i>a week.</i>	Torcūlar, et -āre, <i>a wine-press.</i>
Intrita, et -um, <i>fine mortar, minced meat.</i>	Vēternus, et -um, <i>a lethargy.</i>
Librārium, et -a, <i>a book-case.</i>	Viscus, et -um, <i>bird-lime.</i>

Note.—The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus, *vāsa*, -ōrum, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*: but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropped the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmides*, the son of Priāmus; *Æētiās*, the daughter of Æētes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also

from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family ; as, *Æacīdes*, the son, grandson, great grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus* ; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people ; as, *Rōmūlīdæ*, the Romans, from their first king *Romūlus*.

Patronymic names of men end in *des* ; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third ; as, *Priāmīdes*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-dæ*, *-dārum*, &c. ; *Nērīne*, *-es* ; *Tyndāris*, *-īdis* or *-īdos* ; *Æētias*, *-ādis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun ; as, *Tros*, *Trōis*, a man born at Troy ; *Trōas*, *-ādis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man ; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman : so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*, *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum ; from *Troja*, *Sicīlia*, *Mācēdōnia*, *Arpīnum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood ; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract* ; as, *justītia*, justice ; *bōnītas*, goodness ; *dulcēdo*, sweetness : from *justus*, just ; *bōnus*, good ; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes* ; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive* ; as, *libellus*, a little book ; *chartūla*, a little paper ; *opusculum*, a little work ; *corculum*, a little heart ; *rētīculum*, a small net ; *scābellum*, a small form ; *lāpillus*, a little stone ; *cultellus*, a little knife ; *pāgella*, a little page : from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lāpis*, *culter*, *pāgina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive ; as, from *puer*, *puērūlus*, *puellus*, *puellūlus* ;

from *cista*, *cistŭla*, *cistella*, *cistellŭla* ; from *hŏmo*, *hŏmuncio*, *hŏmuncŭlus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum* ; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o* ; as, *căpŭto*, *-ŏnis*, having a large head : so, *năso*, *lăbeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun ; as, *ămor*, love ; *doctrina*, learning ; from *ămo*, and *dŏceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ŭra* ; as, *lectio*, a lesson ; *ămător*, a lover ; *luctus*, grief ; *creătŭra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality ; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective, therefore, always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive : if the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense : thus we can say, “ a good thing ; ” but we cannot say, “ a book thing.”

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An Adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension with the adjective.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

Ācer, <i>sharp.</i>	Cēlēber, <i>famous.</i>	Pēdester, <i>on foot.</i>
Ālācer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Cēler, <i>swift. [a horse.</i>	Sālūber, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Ēquester, <i>belonging to</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>
	Pāluster, <i>marshy.</i>	Vōlūcer, <i>swift.</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus* for the masc. *bōna* for the fem. *bōnum* for the neut. good; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	Bon-us,	-a, -um.	<i>N.</i>	Bon-i,	-æ, -a.
<i>G.</i>	Bon-i,	-æ, -i.	<i>G.</i>	Bon-ōrum,	-ārum, -ōrum.
<i>D.</i>	Bon-o,	-æ, -o.	<i>D.</i>	Bon-is,	-is, -is.
<i>A.</i>	Bon-um,	-am, -um.	<i>A.</i>	Bon-os,	-as, -a.
<i>V.</i>	Bon-e,	-a, -um.	<i>V.</i>	Bon-i,	-æ, -a.
<i>A.</i>	Bon-o,	-ā, -o.	<i>A.</i>	Bon-is,	-is, -is.

In like manner decline,

Ācerbus, <i>unripe, bitter.</i>	Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>	Calvus, <i>bald.</i>
Ācidus, <i>sour, tart.</i>	Argūtus, <i>quisk, shrill.</i>	Cāmūrus, <i>crooked.</i>
Ācūtus, <i>sharp.</i>	Assus, <i>roasted, hot, pure.</i>	Candīdus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>
Ādultērīnus, <i>counterfeit.</i>	Astūtus, <i>cunning.</i>	Cānus, <i>hoary.</i>
Āgrōtus, <i>sick.</i>	Āvārus, <i>covetous.</i>	Cārus, <i>dear.</i>
Āmūlus, <i>vying with.</i>	Āvidus, <i>greedy.</i>	Cassus, <i>void.</i>
Āquus, <i>equal, just.</i>	Augustus, <i>venerable.</i>	Castus, <i>chaste.</i>
Āhēnus, <i>of brass.</i>	Austērus, <i>harsh, rough.</i>	Cautus, <i>wary.</i>
Albus, <i>white.</i>	Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>	Cāvus, <i>hollow.</i>
Altus, <i>high.</i>	Barbārus, <i>savage.</i>	Celsus, <i>high, lofty.</i>
Āmārus, <i>bitter.</i>	Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>	Cernuus, <i>stooping.</i>
Āmœnus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Beātus, <i>blessed.</i>	Certus, <i>certain, sure.</i>
Ambiguus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Clārus, <i>famous.</i>
Āmicus, <i>friendly.</i>	Bēnignus, <i>kind.</i>	Claudus, <i>lame.</i>
Amplus, <i>large.</i>	Bīmus, <i>two years old.</i>	Cærūlus, or -ēus, <i>azure, sky-coloured.</i>
Annuus, <i>yearly.</i>	Blæsus, <i>lispings.</i>	Commōdus, <i>convenient.</i>
Angustus, <i>narrow.</i>	Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Concinnus, <i>fine, neat.</i>
Antiquus, <i>ancient.</i>	Brūtus, <i>brutish, senseless.</i>	Cōruscus, <i>glittering.</i>
Apricus, <i>sunny.</i>	Cādūcus, <i>fading.</i>	Crassus, <i>thick.</i>
Aptus, <i>fit.</i>	Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>	Crēpērus, <i>doubtful.</i>
Arcānus, <i>secret.</i>	Callidus, <i>cunning.</i>	Crispus, <i>curled.</i>
Arctus, <i>strait.</i>		

60 ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Crūdus, <i>raw.</i>	Gēlīdus, <i>cold as ice.</i>	Longinquus, <i>far off.</i>
Cunctus, <i>all.</i>	Gēminus, <i>double.</i>	Longus, <i>long.</i>
Curtus, <i>short.</i>	Germānus, <i>of the same stock, real.</i>	Lubricus, <i>slippery.</i>
Curvus, <i>crooked.</i>	Gibbus, <i>convex.</i>	Lūcidus, <i>bright.</i>
Cynicus, <i>churlish.</i>	Gilvus, <i>flesh-coloured.</i>	Lūridus, <i>pale, ghastly.</i>
Dædālus, <i>poet. curiously made.</i>	Glaucus, <i>grey.</i>	Luseus, <i>blind of an eye.</i>
Dēcōrus, <i>graceful.</i>	Gnārus, <i>skilful.</i>	Mācellentus, <i>lean.</i>
Densus, <i>thick.</i>	Gnāvus, <i>active.</i>	Mālinus, <i>spiteful.</i>
Dignus, <i>worthy.</i>	Grātus, <i>thankful.</i>	Mancus, <i>maimed, lame.</i>
Dirus, <i>direful.</i>	Hirsūtus, <i>hirsute, rough.</i>	Mānifestus, <i>evident.</i>
Disertus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Hispīdus, <i>rugged.</i>	Marcidus, <i>rotten.</i>
Diūturnus, <i>lasting.</i>	Hōnestus, <i>honourable, honest.</i>	Mēdius, <i>mid or middle.</i>
Doctus, <i>learned.</i>	Hornus, <i>of this year.</i>	Mendicus, <i>beggar-like.</i>
Dūbus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Hūmānus, <i>human, belonging to a man ; humane, polite.</i>	Menstruus, <i>monthly.</i>
Dūrus, <i>hard.</i>	Hūmīdus, <i>moist.</i>	Mērācus, <i>without mixture.</i>
Ebrius, <i>drunk.</i>	Idōneus, <i>fit.</i>	Mērus, <i>pure.</i>
Effœtus, <i>past having young.</i>	Jejūnus, <i>fasting.</i>	Mīrus, <i>wonderful.</i>
Ēgēnus, <i>poor.</i>	Ignārus, <i>ignorant.</i>	Mōdestus, <i>modest.</i>
Egrēgius, <i>remarkable.</i>	Ignāvus, <i>slothful.</i>	Mœstus, <i>sad.</i>
Ēlixus, <i>boiled.</i>	Imprōbus, <i>wicked.</i>	Mōlestus, <i>troublesome.</i>
Exiguus, <i>small.</i>	Incestus, <i>unchaste.</i>	Mōrōsus, <i>surlly.</i>
Eximius, <i>excellent.</i>	Inclŷtus, <i>renowned.</i>	Mōrus, <i>foolish.</i>
Exōticus, <i>from a foreign country.</i>	Indīgus, <i>needy.</i>	Mūcidus, <i>musty.</i>
Externus, <i>outward.</i>	Industrius, <i>diligent.</i>	Mundus, <i>neat.</i>
Facētus, <i>witty.</i>	Īneptus, <i>unfit.</i>	Mūtīlus, <i>maimed, without horns.</i>
Facundus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Infīdus, <i>unfaithful.</i>	Mūtus, <i>dumb.</i>
Falsus, <i>false, lying.</i>	Ingēnuus, <i>free-born.</i>	Mūtuus, <i>mutual, lent or borrowed.</i>
Fāmēlicus, <i>famished.</i>	Īnmīcus, <i>unfriendly.</i>	Nimius, <i>too much.</i>
Fātuus, <i>foolish.</i>	Īnīquus, <i>uneven, unjust.</i>	Noxius, <i>hurtful.</i>
Faustus, <i>lucky.</i>	Intentus, <i>intense, strait.</i>	Nūdus, <i>naked.</i>
Fērus, <i>wild, savage.</i>	Inīdus, <i>envious.</i>	Nuntius, <i>bringing news.</i>
Fessus, <i>weary.</i>	Invītus, <i>unwilling.</i>	Ōbēsus, <i>fat, dull.</i>
Festīnus, <i>hastening.</i>	Irācundus, <i>passionate.</i>	Oblīquus, <i>crooked.</i>
Festus, <i>festival.</i>	Irātus, <i>angry.</i>	Obscœnus, <i>obscene, ominous.</i>
Fīdus, <i>faithful.</i>	Irrītus, <i>fruitless, vain.</i>	Obscūrus, <i>dark, mean.</i>
Finīlīmus, <i>neighbouring.</i>	Jūcundus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Obsŏlētus, <i>old, out of use.</i>
Firmus, <i>firm, steady.</i>	Lætus, <i>joyful.</i>	Obstīpus, <i>stiff, wry.</i>
Flaccus, <i>flap-eared.</i>	Lævus, <i>on the left hand.</i>	Obtūsus, <i>blunt.</i>
Flāvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Largus, <i>large.</i>	Ōdiōsus, <i>hateful.</i>
Fœdus, <i>ugly.</i>	Lascīvus, <i>wanton.</i>	Ōpācus, <i>dark, shady.</i>
Fœtus, <i>big with young.</i>	Lassus, <i>weary.</i>	Ōpīmus, <i>rich, fat.</i>
Formōsus, <i>fair.</i>	Lātus, <i>broad.</i>	Ōpīpārus, <i>costly, dainty.</i>
Frētus, <i>trusting.</i>	Laxus, <i>loose, slack.</i>	Opportūnus, <i>seasonable.</i>
Frivŏlus, <i>trifling.</i>	Lentus, <i>slow, pliant.</i>	Ōpūlentus, <i>v. -ens, rich.</i>
Fulvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Lēpidus, <i>pretty, witty.</i>	Orbus, <i>destitute.</i>
Furvus, <i>swarthy.</i>	Limpīdus, <i>clear, pure.</i>	Ōtiōsus, <i>at leisure.</i>
Fuscus, <i>brown.</i>	Līmus, <i>squinting.</i>	Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>
Garrūlus, <i>prattling.</i>	Lippus, <i>blear-eyed.</i>	

Pallidus, <i>pale.</i>	Quadrīmus, <i>four years old.</i>	Splendīdus, <i>bright.</i>
Parcus, <i>sparing.</i>		Spūrius, <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>
Patrimus, { <i>having fa-</i>	Quōtīdiānus, <i>daily.</i>	Squālidus, <i>nasty.</i>
Mātrīmus, { <i>ther and</i>	Rābīdus, <i>mad.</i>	Stōlīdus, <i>foolish.</i>
	Rancīdus, <i>rank, stale.</i>	Strēnuus, <i>active, stout.</i>
	Rārus, <i>rare, thin.</i>	Strīgōsus, <i>lean, lank.</i>
Pātūlus, <i>wide, spread-</i>	Raucus, <i>hoarse.</i>	Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>
<i>ing.</i>	Rectus, <i>right, straight.</i>	Stūpidus, <i>stupid, dull.</i>
Paulus, <i>little.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>	Sūbītus, <i>sudden.</i>
Pauci, -cæ, -ca, <i>few.</i>	Rīgidus, <i>cold, stiff, se-</i>	Subsēcivus, <i>cut off, or</i>
Pēritus, <i>skilful.</i>	<i>vere.</i>	<i>taken from other bu-</i>
Perfidus, <i>treacherous.</i>	Rīguus, <i>moist, well-</i>	<i>siness.</i>
Perpētus, <i>continual.</i>	<i>watered.</i>	Sūdus, <i>fair, without</i>
Perspīcuus, <i>evident.</i>	Rōbustus, <i>strong.</i>	<i>clouds.</i>
Pius, <i>pious.</i>	Roscīdus, <i>dewy.</i>	Sūperbus, <i>proud.</i>
Plānus, <i>plain.</i>	Rōtundus, <i>round.</i>	Sūpīnus, <i>lying on the</i>
Plēnus, <i>full.</i>	Rūbīcundus, <i>blushing.</i>	<i>back.</i>
Plērīque, -æque, -āque, <i>the most part; sing.</i>	Rūfus, <i>reddish.</i>	Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
<i>fem. plērāque.</i>	Russus, <i>of a carnation</i>	Tācītus, <i>silent.</i>
Postīcus, <i>on the back</i>	<i>colour.</i>	Tantus, <i>so great.</i>
<i>part of a house.</i>	Rūtīlus, <i>fiery, red.</i>	Tardus, <i>slow.</i>
Prædītus, <i>endued with.</i>	Sævus, <i>cruel.</i>	Tēmērārius, <i>rash.</i>
Prāvus, <i>wicked.</i>	Sāgus, <i>knowing.</i>	Tempestivus, <i>season-</i>
Prēcārius, <i>at another's</i>	Salsus, <i>salted, smart.</i>	<i>able.</i>
<i>pleasure.</i>	Salvus, <i>safe.</i>	Tēmūlentus, <i>drunken.</i>
Priscus, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Sanctus, <i>holy.</i>	Tēpidus, <i>lukewarm.</i>
Pristīnus, <i>ancient.</i>	Sānus, <i>sound.</i>	Timīdus, <i>fearful.</i>
Privātus, <i>private, re-</i>	Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>	Torvus, <i>stern.</i>
<i>tired.</i>	Scævus, <i>left.</i>	Tranquillus, <i>calm.</i>
Prīvus, <i>single, peculiar.</i>	Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Trēpidus, <i>trembling for</i>
Prōbus, <i>good, honest.</i>	Scaurus, <i>club-footed.</i>	<i>fear.</i>
Prōcērus, <i>high, tall.</i>	Sēcūrus, <i>secure, out of</i>	Trūcūlentus, <i>cruel.</i>
Prōfānus, <i>profane, un-</i>	<i>danger.</i>	Truncus, <i>maimed, want-</i>
<i>holy.</i>	Sēdūlus, <i>careful.</i>	<i>ing.</i>
Prōfundus, <i>deep.</i>	Sentus, <i>rough.</i>	Tūmīdus, <i>swollen.</i>
Prōmiscuus, <i>confused.</i>	Sērēnus, <i>clear.</i>	Turbīdus, <i>muddy.</i>
Promptus, <i>ready.</i>	Sērius, <i>earnest.</i>	Tūtus, <i>safe.</i>
Prōnus, <i>with the face</i>	Sērus, <i>late.</i>	Udus, <i>wet.</i>
<i>downward.</i>	Sēvērus, <i>severe, harsh.</i>	Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>
Prōpērus, <i>hasty.</i>	Siccus, <i>dry.</i>	Unicus, <i>only.</i>
Prōpinquus, <i>near.</i>	Sīmus, <i>flat-nosed.</i>	Urbānus, <i>courteous.</i>
Proprius, <i>proper.</i>	Sīncērus, <i>sincere, pure.</i>	Vācīvus, <i>at leisure.</i>
Prōtervus, <i>saucy.</i>	Sītus, <i>situate, placed.</i>	Vācuus, <i>empty, void.</i>
Publīcus, <i>public.</i>	Sobrius, <i>sober, tempe-</i>	Vāgus, <i>wandering.</i>
Pūdīcus, <i>chaste.</i>	<i>rate.</i>	Valgus, <i>bow-legged.</i>
Pallus, <i>blackish.</i>	Sōcius, <i>in alliance, a</i>	Vālidus, <i>strong.</i>
Pūrus, <i>pure, clean.</i>	<i>companion.</i>	Vānus, <i>vain, empty.</i>
Pūtus, <i>without mix-</i>	Sōlīdus, <i>solid.</i>	Vārius, <i>various, diffe-</i>
<i>ture.</i>	Sordīdus, <i>dirty.</i>	<i>rent.</i>
Quantus, <i>how great.</i>	Spīnōsus, <i>prickly.</i>	Vārus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>
	Spīssus, <i>thick.</i>	

62 ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Vastus, <i>huge.</i>	Vernācūlus, <i>born in</i>	Viduus, <i>deprived.</i>
Vēgētus, <i>vigorous.</i>	one's house.	Viētus, <i>withered.</i>
Vēnustus, <i>comely.</i>	Vērus, <i>true.</i>	Vivldus, <i>lively.</i>
Verbōsus, <i>talkative.</i>	Vescus, <i>fit for eating.</i>	Vivus, <i>alive.</i>
Vērēcundus, <i>bashful.</i>	Vicinus, <i>neighbouring.</i>	

Tēner, tēnēra, tēnērum, *tender.*

Sing.

Plur.

N. Ten-er,	-ēra,	-ērum.	N. Ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra.
G. Ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri.	G. Ten-ērōrum,	-ērārum,	-ērōrum.
D. Ten-ēro,	-ēræ,	-ēro.	D. Ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris.
A. Ten-ērum,	-ēram,	-ērum.	A. Ten-ēros,	-ēras,	-ēra.
V. Ten-er,	-ēra,	-ērum.	V. Ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra.
A. Ten-ēro,	-ērā,	-ēro.	A. Ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>	Miser, <i>wretched.</i>
Cēter, (m. sing. <i>hardly</i>	Lācer, <i>torn.</i>	Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i>
used) <i>the rest.</i>	Liber, <i>free.</i>	

Also all the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *ōpifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sātūr*, *sātūra*, *sātūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *ātra*, *ātrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c.—So,

Æger, <i>sick.</i>	Mācer, <i>lean.</i>	Sācer, <i>sacred.</i>
Crēber, <i>frequent.</i>	Niger, <i>black.</i>	Scāber, <i>rough.</i>
Glāber, <i>smooth.</i>	Piger, <i>slow.</i>	Tēter, <i>ugly.</i>
Intēger, <i>entire.</i>	Pulcher, <i>fair.</i>	Vāfer, <i>crafty.</i>
Lūdicer, <i>ludicrous.</i>	Rūber, <i>red.</i>	

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other cases they are like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.	Ūter, -tra, -trum; utrius, <i>either,</i>
Ālius, -ia, -iud; -ius, <i>other, differ-</i>	<i>whether of the two.</i>
<i>rent, one of many, another.</i>	Neuter, -tra, -trum; -trius, <i>neither.</i>
Nullus, -a, -um; nullius, <i>none.</i>	Ūterque, -utrāque, -umque; utri-
Sōlus, -a, -um; solius, <i>alone.</i>	usque, <i>both.</i>
Tōtus, -a, -um; totius, <i>whole.</i>	Ūterlibet, -triuslibet, { <i>which of</i>
Ullus, ulla, -um; ullius, <i>any.</i>	Ūtervis, -triusvis, { <i>the two you</i>
Alter, -ēra, -um; altērius, <i>one of</i>	<i>please.</i>
<i>two, the other.</i>	

Altērūter, -tra, -trum, *the one or the other*; altērutrius, altērutri, and sometimes altērīus utrius, altērī utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we sometimes find them declined like *bonus*; thus, *ludere hanc sinit, ut lubet, nec pili facit unī*, for *unius*, Catull. xvii. 17; in the voc. *une*, Id. xxxvii. 17; *colōris ulli*, for

ulius, Plant. Truc. ii. 2, 38; *mihi solæ ridicûlo fuit*, Ter. Eun. v. 7, 3; *alia pecûdis jecur*, Cic. Div. ii. 13.

In English, *one* and *other*, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *ones*, *others*; as, *great ones*, *little ones*, *many others*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives. In the singular, we say, *one*, *one's*; *other*, *other's*: *They are strangers the one to the other*; *they learn the one from the other*; *one knows not how*; *one should imagine*; *one's own choice*; *the other's house*; *one ought to be cautious*; *they love one another* (compounded of *an* and *other*). *None*, made up of *no* or *not* and *one*, is used in both numbers.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *boni libri*, of a good book; *bono libro*, &c.: so, *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedîle*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina* or *mulier*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *fêlix*, for the masc. *fêlix*, for the fem. *fêlix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Fel-ix, -ix, -ix.	N. Fel-ices, -ices, -icia.
G. Fel-icis, -icis, -icis.	G. Fel-icium, -icium, -icium.
D. Fel-ici, -ici, -ici.	D. Fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibus.
A. Fel-icem, -icem, -ix.	A. Fel-ices, -ices, -icia.
V. Fel-ix, -ix, -ix.	V. Fel-ices, -ices, -icia.
A. Fel-ice, or -ici, &c.	A. Fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibus.

In like manner decline,

Amens, -ntis, mad.	Fallax, deceitful.	Prûdens, prudent.
Atrox, -ôcis, cruel.	Fêrax, fertile.	Rêcens, fresh.
Audax, -âcis, et -ens, bold.	Fêrox, fierce.	Rêpens, sudden.
Bîlix, -icis, woven with a double thread.	Frêquens, frequent.	Sâgax, -âcis, sagacious.
Câpax, -âcis, capacious.	Ingens, huge.	Sâlax, -âcis, lustful.
Cicur, -ûris, tame.	Îners, -tis, sluggish.	Sâpiens, wise.
Clêmens, -tis, merciful.	Insons, guiltless.	Sôlers, shrewd.
Contûmax, stubborn.	Mendax, lying.	Sons, guilty.
Dêmens, mad.	Mordax, biting, satirical.	Tênax, tenacious.
Edax, gluttonous.	Pernix, -icis, swift.	Trux, -ûcis, cruel.
Efficax, effectual.	Pervicax, wilful.	Ûber, -êris, fertile.
Elêgans, handsome.	Pêtûlans, forward, saucy.	Vehêmens, vehement.
	Prægnans, with child.	Vêlox, -ôcis, swift.
		Vôrax, devouring.

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mîtis* for the masc. and fem. *mîte* for the neut. meek; so, *mîtiôr*, *mîtiôr*, *mîtiôr*, meeker; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> Mītis, mītis, mīte.		<i>N.</i> Mītes, mītes, mītia.
<i>G.</i> Mītis, mītis, mītis.		<i>G.</i> Mītium, mītium, mītium.
<i>D.</i> Mīti, mīti, mīti.		<i>D.</i> Mītibus, mītibus, mītibus.
<i>A.</i> Mitem, mitem, mīte.		<i>A.</i> Mītes, mītes, mītia.
<i>V.</i> Mītis, mītis, mīte.		<i>V.</i> Mītes, mītes, mītia.
<i>A.</i> Mīti, mīti, mīti.		<i>A.</i> Mītibus, mītibus, mītibus.

In like manner decline,

<i>Agilis, active.</i>	<i>Hilaris, cheerful.</i>	<i>Quālis, of what kind.</i>
<i>Amābilis, lovely.</i>	<i>Ignōbilis, of mean pa-</i>	<i>Rūdis, raw.</i>
<i>Biennis, of two years.</i>	<i>rentage.</i>	<i>Segnis, slow.</i> [<i>lemn.</i>
<i>Brēvis, short.</i>	<i>Immānis, huge, cruel.</i>	<i>Sōlemnīs, annual, so-</i>
<i>Civilis, courteous.</i>	<i>Īnānis, empty.</i>	<i>Stērilis, barren.</i>
<i>Cœlestis, heavenly.</i>	<i>Incōlūmis, safe.</i>	<i>Suāvis, sweet.</i>
<i>Cōmis, mild, affable.</i>	<i>Infāmis, infamous.</i>	<i>Sublīmis, lofty.</i>
<i>Crūdēlis, cruel.</i>	<i>Insignis, remarkable.</i>	<i>Subtilis, subtle, fine.</i>
<i>Dēbilis, weak.</i>	<i>Jūgis, perpetual.</i>	<i>Tālis, such.</i>
<i>Dēformis, ugly.</i>	<i>Lævis or lēvis, smooth.</i>	<i>Tēnuis, small.</i>
<i>Dōcilis, teachable.</i>	<i>Lēnis, gentle.</i>	<i>Terrestris, earthly.</i>
<i>Dulcis, sweet in taste.</i>	<i>Lēvis, light.</i>	<i>Terrībilis, dreadful.</i>
<i>Exilis, slender.</i>	<i>Mēdiocris, middling.</i>	<i>Tristis, sad.</i>
<i>Exsanguis, bloodless.</i>	<i>Mirābilis, wonderful.</i>	<i>Turpis, base.</i>
<i>Fortis, brave.</i>	<i>Mollis, soft.</i>	<i>Ūtilis, useful.</i>
<i>Frāgilis, brittle.</i>	<i>Omnis, all.</i>	<i>Vilis, worthless.</i>
<i>Grandis, great.</i>	<i>Pinguis, fat.</i>	<i>Viridis, green.</i>
<i>Grāvis, heavy.</i>	<i>Putris, rotten.</i>	<i>Vitilis, pliant.</i>

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> Mīti-or, -or, -us.		<i>N.</i> Mīti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra.
<i>G.</i> Mīti-ōris, -ōris, -ōris.		<i>G.</i> Mīti-ōrum, -ōrum, -ōrum.
<i>D.</i> Mīti-ōri, -ōri, -ōri.		<i>D.</i> Mīti-ōribus, -ōribus, -ōribus.
<i>A.</i> Mīti-ōrem, -ōrem, -us.		<i>A.</i> Mīti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra.
<i>V.</i> Mīti-or, -or, -us.		<i>V.</i> Mīti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra.
<i>A.</i> Mīti-ōre, or -ōri, &c.		<i>A.</i> Mīti-ōribus, -ōribus, -ōribus.

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations ; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the masc. *acris* for the fem. *acre* for the neut. sharp ; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> Ā-cer or ācris, ācris, ācre.		<i>N.</i> Ā-cres, -cres, -cria.
<i>G.</i> A-cris, -cris, -cris.		<i>G.</i> A-crium, -crium, -crium.
<i>D.</i> A-cri, -cri, -cri.		<i>D.</i> A-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.
<i>A.</i> A-crem, -crem, -cre.		<i>A.</i> A-cres, -cres, -cria.
<i>V.</i> A-cer or ācris, -cris, -cre.		<i>V.</i> A-cres, -cres, -cria.
<i>A.</i> A-cri, -cri, -cri.		<i>A.</i> A-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

In like manner, *ālācer* or *ālacris*, *cēler* or *cēlēris*, *cēlēber* or *cēlebris*, *sālūber* or *sālūbris*, *vōlūcer* or *vōlucris*, &c. See p. 59.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular : but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *e* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia* : except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvēnis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the ablative singular, and *um*, not *ium*, in the genitive plural. *Compos*, -ōtis, master of, that hath obtained his desire ; *impos*, -ōtis, unable ; *īnops*, -ōpis, poor ; *supplex*, -icis, suppliant, humble ; *ūber*, -ēris, fertile ; *consors*, -tis, sharing, a partner ; *dēgēner*, -ēris, degenerate, or degenerating ; *vīgil*, watchful ; *pūber*, -ēris, of age, marriageable ; and *cēler* : also compounds in *ceps*, *fer*, *pes*, and *corpor* : as, *particeps*, partaking of ; *artifex*, -icis, cunning, an artist ; *bīpes*, -ēdis, two-footed ; *bīcorpor*, -ōris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmōr*, mindful, which has *mēmōri*, and *mēmōrum* : also *dēses*, *rēses*, *hēbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *concōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri* : but its compounds have either *e* or *i* ; as, *compāre*, or -ri. *Vētus*, old, has *vētēra*, and *vētērūm* : *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plūre* ; and in the plural, *plūres*, *plūria* or *plūra*, *plūrium*, *plūribus*, &c.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless ; and *pōtis*, -e, able, are only used in the nominative. *Pōtis* has also sometimes *pōtis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i* ; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e* ; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders ; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc., *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plural, has likewise the neuter gender ; thus, *victrices*, *victricia* : so, *ultor* and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also found neuter in the singular ; as, *victrici sōlo*, Claud. de vi. cons. Honor. 25.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frēnum*, *bācillum*, *urma*, *jūgum*, *linus*, *somnus*, and *ānimus*, end in *is* or *us* ; and therefore are

either of the first and second declension, or of the third ; as, *dēclivis*, -is, -e, and *dēclivus*, -a, -um, steep ; *imbēcillus*, and *imbēcillus*, weak ; *sēmīsonnis*, and *sēmīsonnus*, half asleep ; *exānimis*, and *exānimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation ; thus, we say *magnānimus*, *flexānimus*, *effrēnus*, *lēvisomnus* ; not *magnānimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pūsillānimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis* ; not *pūsillānimus*, &c. So, *sēmīānimis*, *īnermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *dēclivis*, *prōclivis* ; rarely *sēmīānimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives* ; as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *cōlestis*, *ādāmantīnus*, *corpōrēus*, *agrestis*, *actīvus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *ādāmas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives* ; as, *mīsellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *ōsus* or *entus* ; as, *vinōsus*, *vinōlentus*, much given to wine ; *ōpērōsus*, laborious ; *plumbōsus*, full of lead ; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots ; *corpulēntus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus* ; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears ; *nāsūtus*, having a large nose ; *lītērātus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective* ; as, *scōticus*, *pāternus*, *hērīlis*, *āliēnus*, of, or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another : from *Scōtia*, *pāter*, *hērūs*, and *ālius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals* ; as, *āmābilis*, amiable ; *cāpax*, capable ; *dōcilis*, teachable : from *āmo*, *cāpio*, *dōceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials* ; as, *sāpiens*, wise ; *ācūtus*, sharp ; *dīsertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives ; as, *ādōlescens*, *ānimans*, *rūdēns*, *serpens*, *advocātus*, *sponsus*, *nātus*, *lēgātus* ; *sponsa*, *nāta*, *serta*, sc. *cōrōna*, a garland ; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*, *dēbitum*, *dēcrētum*, *præceptum*, *sātum*, *tectum*, *vātum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials* ; as, *hōdiernus*, from *hōdie* ; *crastīnus*, from *cras* ; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions ; as, *contrārius*, from *contra* ; *anticus*, from *ante* ; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	one.	Duodēcim,	twelve.
Duo,	two.	Trēdēcim,	thirteen.
Tres,	three.	Quātuordēcim,	fourteen.
Quātuor,	four.	Quindēcim,	fifteen.
Quinque,	five.	Sexdēcim,	sixteen.
Sex,	six.	Septendēcim,	seventeen.
Septem,	seven.	Octōdēcim,	eighteen.
Octo,	eight.	Nōvendēcim,	nineteen.
Nōvem,	nine.	Viginti,	twenty.
Dēcem,	ten.	Viginti unus, or	twenty-one.
Undēcim,	eleven.	Unus et viginti,	

Viginti duo, or } Duo et viginti, }	twenty-two.	Quingenti,	five hundred.
Triginta,	thirty.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Quadrāginta,	forty.	Septingenti,	seven hundred.
Quinquāginta,	fifty.	Octingenti,	eight hundred.
Sexāginta,	sixty.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Septuāginta,	seventy.	Mille,	a thousand.
Octōginta,	eighty.	Duo millia, or }	two thousand.
Nōnāginta,	ninety.	Bis mille,	
Centum,	a hundred.	Dēcem millia, or }	ten thousand.
Dūcenti, -æ, -a,	two hundred.	Dēcies mille,	
Trēcenti, -æ, -a,	three hundred.	Viginti millia, or }	twenty thousand.
Quadringenti,	four hundred.	Vicies mille,	

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is used in the plural, when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædibus*, in one house, Ter. Eun. ii. 3, 75. *Unæ nuptiæ*, Id. Andr. iv. 1, 51. *In una mœnia convênère*, Sall. Cat. 6; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, Cic. Flacc. 29, &c.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined :

Plur.			Plur.		
N. Duo,	duæ,	duo.	N. Tres,	tres,	tria.
G. Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum.	G. Trium,	trium,	trium.
D. Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	D. Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.
A. Duos, or duo,	duas,	duo.	A. Tres,	tres,	tria.
V. Duo,	duæ,	duo.	V. Tres,	tres,	tria.
A. Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	A. Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers, from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -tæ, -ta; *ducentorum*, -tarum, -torum, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective: when taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centēna millia hominum*; *decies centēna millia*, a million; *vicies centēna millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1 Primus, a, um.	Singŭli, æ, a.	Sēmēl, <i>once.</i>
2 sēcundus.	bīni.	bis, <i>twice.</i>
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, <i>thrice.</i>
4 quartus.	quāterni.	quāter, <i>four times.</i>
5 quintus.	quīni.	quīnques, &c.
6 sextus.	sēni.	sexies.
7 septīmus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octāvus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nōnus.	nōvēni.	nōvies.
10 dēcīmus.	dēni.	dēcies.
11 undēcīmus.	undēni.	undēcies.
12 duodēcīmus.	duodēni.	duodēcies.
13 dēcīmus tertius.	trēdēni, terni dēni.	trēdēcies.
14 dēcīmus quartus.	quāterni dēni.	quātuordēcies.
15 dēcīmus quintus.	quīndēni.	quīndēcies.
16 dēcīmus sextus.	sēni dēni.	sexdēcies.
17 dēcīmus septīmus.	septēni dēni.	dēcies ac septies.
18 dēcīmus octāvus.	octōni dēni.	dēcies ac octies.
19 dēcīmus nōnus.	nōvēni dēni.	dēcies et nōvies.
20 vīgēsīmus, vicēsīmus.	vicēni.	vicies.
21 vīgēsīmus primus.	vicēni singŭli.	vicies sēmēl.
30 trīgēsīmus, tricēsīmus.	tricēni.	tricies.
40 quadrāgēsīmus.	quadrāgēni.	quadrāgies.
50 quinquāgēsīmus.	quinquāgēni.	quinquāgies.
60 sexāgēsīmus.	sexāgēni.	sexāgies.
70 septuāgēsīmus.	septuāgēni.	septuāgies.
80 octōgēsīmus.	octōgēni.	octōgies.
90 nōnāgēsīmus.	nōnāgēni.	nonāgies.
100 centēsīmus.	centēni.	centies.
200 dūcentēsīmus.	dūcēni.	dūcenties.
300 trēcentēsīmus.	trēcentēni.	trēcenties.
400 quadrīngentēsīmus.	quāter centēni.	quadrīngenties.
500 quīngentēsīmus.	quīnques centēni.	quīngenties.
600 sexcentēsīmus.	sexies centēni.	sexcenties.
700 septīngentēsīmus.	septies centēni.	septīngenties.
800 octīngentēsīmus.	octies centēni.	octīngenties.
900 nongentēsīmus.	nōvies centēni.	nonīngenties.
1000 millēsīmus.	millēni.	millies.
2000 bis millēsīmus.	bis millēni.	bis millies.

Note.—Several of these distributive and numeral adverbs are not found in the classics, but only in later writers.—The distributive numerals are often used for the cardinal.

4. The multiplicative numbers are, *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold; *centuplex*, a hundred-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -icis.

The interrogative words, to which the foregoing numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: so, *tot*, so many; *tōtīdem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quōtcunque*, how many soever; *āliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c.; *duplus*, *triplus*, *dēcūplus*, &c.; *bīmus*, *trimus*, &c.; *biennis*, *triennis*, &c.; *bimestris*, *trimestris*, &c.; *bīlībris*, *trīlībris*, &c.; *binārius*, *ternārius*, &c.; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octōgēnārius sēnex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centēnārius*, a flock of a hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *dūrus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

COMPARISON OF ENGLISH ADJECTIVES.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as, *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; *full*, *fuller*, *fullest*: and polysyllables, by *more* and *most*; as, *frugal*, *more frugal*, *most frugal*; *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost* or *utmost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*, &c. The superlative is also expressed by putting before the positive, *very*, *extremely*, *exceedingly*, or the like; which by some is called the *Superlative of eminence*.

COMPARISON OF LATIN ADJECTIVES.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case by adding *ssimus*; as, *altus*, high, gen. *alti*; Comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut., higher; Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So, *mītis*, meek; dat. *mīli*: *mīti*or, -or, -us, meeker; *mītissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension; the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*; *altæ*, *altiōris*, *altissimæ*, &c. So, *mītis*, *mīti*or, *mītissimus*; *mītis*, *mīti*or, *mītissima*; *mīte*, *mīti*us, *mītissimum*; gen. *mītis*, *mītiōris*, *mītissimi*, &c.

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. Bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pessīmus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minīmus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	most.

Fem. multa, plūrima; neut. multum, plus, plūrimum; plur. multi, plūres, plūrimi; multæ, plūres, plūrimæ; multa, plūra or plūria, plūrima, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *lessest*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *līmus*:

Fācilis, fāciliōr, fācillīmus, *easy*. Imbēcillis, imbēciliōr, imbēcillīmus, *weak*.
Grācilis, grāciliōr, grācillīmus, *lean*.
Hūmilis, hūmiliōr, hūmillīmus, *low*. Sīmilis, sīmiliōr, sīmillīmus, *like*.

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cīter, cīteriōr, cītīmus, <i>near</i> .	Mātūrus, mātūriōr, māturrīmus
Dexter, dexteriōr, dextīmus, <i>right</i> .	or mātūrissīmus, <i>ripe</i> .
Sīnister, sīnisteriōr, sīnistīmus, <i>left</i> .	Postērus, postēriōr, postrēmus or
Exter, exteriōr, extīmus or extērēmus, <i>outward</i> .	postūmus, <i>behind</i> .
Infērus, -ior, infīmus or īmus, <i>below</i> .	Sūpērus, sūpēriōr, suprēmus or
Intērus, interiōr, intīmus, <i>inward</i> .	summus, <i>high</i> .
	Vētus, vēteriōr, vēterrīmus, <i>old</i> .

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *vōlus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing, *mālēdīcentior*, *mālēdīcentissimus*: so, *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mīrīfīcus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entissimus* or *mīrīfīcissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nēquissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all; which defect is supplied by other words.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dētērior, worse, *dētērrīmus*.

Ōcior, swifter, *Ōcissimus*.

Prior, former, *prīmus*.

Prōpior, nearer, *proxīmus*, nearest or next.

Ultērior, farther, *ultīmus*.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclītus, *inclītissimus*, renowned.

Mēritus, *mēritissimus*, deserving.

Nōvus, *nōvissimus*, new.

Nūpērus, *nūperrīmus*, late.

Par, *pārissimus*, equal.

Sācer, *sācerrīmus*, sacred.

3. The following want the superlative:

Ādōlescens, *ādōlescentior*, young.

Diūturnus, *diūturnior*, lasting.

Ingens, *ingentior*, huge.

Jūvēnis, *jūnior*, young.

Ōpīmus, *ōpīmior*, rich.

Prōnus, *prōnior*, inclined downwards.

Sātur, *sātūrior*, full.

Sēnex, *sēnior*, old.

To supply the superlative of *jūvēnis* or *ādōlescens*, we say, *minīmus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maxīmus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative; as, *civilis*, *civilior*, civil; *rēgālis*, *rēgālior*, regal; *flēbīlis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *jūvēnīlis*, youthful; *exīlis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *dēclīvis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longīnquus*, *-ior*, far off; *prōpīnquus*, *-ior*, near.

Antērior, former; *sēquior*, worse; *sātior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of divers colours; *pestīfer*, poisonous; also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *īnus*, *ōrus*, or *īmus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbīus*, doubtful; *vācūus*, empty; *fūgītīvus*, that fieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgītīmus*, lawful; *tēnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox* -*ōcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ēgēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxīme* for the superlative; thus, *ēgēnus*, needy; *magis ēgēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxīme ēgēnus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks ; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not choose to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word ; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, and it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself ; as, *I love* : the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse ; as, *thou lovest* : and the last three in speaking of any other person or thing ; as, *he, she, or it falls*.

I is said to be of the first person ; *thou*, of the second ; and *he, she, or it*, together with all other words, of the third : and so in the plural number, *we, ye, they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender ; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders ; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

	Singular.					Plural.		
	Persons.					Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.			1.	2.	3.
Cases.								
Nom.	I.	thou.	he,	she,	it.	we.	ye or you.	they.
Gen.	mine.	thine.	his,	hers,	its.	ours.	yours.	theirs.
Acc.	me.	thee.	him,	her,	it.	us.	you.	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives ; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification ; as, *this man, that thing, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number ; as, *this, these ; that, those.*

Who, which, that, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is of both numbers, and is varied by cases ; thus, *who, whose, whom.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective ; as, *her's* from *her* ; *mine* from *me*, &c.

Who, which, what, whether, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions ; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES. *Who* is applied to persons, *which* to brute animals and inanimate things. *That* is often used as a relative, to prevent the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*. It is applied both to persons and things. *Which, that, and what,* like *who*, are of both numbers ; but do not vary their termination by cases ; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the genitive or possessive case of *which*.

Own and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their* ; as, *my or mine own hand, myself, yourselves.* *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it* ; as, *itself.* *Himself, themselves,* seem to be used by corruption for *hissself, theirselves.*

LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen ; *ëgo, tu, sui ; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui ; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester ; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui* ; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing.

Nom.	Ego, I.
Gen.	Mëi, of me.
Dat.	Mihî, to me.
Acc.	Më, me.
Voc.	_____
Abl.	Më, with me.

Plur.

Nom.	Nôs, we.
Gen.	Nostrûm or nostrî, of us.
Dat.	Nôbis, to us.
Acc.	Nôs, us.
Voc.	_____
Abl.	Nôbis, with us.

Tu, thou.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. Tū, thou,	}	or you.	N. Vōs, ye or you.	}	of you.
G. Tūi, of thee,			G. Vestrūm or vestri,		
D. Tibi, to thee,			D. Vōbīs, to you.		
A. Tē, thee,			A. Vōs, you.		
V. Tū, O thou,			V. Vōs, O ye, or you.		
A. Tē, with thee,			A. Vōbīs, with you.		

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. _____	}		N. _____	}	
G. Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.			G. Sui, of themselves.		
D. Sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.			D. Sibi, to themselves.		
A. Sē, himself, herself, itself.			A. Sē, themselves.		
V. _____			V. _____		
A. Sē, with himself, with herself, &c.			A. Sē, with themselves.		

OBS. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*; but as a second person: *Eximēro*, *Dave*, *Troth*, *Davus*, &c. Ter. And. 1. 31.

OBS. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī*; Virg. *Æn.* vi. 104; Hor. Sat. i. 101; il. 57 & 131; iii. 23, &c.

OBS. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*: of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*.

We commonly use *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille for the masc. *illa* for the fem. *illud* for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it or that; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. Illē, illā, illūd.	}		N. Illi, illæ, illā.	}	
G. Illiūs, illiūs, illiūs.			G. Illōrum, illārum, illōrum.		
D. Illi, illi, illi.			D. Illis, illis, illis.		
A. Illum, illam, illūd.			A. Illōs, illās, illā.		
V. Illē, illā, illūd.			V. Illi, illæ, illā.		
A. Illō, illā, illō.			A. Illis, illis, illis.		

ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut. The second syllable, in the genitive of these words, is either long or short.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself; *mei ipsius*, of myself; *mihi ipsi*, to myself, &c.: *nos ipsi*, we ourselves.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Hic,	hæc,	hoc.	N. Hī,	hæ,	hæc.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	G. Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum.
D. Huic,	huic,	huic.	D. His,	hīs,	hīs.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	A. Hōs,	hās,	hæc.
V. Hic,	hæc,	hoc.	V. Hī,	hæ,	hæc.
A. Hōc,	hâc,	hōc.	A. Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

Is, ea, id, *he, she, it; or that*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	N. Iī,	eæ,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	G. Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D. Ei,	ēi,	ēi.	D. Iīs or	ēīs,	&c.
A. Eum,	eam,	īd.	A. Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	A. Iīs or	ēīs,	&c.

Quis, quæ, quod, or *quid*? which, what? or *Quis*? who? or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Quis,	quæ,	quōd or quīd.	N. Quī,	quæ,	quæ.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	G. Quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	D. Queis or	quībus,	&c.
A. Quem,	quam,	quōd or quīd.	A. Quōs,	quās,	quæ.
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	A. Queis or	quībus,	&c.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; or, *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *foemina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*; gen. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose*

or of *whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing of *which*, seldom *whose*, &c.; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>			
<i>N.</i>	<i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> .	<i>N.</i>	<i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> .
<i>G.</i>	<i>Cujus</i> ,	<i>cujus</i> ,	<i>cujus</i> .	<i>G.</i>	<i>Quorum</i> ,	<i>quarum</i> ,	<i>quorum</i> .
<i>D.</i>	<i>Cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> .	<i>D.</i>	<i>Queis</i> or <i>quibus</i> ,	&c.	
<i>A.</i>	<i>Quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> .	<i>A.</i>	<i>Quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> .
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>A.</i>	<i>Quo</i> ,	<i>quâ</i> ,	<i>quô</i> .	<i>A.</i>	<i>Queis</i> or <i>quibus</i> ,	&c.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension: *noster*, -tra, -trum.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as present: *ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*; Acc. *isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc* or *isthuc*; Abl. *isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*; Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So, *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mecum*, *t tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quodcum*, or *quicum*, and *quibuscum*: *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecce*, in the nom. sing., of *ecce* and *is*. So *illum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom.: *egomet*, *tutemet*, *suumet*, through all the cases; thus, *meimet*, *tuumet*, &c., of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet*, in the nom. we say, *tutemet*: *Hiccine*, *haccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*, of *hic* and *cine*: *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *suapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem., and sometimes *meopte*, *tuopte*, &c., of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hicce*, *hacce*, *hocce*; *hujusce*, *hice*, *hisce*, *hosce*, of *hic* and *ce*; whence, *hujuscemodi*, *ejuscemodi*, *cujuscemodi*. So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.		Plur.	
N. Idem,	eadem, Idem.	N. Idem,	eadem, eadem.
G. Ejusdem,	ejusdem, ejusdem.	G. Eorundem,	earundem, eorundem.
D. Eidem,	eidem, eidem.	D. Eisdem,	or iisdem, &c.
A. Eundem,	eandem, Idem.	A. Eodem,	easdem, eadem.
V. Idem,	eadem, Idem.	V. Idem,	eadem, eadem.
A. Eodem,	eadem, eodem.	A. Eisdem,	or iisdem, &c.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, who-soever; which are thus declined:

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam, quenam, quodnam	or quidnam,	cujusnam, cuinam, &c.
Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam	or quidpiam,	cujuspiam, cuipiam.
Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam	or quidquam,	cujusquam, cuiquam.
Quisque, quæque, quodque	or quidque,	cujusque, cuique.
Quisquis, ——— quidquid	or quicquid,	cujuscujus, cuicui.

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*; accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem., and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut.; as, *aliquis*, some, *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately; thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Alquis, aliqua,	aliquid or aliquod,	allicujus,	allicui, &c.
Ecquis, ecqua, or ecquæ,	ecquod or ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis, si qua,	si quod or si quid,	si cujus,	si cui.
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis, num qua,	num quod or num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *coquisnam*, who? *ūnusquisque*, gen. *ūniscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing., and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque,		cujuscunque, cuicunque.	
Quidam, quædam, quoddam or quiddam,		cujusdam, cuidam.	
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet or quidlibet,		cujuslibet, cuilibet.	
Quivis, quævis, quodvis or quidvis,		cujusvis, cuivis, &c.	

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis* and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing., and *quorundam*, *quærandam*, *quörundam*, in the gen. plur., a being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech:—Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words, *walk* and *fall*, become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor -ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon;

or as neither acting, nor being acted upon, but simply existing in a certain state or condition ; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon ; as, *āmāre*, to love ; *āmo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action ; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by which it is acted upon ; as, *āmāri*, to be loved ; *tu āmāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things ; as, *dormio*, I sleep ; *sēdeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing ; as, *scribo litēras*, I write letters : but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive* ; as, *ambūlo*, I walk ; *curro*, I run ; which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense ; as, *sistēre*, to stop ; *incipēre*, to begin ; *dūrāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs ; as, *esse* or *existēre*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb ; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle* ; as, *āmans*, loving ; *āmātus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine* ; as, *āmandum*, loving ; *āmātum*, to love ; *āmātu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices ; the *Active* and *Passive*.

There are four moods ; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

There are five tenses ; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

There are two numbers ; *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are three persons ; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action ; as, *āmo*, I love ; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action ; as, *āmor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively ; as, *āmo*, I love ; *āmābo*, I shall or will love ; or asks a question ; as, *an tu āmas ?* dost thou love ?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself ; as, *orat*, *ut ad se venias*, she begs that you may come to her, Ter. And. iv. 2, 4 ; *orābat*, *ut cras redires*, she entreated that you would return to-morrow, Ter. Eun. iii. 3, 27 ; *non*, *si me obsecrēt*, *redibo*, if she entreat me, I will not return, ib. i. 1, 4. Some call this the *Potential Mood*, and others the *Conditional*.

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats ; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number ; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed ; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed ; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed ; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time ; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or I shall [*then*] be writing ; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects ; for a verb properly has neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English Language has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English verb is thus varied :

TO LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Past Time.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person. 1.	I love.	We love.	1. I loved.	We loved.
2.	Thou lovest.	Ye or you love.	2. Thou lovedst.	Ye or you loved.
3.	He loveth or loves.	They love.	3. He loved.	They loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Present Time.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I love.	We love.	2. Love thou.	Love ye, or love you.
2.	Thou love.	Ye or you love.	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	
3.	He love.	They love.	<i>Present, To love.</i>	

Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied :

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Past Time.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person. 1.	I have.	We have.	1. I had.	We had.
2.	Thou hast.	Ye have.	2. Thou hadst.	Ye had.
3.	He has or hath.	They have.	3. He had.	They had.

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Present.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I have.	We have.	2. Have thou.	Have ye.
2.	Thou have.	Ye have.	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	
3.	He have.	They have.	<i>Present, To have.</i>	

*Participle Present, Having; Perfect, Had.**

* The participle *had* is never used as an auxiliary. Thus we say, *I have loved, I had loved*; but never *I have had loved, nor I had had loved*.

TO BE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I am.	We are.
2. Thou art.	Ye are.
3. He is.	They are.

Past Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I was.	We were.
2. Thou wast.	Ye were.
3. He was.	They were.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I be.	We be.
2. Thou be.	Ye be.
3. He be.	They be.

Past Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I were.	We were.
2. Thou wert.	Ye were.
3. He were.*	They were.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Plur.
2. Be thou.	Be ye.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, To be.

Participle.

Present, Being.

SHALL.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall.	We shall.
2. Thou shalt.	Ye shall.
3. He shall.	They shall.

Perfect, Been.

WILL.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I will.	We will.
2. Thou wilt.	Ye will.
3. He will.	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them, however, are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *harest*; *hath*, for *haveth*; *has*, for *haves*; *had*, for *haved*; *hadst*, for *havedst*; and *wilt*, for *willest*; which last is likewise used from the regular verb *to will*; thus, *I will*, *thou willest*, *he willeth* or *wills*, &c.

The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood are expressed by *may* or *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with auxiliary verbs.

Would, *wouldst*, comes from *will*; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative mood, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the imperative, *do thou love*, *do ye love*. In the third person of the imperative, we always use *let*, which, being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love*, *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form; as, *I love*, *I loved*; but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he hath*, *he doth*, &c.

* That the learner may more clearly perceive the force of the subjunctive mood, he should be accustomed to prefix a conjunction before it; thus, *if I be*, *if thou be*, &c.; *if I were*, *if thou wert*, &c. So, *if I have*, *if thou have*, &c.; *if I love*, *if thou love*.

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect ; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense ; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c. ; The house is building, was building, &c.* But the formation of a regular English verb, both in the Active and Passive voice, through its different moods and tenses, will be understood in conjunction with the Latin verb *Amo*.

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation ; as, *I must read, thou must read, &c.*

Shall and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens ; in the second and third persons, only foretells : *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells ; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question : thus, "*I shall go,*" "*you will go,*" express event only ; but "*will you go ?*" imports intention ; and "*shall I go ?*" refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active ; but sometimes it assumes the passive form ; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen ; I have come, or I am come ; they had come, or they were come, &c.*

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in Irregular Verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lovedst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t* ; as, *snatcht, checht, snapt, mixt, dwelt ; past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.*, for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded ; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus, * are likewise used in the regular form.

1. *Irregulars by Contraction.*

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation ; as, *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, hit, hurt, knit, let, lift,* light,* put, quit,* read, rent, rid, set, shed, shred, shut, slit, split, spread, thrust, wet** ; all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, casted, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present ; as, *lead, led ; sweat, sweated* ; meet, met ; breed, bred ;*

*feed, fed; speed, sped; bend, bent**; *lend, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; spend, spent; build, built**; *geld, gelt**; *gild, gilt**; *gird, girt**; *lose, lost.*

*Sold, told, had, made, fled, shod, clad**; from *sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe*, are contracted for *sold, telled, &c.* *Stand* has *stood*; *smell, smelt*; *dare, durst*, in the participle *dared*.

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought*; *buy, bought*; *catch, caught**; *fight, fought*; *teach, taught*; *think, thought*; *seek, sought*; *work, wrought**.

3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Creep,	crope† or crept,*	crept.*
Awake,	awoke,*	awaked.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Seethe,	sod,*	sodden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	See,	saw,	seen.
Take,	took,	taken.	Bite,	bit,	bitten.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Chide,	chid,	chidden.
Slay,	slew,	slain.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Get,	got or gat,	got or gotten.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Help,	helped,	holpen.*	Abide,	abode,	abode.
Melt,	melted,	molten.*	Climb,	clomb,† climbed,	climbed.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen.*	Drive,	drove,	driven.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Ride,	rode,	rode, ridden.
Bear,	{ bare or bore,	born†.	Rise,	rose,	risen.
Break,	{ brake or broke,	broken.	Shine,	shone,*	shined, shone.
Cleave,	{ clave or clove*,	cloven.*	Strive,	strove,*	striven.
Speak,	{ spake or spoke,	spoken.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Swear,	{ sware or swore,	sworn.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Wear,	{ ware or wore,	worn.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Heave,	hove,*	hoven.*	Write,	wrote,	written.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Strike,	struck,	{ stricken or strucken.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.	Give,	gave,	given.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Sit,	sat,	sat or sitten.
			Spit,	spit, spat,	spit, spitten.
			Dig,	dug,*	dug, digged.
			Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
			Choose,	chose,	chosen.
			Hold,	held,	held, holden.

† *Born*, brought forth as a child: but *borne*, carried as a burden.

† *Crope* is now obsolete:—so *clomb*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Do,	did,	done.	Rive,	rived,	riven.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Saw,	sawed,	sawn.*
Crow,	crew,	crowed.	Shape,	shaped,	shapen.*
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Shave,	shaved,	shaven.*
Know,	knew,	known.	Shew,	shewed,	shewn.*
Throw,	threw,	thrown.	Show,	showed,	shown.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Sow,	sowed,	sown.*
Bake,	baked,	baken.*	Strow or	strowed or	strown.*
Grave,	graved,	graven.*	strew.	strewed,	
Hew,	hewed,	hewn.*	Wash,	washed,	washen.*
Lade,	laded,	laden.	Wax,	waxed,	waxen.*
Load,	loaded,	loaden.*	Wreath,	wreathed,	wreathen.*
Mow,	mowed,	mown.*	Writhe,	writhed,	writhen.

Several verbs seem to have dropped the termination *en* in the Participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Sting,	stung,	stung.
Cling,	clung,	clung.	Stink,	{ stank or	stunk.
Drink,	drank,	{ drunk or	String,	{ stunk.	strung.
Fling,	flung,	{ drunken.	Swim,	strung,	strung.
Ring,	{ rang or	flung.	Swim,	{ swam or	swum.
Shrink,	{ rung,	rung.	Swing,	swam,	swung.
Sing,	{ shrank or	shrunk.	Wring,	swung,	wrung.*
Sink,	{ shrunk,	sung.	Bind,	wrung,*	wrung.*
Sling,	{ sang or sung,	sunk.	Find,	bound,	bound.
Slink,	{ sank or sunk,	slung.	Grind,	found,	found.
Spin,	{ slang or	slung.	Wind,	ground,	ground.
Spring,	{ slung,	slunk.	Hang,	wound,	wound.
	{ slank or	slunk.	Shoot,	hung,*	hung.*
	{ slunk,	spun.	Stick,	shot.	shot.
	{ span or spun,	sprung.	Stuck,	stuck.	stuck.
	{ sprang or	Run,	Come,	came,	come.
	{ sprung,	Win,	Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time : thus it is said, *he begun*, for *he began* ; *he run*, for *he ran* ; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time : and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written* ; *it was wrote*, for *it was written* ; *so, bore* for *borne* ; *chose* for *chosen* ; *hid* for *hidden* ; *drove* for *driven* ; *broke* for *broken*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go, went, gone* ; *weat, wit* or *wot, wot* ; *wis, wist* ; *ought, quoth, must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs ; as, *can, could* ; *may, might* ; *shall, should*, &c.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *ā* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *ē* long, the Third has *ē* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *DARE*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *circumdāre*, to surround ; *circumdāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Singular.</i>		Present Tense.			<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Persons.</i>					<i>Persons.</i>	
	1. 2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Conjug.	1. -o	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant.
	2. -eo	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ent.
	3. -o	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs	-unt.
	4. -io	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1. -ābam	-ābās	-ābāt	-ābāmūs	-ābātīs	-ābant.
2. -ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbāt	-ēbāmūs	-ēbātīs	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbāt	-ēbāmūs	-ēbātīs	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam	-iēbās	-iēbāt	-iēbāmūs	-iēbātīs	-iēbant.

Future.

1. -ābo	-ābīs	-ābīt	-ābīmūs	-ābītīs	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo	-ēbīs	-ēbīt	-ēbīmūs	-ēbītīs	-ēbunt.
3. -am	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ent.
4. -iam	-iēs	-iēt	-iēmūs	-iētīs	-ient.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

1. -em	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ent.
2. -eam	-eās	-eāt	-eamūs	-eātīs	-eant.
3. -am	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant.
4. -iam	-iās	-iāt	-iāmūs	-iātīs	-iant.

Imperfect.

1. -ārem	-ārēs	-ārēt	-ārēmūs	-ārētīs	-ārent.
2. -ērem	-ērēs	-ērēt	-ērēmūs	-ērētīs	-ērent.
3. -ěrem	-ěrēs	-ěrēt	-ěrēmūs	-ěrētīs	-ěrent.
4. -īrem	-irēs	-irēt	-irēmūs	-irētīs	-irent.

Imperative Mood.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -ā or -āto	-āto	-ātē or -ātōtē	-anto.
2. -ē or -ēto	-ēto	-ētē or -ētōtē	-ento.
3. -ě or -ĭto	-ĭto	-itē or -itōtē	-unto.
4. -ī or -īto	-īto	-itē or -itōtē	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

1. -ōr	-āris or -ārē	-ātūr	-āmūr	-āminī	-antūr.
2. -eōr	-ēris or -ērē	-ētūr	-ēmūr	-ēminī	-entūr.
3. -ōr	-ēris or -ērē	-itūr	-imūr	-iminī	-untūr.
4. -iōr	-iris or -irē	-itūr	-imūr	-iminī	-iuntūr.

Imperfect.

1. -ābār	-ābāris or -ābārē	-ābātūr	-ābāmūr	-ābāminī	-ābantūr.
2. -ēbār	-ēbāris or -ēbārē	-ēbātūr	-ēbāmūr	-ēbāminī	-ēbantūr.
3. -ēbār	-ēbāris or -ēbārē	-ēbātūr	-ēbāmūr	-ēbāminī	-ēbantūr.
4. -iēbār	-iēbāris or -iēbārē	-iēbātūr	-iēbāmūr	-iēbāminī	-iēbantūr.

Future.

1. -ābōr	-ābēris or -ābērē	-ābītūr	-ābimūr	-ābiminī	-ābuntūr.
2. -ēbōr	-ēbēris or -ēbērē	-ēbītūr	-ēbimūr	-ēbiminī	-ēbuntūr.
3. -ār	-ēris or -ērē	-ētūr	-ēmūr	-ēminī	-entūr.
4. -iār	-iēris or -iērē	-iētūr	-iēmūr	-iēminī	-ientūr.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

1. -ēr	-ēris or -ērē	-ētūr	-ēmūr	-ēminī	-entūr.
2. -eār	-eāris or -eārē	-eātūr	-eāmūr	-eāminī	-eantūr.
3. -ār	-āris or -ārē	-ātūr	-āmūr	-āminī	-antūr.
4. -iār	-iāris or -iārē	-iātūr	-iāmūr	-iāminī	-iantūr.

Imperfect.

1. -ārēr	-ārēris or -ārērē	-ārētūr	-ārēmūr	-ārēminī	-ārentūr.
2. -ērēr	-ērēris or -ērērē	-ērētūr	-ērēmūr	-ērēminī	-ērentūr.
3. -ērēr	-ērēris or -ērērē	-ērētūr	-ērēmūr	-ērēminī	-ērēntūr.
4. -īrēr	-īrēris or -īrērē	-īrētūr	-īrēmūr	-īrēminī	-īrentūr.

Imperative Mood.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātōr	-ātōr	-āmīnī	-antōr.
2.	-ēre or -ētōr	-ētōr	-ēmīnī	-entōr.
3.	-ere or -itōr	-itōr	-īmīnī	-untōr.
4.	-īre or -itōr	-itōr	-imīnī	-iuntōr.

Observe. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plural of the present indicative active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative, they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam*, and *iam* : *iēbar*, and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	-ī	-istī	-īt	-īmūs	-istīs	-ērunt or -ērē.
<i>Plu.</i>	-ēram	-ērās	-ērāt	-ērāmūs	-ērātīs	-ērant.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	-ērim	-ēris	-ērīt	-ērimus	-ēritīs	-ērint.
<i>Plu.</i>	-issem	-issēs	-issēt	-issēmūs	-issētīs	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ēro	-ēris	-ērīt	-ērimūs	-ēritīs	-ērint.

These tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the Auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Sum,	fui,	esse, to be.

*Indicative Mood.*Present Tense.—*am.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person.		
1.	Sum, <i>I am.</i>	Sūmus, <i>we are.</i>
2.	Es, <i>thou art</i> , or <i>you are.</i>	Estis, <i>ye or you are.</i>
3.	Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are.</i>

Imperfect.—*was.*

1.	Ēram, <i>I was.</i>	Erāmus, <i>we were.</i>
2.	Eras, <i>thou wast</i> , or <i>you were.</i>	Erātis, <i>ye or you were.</i>
3.	Erat, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

Perfect.—*have been, or was.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been.</i> | Fuimus, <i>we have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i> | Fuistis, <i>ye or you have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuit, <i>he has been.</i> | Fuerunt v. -ere, <i>they have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect.—*had been.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëram, <i>I had been.</i> | Fuëramus, <i>we had been.</i> |
| 2. Fuëras, <i>thou hadst been.</i> | Fuëratīs, <i>ye or you had been.</i> |
| 3. Fuërat, <i>he had been.</i> | Fuërant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future.—*shall or will.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Ēro, <i>I shall be.</i> | Erīmus, <i>we shall be.</i> |
| 2. Eris, <i>thou shalt be.</i> | Erītīs, <i>ye or you shall be.</i> |
| 3. Erit, <i>he shall be.</i> | Erunt, <i>they shall be.</i> |

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—*may or can.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be.</i> | Sīmus, <i>we may be.</i> |
| 2. Sis, <i>thou mayest be.</i> | Sītīs, <i>ye may be.</i> |
| 3. Sit, <i>he may be.</i> | Sint, <i>they may be.</i> |

Imperfect.—*might, could, would, or should.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be.</i> | Essēmus, <i>we might be.</i> |
| 2. Esses, <i>thou mightst be.</i> | Essētīs, <i>ye might be.</i> |
| 3. Esset, <i>he might be.</i> | Essent, <i>they might be.</i> |

Perfect.—*may have.*

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuërim, <i>I may have been.</i> | Fuërimus, <i>we may have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>thou mayest have been.</i> | Fuëritīs, <i>ye may have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>he may have been.</i> | Fuërint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect.—*might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been.</i> | Fuissēmus, <i>we might have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>thou mightst have been.</i> | Fuissētīs, <i>ye might have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>he might have been.</i> | Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i> |

Future.—*shall have.*

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëro, <i>I shall have been.</i> | Fuërimus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>thou shalt have been.</i> | Fuëritīs, <i>ye shall have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>he shall have been.</i> | Fuërint, <i>they shall have been.</i> |

Imperative Mood*.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 2. Es, <i>vel esto, be thou.</i> | Este, <i>velestōte, be ye, or be you.</i> |
| 3. Esto, <i>let him be.</i> | Sunto, <i>let them be.</i> |

* The imperative mood in Latin has no first person singular or plural, both which are commonly expressed by the first persons sing. and plur. of the Subjunctive; thus, *sim*, let me be; *simus*, let us be: *so, amen*, let me love; *amēmus*, let us love, &c.

*Infinitive Mood.**Pres.* Esse, *to be.**Perf.* Fuisse, *to have been.*

Fut. { Esse fütürus, -a, -um, *to be about to be.*
 { Fuisse fütürus, -a, -um, *to have been about to be.*

*Participle.**Future, Fütürus, about to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood: because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest; *illi amant*, they love.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. *es vel esto tu*, be thou, or be you, &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amābas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations :

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Present Infinit.</i>
Āmo,	āmāvī,	āmātum,	āmārē, <i>to love.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—*love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amo,	<i>I love.</i>
2. Am-as,	<i>thou lovest, or you love.</i>
3. Am-at,	<i>he loveth, or he loves.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āmus,	<i>we love.</i>
2. Am-ātis,	<i>ye or you love.</i>
3. Am-ant,	<i>they love.</i>

Imperfect.—*loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-ābam,	<i>I loved.</i>
2.	Am-ābas,	<i>thou lovedst.</i>
3.	Am-ābat,	<i>he loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-ābāmus,	<i>we loved.</i>
2.	Am-ābātis,	<i>ye or you loved.</i>
3.	Am-ābant,	<i>they loved.</i>

Perfect.—*loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved.</i>
2.	Am-āvisti,	<i>thou hast loved.</i>
3.	Am-āvit,	<i>he has loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-āvīmus,	<i>we have loved.</i>
2.	Am-āvistis,	<i>ye have loved.</i>
3.	Am-āvērunt, v.-āvēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect.—*had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
2.	Am-āvēras,	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>
3.	Am-āvērat,	<i>he had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-āvērāmus,	<i>we had loved.</i>
2.	Am-āvērātis,	<i>ye had loved.</i>
3.	Am-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future.—*shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-ābo,	<i>I shall or will love.</i>
2.	Am-ābis,	<i>thou shalt or wilt love.</i>
3.	Am-ābit,	<i>he shall or will love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-ābīmus,	<i>we shall or will love.</i>
2.	Am-ābītis,	<i>ye shall or will love.</i>
3.	Am-ābunt,	<i>they shall or will love.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—*may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-em,	<i>I may or can love.*</i>
2.	Am-es,	<i>thou mayest or canst love.</i>
3.	Am-et,	<i>he may or can love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-ēmus,	<i>we may or can love.</i>
2.	Am-ētis,	<i>ye or you may or can love.</i>
3.	Am-ent,	<i>they may or can love.</i>

* *Si amem*, if I love ; *si ames*, if thou love ; *si amet*, if he love, &c.

Imperfect.—*might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love.</i>
2. Am-āres,	<i>thou mightst love.</i>
3. Am-āret,	<i>he might love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ārēmus,	<i>we might love.</i>
2. Am-ārētis,	<i>ye might love.</i>
3. Am-ārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

Perfect.—*may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērim,	<i>I may have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvēris,	<i>thou mayest have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvērit,	<i>he may have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvērimus,	<i>we may have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvēritis,	<i>ye may have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvērint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect.—*might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvissem,	<i>I might have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvisses,	<i>thou mightst have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvisset,	<i>he might have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvissēmus,	<i>we might have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvissētis.	<i>ye might have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

Future.—*shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvēris,	<i>thou shalt have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvērit,	<i>he shall have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvērimus,	<i>we shall have loved.</i>
2. Am-āvēritis,	<i>ye shall have loved.</i>
3. Am-āvērint,	<i>they shall have loved.</i>

Imperative Mood.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>love thou, or do thou love.</i>
3. Am-āto,	<i>let him love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> amātōte,	<i>love ye, or do ye love.</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>let them love.</i>

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Am-āvisse,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> { Esse amātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
{ Fuisse amātūrus, -a. um.	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

Participles.

Present, Am-ans, *loving.*
Future, Am-ātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum, *loving.*
Gen. Am-andi, *of loving.*
Dat. Am-ando, *to loving.*
Acc. Am-andum, *loving.*
Abl. Am-ando, *with loving.*

Supines.

Former, Am-ātum, *to love.*
Latter, Am-ātu, *to love, or to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative. Perfect Participle. Infinitive.
 Āmōr, āmātūs, āmārī, *to be loved.*

*Indicative Mood.**Present Tense.—am.*

Sing. 1. Am-or, *I am loved.*
 2. Am-āris, *vel -āre*, *thou art loved.*
 3. Am-ātur, *he is loved.*
Plur. 1. Am-āmur, *we are loved.*
 2. Am-āmīni, *ye or you are loved.*
 3. Am-antur, *they are loved.*

Imperfect.—was.

Sing. 1. Am-ābar, *I was loved.*
 2. Am-ābāris, *vel -ābāre*, *thou wast loved.*
 3. Am-ābātur, *he was loved.*
Plur. 1. Am-ābāmur, *we were loved.*
 2. Am-ābāmīni, *ye were loved.*
 3. Am-ābantur, *they were loved.*

Perfect.—am ; have been, or was.

Sing. 1. Amātus sum, *vel fui*, *I have been loved.*
 2. Amātus es, *v. fuisti*, *thou hast been loved.*
 3. Amātus est, *v. fuit*, *he has been loved.*
Plur. 1. Amāti sūmus, *v. fuimus*, *we have been loved.*
 2. Amāti estis, *v. fuistis*, *ye have been loved.*
 3. Amāti sunt, *fuērunt, v. fuēre*, *they have been loved.*

Plu-perfect.—*had been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amātus eram, *vel* fuēram, *I had been loved.*
 2. Amātus eras, *v.* fuēras, *thou hadst been loved.*
 3. Amātus erat, *v.* fuērat, *he had been loved.*
Plur. 1. Amāti erāmus, *v.* fuērāmus, *we had been loved.*
 2. Amāti erātis, *v.* fuērātis, *ye had been loved.*
 3. Amāti erant, *v.* fuērant, *they had been loved.*

Future.—*shall or will be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved.*
 2. Am-ābēris, *vel*-ābēre, *thou shalt be loved.*
 3. Am-ābītur, *he shall be loved.*
Plur. 1. Am-ābīmur, *we shall be loved.*
 2. Am-ābīmīni, *ye shall be loved.*
 3. Am-ābuntur, *they shall be loved.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—*may or can be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, *I may be loved.*
 2. Am-ēris, *vel*-ēre, *thou mayest be loved.*
 3. Am-ētur, *he may be loved.*
Plur. 1. Am-ēmur, *we may be loved.*
 2. Am-ēmīni, *ye may be loved.*
 3. Am-entur, *they may be loved.*

Imperfect.—*might, could, would, or should be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārer, *I might be loved.*
 2. Am-ārēris, *vel*-ārēre, *thou mightst be loved.*
 3. Am-ārētur, *he might be loved.*
Plur. 1. Am-ārēmur, *we might be loved.*
 2. Am-ārēmīni, *ye might be loved.*
 3. Am-ārentur, *they might be loved.*

Perfect.—*may have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amātus sim, *vel* fuērim, *I may have been loved.*
 2. Amātus sis, *v.* fuēris, *thou mayest have been loved.*
 3. Amātus sit, *v.* fuērit, *he may have been loved.*
Plur. 1. Amāti sīmus, *v.* fuērimus, *we may have been loved.*
 2. Amāti sītis, *v.* fuēritis, *ye may have been loved.*
 3. Amāti sint, *v.* fuērint, *they may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect.—*might, could, would, or should have been ; or had been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amātus essem, *vel* fuīsem, *I might have been loved.*
 2. Amātus esses, *v.* fuīsses, *thou mightst have been loved.*
 3. Amātus esset, *v.* fuīssset, *he might have been loved.*

<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amāti essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>we might have been loved.</i>
	2. Amāti essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye might have been loved.</i>
	3. Amāti essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they might have been loved.</i>

Future.—shall have been.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Amātus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
	2. Amātus fuēris,	<i>thou shalt have been loved.</i>
	3. Amātus fuērit,	<i>he shall have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amāti fuērimus,	<i>we shall have been loved.</i>
	2. Amāti fuēritis,	<i>ye shall have been loved.</i>
	3. Amāti fuērint,	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>

Imperative Mood.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-āre, <i>vel</i> am-ātor,	<i>be thou loved.</i>
	3. Am-ātor,	<i>let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-āmīni,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
	3. Am-antor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Am-āri,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse, v. fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-ātum iri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

Participles.

<i>Perf.</i>	Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>to be loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dūceo, I teach ; dōcui, I have taught ; doctum, dōcēre, to teach.

Indicative Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit ;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	{ -uērunt, v. -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat ;	-uērāmus,	-uērātis,	-uērant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit ;	-uērīmus,	-uērītis,	-uērint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-nissem,	-uisses,	-uisset ;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit ;	-uērīmus,	-uērītis,	-uērint.

Imperative Mood.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-e, <i>vel</i> -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte, <i>vel</i> -ētōte,	-ento.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum, 1.	Doc-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endi, 2.	Doc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> {	Esse doctūrus, -a, -um.	Doc-endo, &c.	
	Fuisse doctūrus, -a, -um.		

PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceōr, *I am taught* ; doctūs, *taught* ; dōcērī, *to be taught*.

Indicative Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i>	Doc-eor, { -ēris, <i>vel</i> -ēre,	-ētur ; -ēmur, -ēmīni, -entur.
<i>Im.</i>	Doc-ēbar, { -ēbāris, <i>vel</i> -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ; -ēbāmur, -ēbāmīni, -ēbantur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doctus sum, <i>vel</i> fui, doctus es, <i>vel</i> fuisti, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i>	Doctus eram, <i>v.</i> fuēram, doctus eras, <i>v.</i> fuēras, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbor, { -ēbēris, <i>vel</i> -ēbēre,	-ēbītur ; -ēbīmur, -ēbīmīni, -ēbantur.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Doc-ear, { -eāris, <i>vel</i> -eāre,	-eātur ; -eāmur, -eāmīni, -eantur.
<i>Im.</i>	Doc-ērer, { -ērēris, <i>vel</i> -ērēre,	-ērētur ; -ērēmur, -ērēmīni, -ērentur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doctus sim, <i>vel</i> fuērim, doctus sis, <i>vel</i> fuēris, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i>	Doctus essem, <i>v.</i> fuīsssem, doctus esses, <i>v.</i> fuīssses, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Doctus fuēro, doctus fuēris, doctus fuērit, docti fuērimus, &c.	

Imperative Mood.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-ēre, <i>vel</i> -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-entor.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēri.	<i>Perf.</i> Doctus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse doctus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i> Docendus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri.	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, I read ; lēgi, I have read ; lectum, lēgērē, to read.

*Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.*

1. 2. 3. 1. 2. 3.

Pres. Lēg-o, -is, -it ; -īmus, -ītis, -unt.

Imp. Lēg-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.

Perf. Lēg-i, -isti, -it ; -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, v. -ēre.

Plu. Lēg-eram, -eras, -erat ; -ērāmus, -ērātis, -erant.

Fut. Lēg-am, -es, -et ; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Lēg-am, -as, -at ; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

Imp. Lēg-ērem, -ēres, -ēret ; -ērēmus, -ērētis, -ērent.

Perf. Lēg-erim, -eris, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Plu. Lēg-issem, -isses, -isset ; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Fut. Lēg-ero, -eris, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative Mood.

2.

3.

2.

3.

Pres. Lēg-e, vel -īto, -īto ; -īte, vel -ītōte, -unto.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ere.	<i>Pr.</i> Lēg-ens.	Lēg-endum,	1. Lec-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Lēg-isse.	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tūrus.	Lēg-endi,	2. Lec-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> {	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um.	Lēg-endo, &c.	
	Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um.		

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgōr, I am read ; lectūs, read ; lēgi, to be read.

*Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.*

Pr. Lēg-or, { -ēris, vel -itur ; -īmur, -īminī, -untur.

Im. Lēg-ēbar, { -ēbāris, vel -ēbātur ; -ēbāmur, -ēbāminī, -ēbantur.

Per. Lectūs sum, vel fui, lectus es, vel fuisti, &c.

Plu. Lectus eram, vel fuēram, lectus eras, vel fuēras, &c.

Fut. Lēg-ar, { -ēris, vel -ētur ; -ēmur, -ēminī, -entur.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Lĕg-ar,	{ -āria, <i>vel</i> -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmini,	-antur.
<i>Im.</i>	Lĕg-ĕrer,	{ -ĕrĕris, <i>vel</i> -ĕrĕre,	-ĕrĕtur ;	-ĕrĕmur,	-ĕrĕmini,	-ĕrentur
<i>Perf.</i>	Lectus sim, <i>vel</i> fuĕrim, lectis sis, <i>vel</i> fuĕris, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i>	Lectus essem, <i>v.</i> fuisset, lectus esses, <i>v.</i> fuisses, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i>	Lectus fuĕro, lectus fuĕris, lectus fuĕrit, &c.					

Imperative Mood.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Lĕg-ĕre, <i>vel</i> -ĭtor,	-ĭtor ;	-ĭmini,	-untor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Lĕg-i.	<i>Perf.</i>	Lec-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse, <i>v.</i> fuisse lectus, -a, -um.		
<i>Fut.</i>	Lectum iri.		

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, *I hear* ; audīvī, *I have heard* ; auditum, audirĕ, *to hear*.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-io,	-is,	-it ;	-Imus,	-Itis, -iunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Aud-iĕbam,	-iĕbas,	-iĕbat ;	-iĕbāmus,	-iĕbātis, -iĕbant.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit ;	-ivimus,	-ivistis, { -ivĕrunt, -ivĕrent.
<i>Pl.</i>	Aud-ivĕram,	-ivĕras,	-ivĕrat ;	-ivĕrāmus,	-ivĕrātis, -ivĕrant
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis, -ient.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis, -iant.
<i>Im.</i>	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis, -irent.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-ivĕrim,	-ivĕris,	-ivĕrit ;	-ivĕrimus,	-ivĕritis, -ivĕrint
<i>Pl.</i>	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset ;	-ivissēmus,	-ivissētis, -ivissent
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-ivĕro,	-ivĕris,	-ivĕrit ;	-ivĕrimus,	-ivĕritis, -ivĕrint

Imperative Mood.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-i, <i>vel</i> -ĭto,	-ĭto ;	-ĭte, <i>vel</i> -ĭtōte,	-iunto

Infinitive. Participles. Gerunds. Supines.

Pres. Aud-īre. *Pr.* Aud-iens. Aud-iendum, 1. Audītum.

Perf. Aud-īvisse. *Fut.* Aud-itūrus. Aud-iendi, 2. Audītu.

Fut. { Esse audītūrus, -a, -um. Aud-iendo, &c.
Fuisse audītūrus, -a, -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, *I am heard*; audītus, *heard*; audīrī, *to be heard*.

*Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.*

Pr. Aud-ior, { -īris, *vel* -itur; -imur, -imīni, -iuntur.
-īre,

Im. Aud-iēbar, { -iēbāris, *vel* -iēbātur; -iēbāmur, -iēbāminī, -iēbantur.
-iēbāre,

Perf. Audītus sum, *vel* fui, audītus es, *v.* fuisti, &c.

Plu. Audītus eram, *v.* fuēram, audītus eras, *v.* fuēras, &c.

Fut. Aud-iar, { -iāris, *vel* -iētur; -iēmur, -iēmīni, -ientur.
-iēre,

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Aud-iar, { -iāris, *vel* -iātur; -iāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
-iāre,

Im. Aud-īrer, { -īrēris, *vel* -īrētur; -īrēmur, -īrēmīni, -īrentur.
-īrēre,

Perf. Audītus sim, *vel* fuērim, audītus sis, *v.* fuēris, &c.

Plu. Audītus essem, *v.* fuissem, audītus esses, *v.* fuissēs, &c.

Fut. Audītus fuēro, audītus fuēris, &c.

Imperative Mood.

2.

3.

2.

3.

Pr. Aud-īre, *vel* -ītor, -ītor; -imīni, -iuntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pr. Aud-īri.

Per. Aud-ītus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse, *vel* fuisse audītus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Audītum iri.

FORMATION OF LATIN VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *dī*; as,

AM-o, -em: AM-*VI*, -*eram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*: AM-*AT-UM*, -*u*, -*ūrus*, -*us*: A-*MARE*, -*ābam*, -*ābo*, -*ārem*, -*a*, -*ans*, -*andum*, *dī*, *do*; -*andus*.

DOC-*EO*, -*eam*: DOC-*UI*, -*uēram*, &c.: DOC-*TUM*, -*u*, -*ūrus*, -*us*: DOC-*ERE*, -*ēbam*, -*ēbo*, -*ērem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, *dī*, *do*; -*endus*.

LEG-o, -am: LEG-*I*, -*eram*, &c.; LECT-*UM*, -*u*, -*ūrus*, -*us*: LEG-*ERE*, -*ēbam*, -*ērem*, -*e*, -*ens*, -*endum*, &c.

AUD-*IO*, -*iam*: AUD-*IVI*, -*ivēram*, &c.: AUD-*ITUM*, -*u*, -*ūrus*, -*us*: AUD-*IRE*, -*iēbam*, -*irem*, -*i*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *dī*, *do*; -*iendus*.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-*IO*, -*iam*: CEP-*I*, -*eram*, &c.: CAPT-*UM*, -*u*, &c.: CAP-*ERE*, -*iēbam*, -*ērem*, -*e*, -*iens*, -*iendum*, *dī*, *do*; -*iendus*.

The simple tenses of the passive voice are formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

AM-o, -*ābam*, -*ābo*, -em, -*ārem*, -a or -*āto*, -*āre*, -ans, -*andum*, *dī*, *do*, &c.; -*andus*.

AMA-*VI*, -*eram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*: AM-*AT-UM*, -*u*, -*us*, -*ūrus*. So, DOC-*EO*, -*ēbam*, -*ēbo*, -*eam*, -*ērem*, -e or -*ēto*, -*ēre*, -ens, -*endum*, *dī*, &c.; -*endus*: DOCU-*I*, -*eram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*: DOCT-*UM*, -*u*, -*us*, -*ūrus*.

LEG-o, -*ēbam*, -am, es, et, &c. -am, as, at, &c.: -*ērem*, -e or *lto*, -*ēre*, -ens, -*endum*, &c.; -*endus*:

LEG-*I*, -*eram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*, &c.: LECT-*UM*, -*u*, -*us*, -*ūrus*. CAP-*IO*, -*iēbam*, -iam, ies, iet, &c. -iam, ias, iat, &c. -*ērem*, -e or *lto*, -*ēre*, -iens, -*iendum*, -*iendus*: CEP-*I*, -*eram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*: CAPT-*UM*, -*u*, -*us*, -*ūrus*.

AUD-*IO*, -*iēbam*, -iam, -*irem*, -i v. *lto*, *lre*, -iens, &c. AUDIV-*I*, -*eram*, &c.

A Latin verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *ābāmus*, in *ām-ābāmus*.

All the letters which come before -*āre*, -*ēre*, -*ēre*, or -*īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MOODS.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving; *amābo*, I shall or will love, or shall be loving; *amem*, I may or can love, or be loving; *amārem*, I might, could, would, or should love, or be loving, &c.

Amāvi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving; *amavēram*, I had loved, or had done with loving; *amavērim*, I may have loved; *amavissem*, I might, could, would, or should have loved; or I had loved, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved; *amābar*, I was loved, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mood.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved;

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.*

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was, or had been loved;

Amatus fuēram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved;

Amatus fuērim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved;

Amatus fuissem, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mood, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.—*Amatus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The

* Though *sum* and *fui*, when joined with the Participle Perfect, have commonly the same meaning, yet they are sometimes distinguished; thus, *Detestabilis est illorum immanitas, qui in patriā funditus delendā occupati et sunt, et fuerunt*, Cic. Off. 1. 17. *Nec tam nota mihi, quam sunt, mala nostra fuerunt*, Ov. Tr. iv. 6; 27. cf. Plaut. Amph. ii. 2, 130.

connecting of syntax, as far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so, *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English, as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, as if they understood, what kind of a person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, you would think, &c. Ov. Met. 1. 242. *Elloquar, an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? Virg. Æn. iii. 39. *Nec vos arguerim, Teuceri*, for *arguam*, id. xi. 164. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. Heaut. ii. 3, 75. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem, Et perferre, soror, potero*; for *potuissem* and *possem*, Virg. Æn. iv. 419. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Ov. Tr. iii. 7, 43. *Prædiceres mihi*, you should have told me before-hand, Ter. Andr. iv. 4, 54. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have stood to your word, Virg. Æn. viii. 643. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. 15, 21. *Hauserit ensis*, the sword would have destroyed, Virg. Æn. ii. 600. *Fuerint irati*, grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, if he did or should do that, Cic.—The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctūque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. Æn. ii. 12. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuiisset*, Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuiisset*, Sall. Jug. 27. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, for *esses* and *sentires*, Ter. Andr. ii. 1, 10. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæs. B. G. 1. 3. *Mox ego huc revertor*, for *revertar*, Ter. Andr. iii. 2, 5: add. Plaut. Cist. ii. 3, 86.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet or fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter. Ad. iii. 3, 40; Andr. iii. 3, 19, &c.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither; *legāmus*, let us read; *accelerēmus*, let us make haste, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valēbis, meque amābis*, farewell, and love me, Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mood, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

Dicit me scribere ; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

Dixit me scribere ; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

Dicit me scripsisse ; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

Dixit me scripsisse ; he said that I had written.

Dicit me scripturum esse ; he says that I will write.

Dixit nos scripturos esse ; he said that we would write.

Dicit nos scripturos fuisse ; he says that we would have written.

Dicit literas scribi ; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, in writing, or in being written.

Dixit literas scribi ; he said that letters were writing, or written.

Dicit literas scriptas esse ; he says that letters are or were written.

Dicit literas scriptas fuisse ; he says that letters have been written.

Dixit literas scriptas fuisse ; he said that letters had been written.

Dicit literas scriptum iri ; he says that letters will be written.

Dixit literas scriptum iri ; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis*, or circumlocution ; thus, *scio fore*, vel *futurum esse*, ut *scribant*,—ut *literæ scribantur* ; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore*, vel *futurum esse*, ut *scriberent*,—ut *literæ scriberentur* ; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse*, ut *literæ scriberentur* ; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs that want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed :

Scribendum est mihi, *puero*, *nobis*, *pueris*, &c. *literas* ; I, the boy, we, the boys, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, *puero*, *nobis*, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi ; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi literas ; I know that I must write letters.

— *scribendum fuisse mihi* ;—that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi ; he said that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus* :

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, *puero*, *hominibus*, &c. or *a me*, *puero*, &c. letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *literæ scribendæ erant*, *fuērunt*, *erunt*, &c. *Si literæ scribendæ sint*, *essent*, *forent*, &c. *Scio literas scribendæ esse* ; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendæ fuisse* ; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum* ; as, *sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving ; *eram amans*, for *amābam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Andr. iv. 4, 36. Only the Tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner ; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however, does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner ; as,

Voco, vocāvi, vocātum, to call : so, *revoco, revocāvi, revocātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable ; as, *pello, pēpuli*, to beat ; *repello, rēpuli*, never *rēpēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule ; thus, *ēdisco, ēdidici*, to get by heart ; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand, &c. So, *præcurro, præcūcurri* ; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi* ; also sometimes several other compounds of *curro* ; as, *concurro, concurri* or *concūcurri*, &c.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine ; as, *fācio, fēcī, factum*, to make ; *perficio, perfēcī, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*, also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sāpio, sālio*, and *stātuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine ; as, *lābo, lābāre*, to fall ; *polleo, -ēre*, to be able, &c.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvī* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine ; as,

Creo, creāvi, creātum, to create ; *pāro, pārāvi, pārātum*, to prepare.—So,

Abundo, to abound. *Ārieto, to push like a* *Būbūlo, to hoot like an*

Accūso, to charge with *Apto, to fit.* [ram. owl.

a crime.

Āro, to plough.

Cāco, to go to stool.

Ādumbro, to shade, to delineate. *Āscio, to cut or hew.*

Cæco, to blind or dazzle.

Assēvĕro, to affirm.

Cælo, to carve.

Ādīfīco, to build.

Ausculro, to listen.

Calceo, to put on shoes

Āstīmo, to value.

Auctōro, to engage for

to shoe.

Ambūlo, to walk.

service.

Calcitro, to kick.

Amplio, to enlarge, to put off a cause. *Autūmo, to suppose.*

Calco, to tread.

Ānīmo, to encourage.

Āverrunco, to avert.

Cālīgo, to be dark or dim-sighted.

Antīcīpo, to anticipate. *Bālo, to bleat.*

Carmīno, to card wool.

Antīquo, i. e. antīqua *Bāsio, to kiss.*

Castīgo, to chastise.

probo, to reject a law. *Bello, to war.*

Castro, to cut off.

Appello, to call.

Beo, to bless.

Cēlebro, to make famous.

Apprōpinquo, to approach. *Blātĕro, to babble.*

Cēlo, to conceal.

Boo, to bellow.

Centūrio, to conceal.

tūrio, to divide into companies.	Dēlecto, to delight.	Fōdico, to pierce or push.
Certo, to strive, to fight.	Dēlibēro, to deliberate.	Fōro, to bore.
Cesso, to cease.	Dēlineo, to trace, to chalk out.	Fortūno, to prosper.
Clāmo, to cry.	Dēlro, to doat, to rave.	Fragro, to smell sweetly.
Claudico, to limp.	Dēlumbo, to weaken.	Fraudo, to defraud.
Coāgūlo, to curdle.	Dēsīdēro, to desire.	Frio, to crumble.
Cōgīto, to think.	Dēsōlo, to lay waste.	Frustrō, & -or, to disappoint.
Collīneo, to aim at, to hit the mark.	Destīno, to design.	Fūco, to colour, to paint.
Cōlo, to strain.	Dico, to dedicate.	Fūgo, to put to flight.
Commūnīco, to impart.	Discepto, dispūto, to debate, to dispute.	Fundo, to found.
Compāro, to compare.	Dissipo, to scatter.	Gēnēro, to beget.
Compenso, to make amends.	Dōlo, to hew or cut.	Grāvo, to weigh down.
Compērendīno, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.	Dōno, to present.	Gūberno, to govern.
Compilo, to pile up, to pillage.	Duplico, to double.	Gusto, to taste.
Conellio, to gain, to reconcile.	Edūco, to bring up.	Hābito, to dwell.
Concordo, to agree.	Ejūlo, to wail, to weep.	Hēsīto, to doubt.
Confūto, rēfūto, to disprove, to confute.	Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.	Hālo, to breathe.
Congēlo, to freeze.	Emendo, to amend.	Hio, to gape.
Consīdēro, to consider.	Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.	Hōnōro, to honour.
Contāmino, to pollute.	Enōdo, to unknot, to explain.	Jacto, to boast, to brag.
Cōpūlo, to couple.	Ēqūto, to ride.	Jento, to breakfast.
Corrūgo, to wrinkle.	Erro, to wander.	Ignōro, to be ignorant.
Corrusco, to brandish.	Exāmīno, to examine, to try.	Immōlo, to sacrifice.
Crēmo, to burn.	Exantlo, to empty, to endure.	Impēro, to command.
Creo, to create.	Exāro, to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.	Impetro, to obtain.
Cribo, to sift.	Exentēro, to take out the guts.	Īnauro, to gild.
Crispo, to curl.	Existīmo, to think.	Inchoo, to begin.
Crūcio, to torment.	Explōro, to search.	Inclīno, to incline.
Cūro, to care.	Extrīco, to disentangle.	Indāgo, to trace out.
Damno, to condemn.	Fabrico, to frame.	Indico, to shew.
Dēcīmo, to take the tenth part, to punish every tenth man.	Fascīno, to bewitch.	Inquīno, to pollute.
Dēclāro, to declare.	Fātīgo, to weary.	Inspīco, to sharpen at the end.
Dēcollo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.	Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment.	Instauro, to renew.
Dēcōro, to adorn.	Festīno, to hasten.	Instīgo, to push on.
Dēcūrio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.	Flāgīto, to dun.	Intercālo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
Dēdico, to dedicate.	Flagro, to be on fire.	Intro, to enter.
	Flo, to blow.	Invito, to invite.
	Fōcillo, rēfōcillo, to cherish, to warm.	Irrādīo, to shine upon.
		Irrīto, to provoke.
		Ītēro, to do again.
		Jūbīlo, to shout for joy.
		Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.
		Jūro, to swear.
		Lābōro, to labour.
		Lācēro, to tear.

Lachrymo, & -er, to weep.	Nōmīno, to name.	Pullūlo, to bud.
Lævigō, to smooth or polish.	Nōto, to mark.	Purgo, to cleanse.
Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.	Nōvo, to renew.	Pūto, to think.
Lānio, to tear.	Nūdo, to make bare.	Quadro, to square.
Latro, to bark.	Nūmēro, to count,	Rēcūpēro, to recover.
Laxo, to loose.	Nuncūpo, to call.	Rēcūso, to refuse.
Lēgo, to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.	Nuntio, to tell.	Refrigēro, to cool.
Lēvo, to lighten.	Nūto, to nod.	Rēgēlo, to thaw.
Libo, to taste.	Obsecro, to beseech.	Rēpāro, to repair,
Libēro, to free.	Obsēro, to lock.	Rēpræsento, to resemble, to shew; to pay money in advance.
Ligo, to bind.	Obtempēro, to obey.	Rēsēro, to unlock.
Liquo, to melt.	Obtrunco, to kill.	Rlgo, to water.
Litigo, to quarrel.	Obtūro, to stop up.	Rōgo, to ask.
Lito, to appease by sacrifice.	Occo, to harrow.	Rōto, to wheel about.
Lūcubro, to sit up late, to study.	Ōdōro, to perfume.	Ructo, & -or, to belch.
Lustro, to survey.	Ōnēro, to load.	Rūmīno, to chew the cud.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Opto, to wish.	Runco, to weed.
Macto, to slay, to sacrifice.	Orbo, to deprive.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Mando, to command, to commit.	Ordino, to put in order.	Sāgīno, to fatten.
Māno, to flow.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sālivo, to spit or slaver.
Mātūro, to hasten.	Ōro, to beg.	Salto, to dance.
Mēdico, & -or, to cure.	Oscito, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Sālūto, to salute.
Mēmōro, to tell.	Pāco, to subdue.	Sāno, to heal.
Meo, to go or pass.	Palpito, to beat or throb.	Sātio, to satisfy.
Mēridio, & -or, to sleep at noon.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Sātūro, to fill, to glut.
Migro, to remove.	Pārento, to perform funeral rites, to revenge.	Scārifico, to lance or open.
Millto, to be a soldier.	Pāro, to prepare.	Soreo, to hawk or retch in spitting.
Ministro, to serve.	Patro, to perform.	Sēcundo, to prosper.
Mitigo, to pacify.	Pecco, to sin.	Sēdo, to allay.
Monstro, to shew or tell.	Pēnetro, to pierce.	Sēpāro, to sever.
Mulco, to beat.	Persēvēro, to continue constant.	Servo, to keep.
Multo, & -cto, to fine.	Pio, to expiate.	Sībilo, to hiss.
Musso, & -lto, to mutter.	Plāco, to appease.	Sicco, to dry.
Mūtlo, to maim.	Plōro, to bewail.	Signo, to mark out.
Mūto, to change.	Porto, to carry.	Significo, to mean, to give notice.
Narro, to tell.	Postūlo, to demand.	Sīmūlo, to pretend.
Nauseo, to be sea-sick.	Privo, to deprive.	Sōcio, to match, to join.
Nāvigo, to sail.	Prōbo, to approve.	Sōlicito, to stir up, to disquiet.
Nāvo, to act vigorously.	Procrastino, to delay.	Somnio, to dream.
Nēgo, to deny.	Profligo, to rout.	Specto, to behold.
Nicto, to wink.	Prōmulgo, to publish.	Spēro, to hope,
No, to swim.	Propāgo, to propagate.	Spīro, to breathe.
Nōdo, to knot, rar. act.	Prōpēro, to hasten.	Spōlio, to rob.
	Propīno, to drink to.	Spūmo, to foam.
	Prōtēlo, to chase away.	Stagno, to stand as water.
	Publico, to publish, to confiscate.	Stillo, to drop.
	Pugno, to fight.	

<i>Sālmūlo</i> , to goad, to vex.	<i>Tērebro</i> , to bore.	<i>Vēlo</i> , to cover.
<i>Stipo</i> , to stuff, to guard.	<i>Termino</i> , to bound.	<i>Ventīlo</i> , to fan.
<i>Strangūlo</i> , to stifle.	<i>Titillo</i> , to tickle.	<i>Verbēro</i> , to whip.
<i>Strigo</i> , to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen or horses do.	<i>Titūbo</i> , to stagger.	<i>Vestigo</i> , to search for.
<i>Sūdo</i> , to sweat.	<i>Tōlēro</i> , to bear.	<i>Vibro</i> , to brandish, to shake.
<i>Suffoco</i> , to strangle.	<i>Trāno</i> , to swim over.	<i>Viduo</i> , to deprive.
<i>Suffoco</i> , to burn incense.	<i>Tripūdio</i> , to caper.	<i>Vigilo</i> , to watch.
<i>Sūgillo</i> , to taunt or jeer.	<i>Triumpho</i> , to triumph.	<i>Vindico</i> , to claim, to revenge.
<i>Sulco</i> , to furrow.	<i>Trūcido</i> , to kill.	<i>Viōlo</i> , to violate.
<i>Sūpēro</i> , to overcome.	<i>Turbo</i> , to disturb.	<i>Vitio</i> , to spoil.
<i>Suppedito</i> , to afford.	<i>Ūlūlo</i> , to howl.	<i>Vito</i> , to shun.
<i>Sūsurro</i> , to whisper.	<i>Umbro</i> , to shade.	<i>Vitūpēro</i> , to blame.
<i>Tardo</i> , to stop.	<i>Vācillo</i> , to waver.	<i>Vōco</i> , to call.
<i>Taxo</i> , to rate, to reprove.	<i>Vāco</i> , to want, to be at leisure.	<i>Vōlo</i> , to fly.
<i>Tēmēro</i> , to defile.	<i>Vasto</i> , to lay waste.	<i>Vōro</i> , to devour.
<i>Tempēro</i> , to temper.	<i>Vellico</i> , to pluck, twitch or pinch ; to taunt or rail at.	<i>Vulgo</i> , to spread abroad.
<i>Tēnuo</i> , to make small.		<i>Vulnero</i> , to wound.

Exc. 1. *Do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, to give. So, *vēnundo*, to sell ; *circundo*, to surround ; *pessundo*, to overthrow ; *sātis-do*, to give surety ; *vēnundēdi*, *vēnundātum*, *vēnundāre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, *stēti*, *stātum*, *stāre*, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti*, *stītum*, and oftener *stātum* ; as, *præsto*, *præstīti*, *præstītum* or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So, *ad-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo*, *lāvi*, *lōtum*, *lautum*, *lāvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, *pōtāvi*, *pōtum* or *pōlātum*, to drink.

Jūvo, *jūvi*, *jūtum*, to help ; future participle, *jūvātūrus*. So, *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo*, *cūbui*, *cūbītum*, to lie. So, *ac-*, *ex-*, *oc-*, *rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, *dōmui*, *dōmītum*, to subdue. So, *ē-*, *per-dōmo*.

Sōno, *sōnui*, *sōnītum*, to sound. So, *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-sōno*.

Tōno, *tōnui*, *tōnītum*, to thunder. So, *at-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *sūpērin-*, *rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnātus*, *Epod. 2, 51*.

Vēto, *vētui*, *vētītum*, to forbid.

Crēpo, *crēpui*, *crēpītum*, to make a noise. So, *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-crēpo* : *dis-crēpo* has rather *dis-crēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frictum*, to rub. So, *af-, circum-, con-, dē-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frīco*. But some of these have also *ātum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sectum, to cut. So, *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

Nēco, nēcui or *nēcāvi, nēcātum*, to kill. So, *inter-, ē-nēco* : but these have oftener *ectum* ; *ēnectum, internectum*.

Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine. So, *inter-, prō-mīco*. *Emīco* has *ēmīcui, ēmīcātum* ; *dimīco, dimīcāvi, dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine : *lābo*, to fall or faint ; *nexo*, to bind ; and *plīco*, to fold.

Plīco, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re, sub*, has *āvi, ātum* ; as, *duplīco, duplicāvi, duplicātum*, to double. So, *multi-, sup-, re-plīco*.

The other compounds of *plīco* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum* ; as, *applīco, applicui, applicitum*, or *-āvi, -ātum*, to apply. So, *im-, com-plīco*. *Explīco*, to unfold, has commonly *explīcui, explīcītum* ; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explīcāvi, explīcātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum* ; as, *hābeo, hābui, hābitum*, to have.*—So,

Ādhībeo, to admit, to use.

Cohībeo, inhībeo, to restrain.

Exhībeo, to shew, to give.

Pērhibeo, to say, to give out.

Prohibeo, to hinder.

Posthābeo, to value less.

Præbeo, to afford.

Rēdhībeo, to return, or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

Dēbeo, to owe.

Mēreo, to deserve : *com-, dē-, ē-, per-, prō-mēreo*, or *-mēreor*.

Mōneo, to admonish : *ad-, com-, prae-mōneo*.

Terreo, to terrify : *abs-, con-, dē-, ex-, per-terreo*.

Dirībeo, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine ; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry ; *albeo, -ui*, to be white.—So,

Āceo, &-esco, to be sour. *Clāreo*, to be bright. *Flacceo*, to wither.

Candeo, to be white. *Ēgeo, indigeo*, to want. *Flōreo*, to flourish.

Calleo, to be hard. *Emīneo*, to stand above. *Fœteo*, to stink. [teeth.

Cāneo, to be hoary. others. *Frendeo*, to gnash the

* To have, in English, is used both as an active or principal verb, and as an auxiliary : thus, *I have, thou hast, or you have, he has or hath, &c. I had, thou hadst, &c. I have had, thou hast had, &c.*

il-, inier-, per- or pel-, præ-, prō-, rē-, sub-, trans-lūceo.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO* :

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Video, vidi, visum, to see. So, *invideo*, to envy ; *per-, præ-, prō-, rē-video*.

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So, *as-, con-, dē-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, rē-, sub-sīdeo* : *circumsīdeo*, or *circumsēdeo, sūpersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sīdeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, —, to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So, *dē-, im-, prō-, sūper-pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So, *ad-, com-, dē-, ob-, præ-, rē-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spōpon̄di, sponsum, to promise. So, *dē-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōton̄di, tonsum, to clip. So, *at-, circum-, dē-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable ; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi*, &c.

Rīdeo, rīsi, risum, to laugh. So, *ar-, dē-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So, *dis-, per-suādeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So, *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So, *ad-, ex-augeo*.

Lūgeo, luxi, —, to mourn. So, *ē-, prō-, sub-lūgeo*.

Frigeo, frixi, —, to be cold. So, *per-, re-frigeo*.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So, *abs-, circum-, dē-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum or *mulctum*, to milk. So, *ē-, im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, ursi, —, to press. So, *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, sūper-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, —, to shine. So, *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, rē-, sūper-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, tursi, —, to swell. *Algeo, alsi, —*, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

Vico, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cico, (civi,) citum, to stir up, to rouse. So, *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cico*. *Civi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So, *af-, dē-fleo*.

Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo* ; *dē-, ex-, im-, ādim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

Oleo, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlūtum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification : *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum* ; thus, *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So, *inōleo, -ēvi, -ētum* or *-ītum*, to grow into use ; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *ābōlēvi, ābōlūtum* ; and *ādōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *ādōlēvi, ādultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO*.

Māneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So, *per-*, *rē- māneo*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So, *per-neo*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *rē-*, *sus-tīneo, -tīnui, -tentum*. But *attīneo, pertīneo*, are not used in the supine ; and seldom *abstīneo*.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *rē-torqueo, -torsi, -tortum*.

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *sub-hæreo, -hæsi, -hæsum*.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So, *extorreo*.

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So, *ac-*, *per-*, *rē-censeo*, to review ; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum* ; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move ; *fōveo, fōvi, fōtum*, to cherish. So, *con-*, *rē-fōveo*. So, *vōveo, vōvi, vōtum*, to vow or wish ; and *dē-vōveo*.

Fāveo, to favour, has *fāvi, fāutum* ; and *cāveo*, to beware of, *cāvi, cautum*. So, *præ-cāveo, -cāvi, -cautum*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine ; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, to be afraid ; whence *ex-pāveo, expāvi, —, expāvēre*, to be greatly afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So, *dē-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-ferveo, -ferbui, —, -ēre*.

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine : *lacteo*, to suck milk ; *līveo*, to be black and blue ; *scāteo*, to abound ; *renīdeo*, to shine ; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful ; *āveo*, to desire ; *polleo*, to be able ; *flāveo*, to be yellow ; *denseo*, to grow thick ; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald ; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one ; *hēbeo*, to be dull ; *ūveo*, to be moist ; and some others

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

IO.

1. *Făcio, făci, factum*, to do,* to make. So the compounds which retain *a* : *lucră-*, *magnă-*, *ăre-*, *călă-*, *mădă-*, *tăpă-*, *bănă-*, *mălă-*, *sătis-făcio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i*, have *ectum* ; as, *afficio, affeci, affectum*. So, *con-*, *dē-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *suf-ficio*. Note ; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a* ; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation ; as, *amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico* ; *gratifico*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up ; *ludifico*, to mock.

Jăcio, jăci, jactum, to throw. So, *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *sūper-*, *sūpēr-*, *tra-jăcio* ; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spăcio* and *lăcio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum* ; as, *aspicio, asperi, aspectum*, to behold. So, *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *su-spăcio*, *-spexi*, *-spectum*.

Allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So, *il-*, *pel-licio* ; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *ēlicui*, *ēlicitum*.

2. *Fădio, fădi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *suf-*, *trans-fădio*.

Făgio, făgi, fugitum, to fly. So, *au-*, (for *ab-*), *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *suf-*, *subter-*, *trans-făgio*.

3. *Căpio, căpi, captum*, to take. So, *ac-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sus-căpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum* ;) and *antă-căpio*.

Răpio, răpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So, *ab-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *dī-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *prō-*, *sur-răpio*, *-răpui*, *-reptum*.

Săpio, săpui, —, to savour, to be wise. So, *consăpio, consăpui*, —, to be well in one's wits ; *dēsăpio, dēsăpui*, to be foolish ; *rēsăpio, rēsăpui*, to come to one's wits.

Căpio, căpivi, cūpitum, to desire. So, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-căpio*.

4. *Părio, păperi, păritum* or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

* *Do* and *did* are sometimes used as auxiliaries, but never, *to do*, *doing*, and *done*.

Quătio, quassi, quassum, to shake: but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*; as, *concătio, concussi, concussum*. So, *dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, rē-, rēper-, suc-cătio, -cussi, -cussum*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, to argue, to reprove. So, *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Ācuo, exācuo, to sharpen.

Bātuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.

Induo, to put on clothes.

Exuo, to put off clothes.

Imbuo, to wet or imbrue, to season or instruct.

Mīnuo, to lessen: *com-, dē-, dī-, im-mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum*.

Spuo, to spit: *con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo*.

Stātuo, to set or place, to ordain:

con-, de-, in-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-stītuo, -stītui, -stītūtum.

Sternuo, to sneeze.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, prae-, rē-suo, -sui, -sūtum*.

Trībuo, to give, to divide: *at-, con-, dis-, re-trībuo, -bui, -būtum*.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So, *af-, circum-, con-, dē-, dif-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, prō-, re-, subter-, sūper-, trans-fluo, -fluxi, -fluxum*.

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, prae-, sub-, sūper-struo, -struxi, -structum*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, lūtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So, *al-, circum-, col-, dē-, dī-, ē-, inter-, per-, pol-, prō-, sub-luo, -lui, -lūtum*.

Ruo, rui, rūtum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *dīruo, dīrui, dīrūtum*, to overthrow. So, *ē-, ob-, prō-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo* and *irruo* want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*: *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the head; *rēnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

Bībo, bībi, bībītum, to drink. So, *ad-, com-, ē-, im-, per-, prae-bībo, -bībi, -bībītum*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-, sūper-, supra-, tran-scribo, -scripsi, -scriptum*.

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So, *dē-, ē-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbītum*, to recline at table. So, *con-, dē-, dis-, in-, oc-, prō-, rē-, suc-, sūpērin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbītum*.

These two verbs want the supine: *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So, *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo, -lambi, -lambēre*.

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine.

CO.

1. *Dico, dixi, dictum*, to say. So, *ab-, ad-, con-, contrā-, ē-, in-, inter-, præ-, prō-dico, -dixi, -dictum*.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So, *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, in-, intrō-, ob-, per-, præ-, prō-, rē-, sē-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco, -duxi, -ductum*.

2. *Vinco, vici, victum*, to overcome. So, *con-, dē-, ē-, per-, rē-vinco, -vici, -victum*.

Parco, pēperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So, *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, ici, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part. *noscītūrus*. So,

Dignosco, to distinguish; *ignosco, Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, to rest*: *ac-, to pardon*; also, *inter-, per-, præ-* con-, inter-, *rē-quiesco*.
nosco, -nōvi, -nōtum. *Scisco, -ivi, -itum, to ordain*; *ad-,*

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow: *con-, or ascisco, to take to, to associate*; *dē-, ex-, re-, and without the su-* *conscisco, to vote, to commit*; also *pine, ac-, in-, per-, prō-, suc-, præ-, re-scisco; de-scisco, to revolt*.
sūper-cresco. *Suesco, to be accustomed*: *as-, con-, dē-, in-suesco, -suēvi, -suētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So, *rēcognosco*, to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So, *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine:

Disco, didīci, to learn. So, *ad-, con-, dē-, ē-, per-, præ-* *disco, -didīci*.

Posco, pōposci, to demand. So, *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So, *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to glitter, to grow; *fātisco*, to be weary;

and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine; as, *āresco*, to become dry. But these verbs sometimes borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ar-desco*, to grow hot, *arxi*, *arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum*; as,

Scando, *scandi*, *scansum*, to climb; *ēdo*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*, to eat. So,

<i>Ascendo</i> , to mount.	<i>Cūdo</i> , to forge, to stamp,	<i>Mando</i> , to chew: <i>præ-</i> ,
<i>Descendo</i> , to go down:	or coin: <i>ex-</i> , <i>in-</i> , <i>per-</i> ,	<i>rē-mando</i> .
<i>con-</i> , <i>e-</i> , <i>ex-</i> , <i>in-</i> ,	<i>prō-</i> , <i>rē-cūdo</i> .	<i>Prehendo</i> , to take hold
<i>tran-scendo</i> .	<i>Dēfendo</i> , to defend.	<i>of:</i> <i>ap-</i> , <i>com-</i> , <i>dē-</i>
<i>Accendo</i> , to kindle:	<i>Offendo</i> , to strike against,	<i>prehendo</i> .
<i>in-</i> , <i>suc-oendo</i> .	to offend, to find.	

Exc. 1. *Divido*, *divisi*, *divisum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāsi*, *rāsum*, to shave. So, *ab-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *sub-rādo*, *-rāsi*, *-rāsum*.

Claudo, *clausi*, *clausum*, to close. So, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sē-clūdo*, *-clūsi*, *-clūsum*.

Plaudo, *plausi*, *plausum*, to clap hands for joy. So, *ap-*, *circum-plaudo*: also *com-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *sup-plōdo*, *-plōsi*, *-plōsum*.

Lūdo, *lūsi*, *lūsum*, to play. So, *ab-*, *al-*, *col-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *prō-*, *rē-lūdo*, *-lūsi*, *-lūsum*.

Trūdo, *trūsi*, *trūsum*, to thrust. So, *abs-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *prō-*, *re-trūdo*, *-trūsi*, *-trūsum*.

Lædo, *læsi*, *læsum*, to hurt. So, *al-*, *col-*, *ē-*, *il-lādo*, *-lāsi*, *-lāsum*.

Rōdo, *rōsi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw. So, *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rōdo*, *-rōsi*, *-rōsum*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si*, *sum*; as, *invādo*, *invāsi*, *invāsum*, to invade, to fall upon. So, *circum-*, *ē-*, *sūper-vādo*.

Cēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield. So, *abs-*, *ac-*, *antē-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *retro-*, *sē-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So, *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *rē-pando*.

Cōmēdo, *cōmēdi*, *cōmēsum* or *cōmestum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *sūper-ēdo*, *-ēdi*, *-ēsum*.

Fundo, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, to pour forth. So, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *suf-*, *super-*, *sūpērin-*, *trans-fundo*, *-fūdi*, *-fūsum*.

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, to cut. So, *ab-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo, -scīdi, -scissum*.

Findo, fīdi, fissum, to cleave. So, *con-, dif-, in-findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So, *ex-, ob-, per-, rē-tundo, -tūdi, -tūsum*.

Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, dē-, ex-, inter-, prō-, suc-cīdo, -cīdi, —*: except *incīdo, incīdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *rēcīdo, rēcīdi, rēcāsum*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long, and do not redouble the first syllable in the perfect; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accisum*, to cut about. So, *abs-, con-, circum-, dē-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum*.

Tendo, tētēdi, tensum or *tentum*, to stretch out. So, *at-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, prō-tendo, -tēdi, -tensum* or *tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to shew; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pēdo, pēpēdi, pēditum, to break wind backwards. So, *oppēdo*, which rarely occurs.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So, *ap-, dē-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, rē-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum*, to hide. So, *ad-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, prō-, red-, sub-, trā-do*: also *dēcon-, rēcon-do*; and *coad-, sūpērad-do*; and *dēper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rudo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, to sit down. So, *as-, circum-, dē-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo, -sēdi, -sessum*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo, concīdo, concēdo*; *consīdo*, and *consīdeo*; *conscindo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi*, *ctum* ; *as*,

Rēgo, *rexi*, *rectum*, to rule, to govern ; *dirigo*, *-exi*, *-ectum*, to direct ; *arrigo*, and *ēri**go*, *-exi*, *-ectum*, to raise up ; *corrigo*, to correct ; *porrigo*, to stretch out ; *subri**go*, to raise up. So,

Cingo, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, to gird, to *Emungo*, to wipe, to cheat.

surround : *ac-*, *dis-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *Plango*, to beat, to lament.

præ-, *rē-*, *suc-tingo*.

Stingo, or *Stinguo*, to dash out, to

Fligo, to dash or beat upon : *af-*, *con-*, *in-fligo* : also *prōfligo*, to

extinguish : *di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-stinguo*.

rout, of the first conj.

Tēgo, to cover : *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*,

Jungo, to join ; *abjungo*, to separate : *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*,

in-, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *sub-*, *sūper-tēgo*.

inter-, *se-*, *sub-jungo*.

Tingo, or *Tinguo*, to dip or dye :

Lingo, to lick : *dē-*, *ē-lingo* ; &

con-, *in-tinguo*.

pollingo, to anoint a dead body.

Ungo, or *Unguo*, to anoint : *ex-*,

Mungo, to wipe or clean the nose.

in-, *pēr-*, *sūpēr-ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexi*, *surrectum*. So, *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *rē-surgo*, *-surrexi*, *-surrectum*.

Pergo, *perrexi*, *perrectum*, to go forward.

Stringo, *strinxi*, *strictum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So, *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-stringo*.

Fingo, *finxi*, *fictum*, to feign. So, *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *rē-fingo*.

Pingo, *pinxi*, *pictum*, to paint. So, *ap-*, *dē-pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, to break. So, *con-*, *dē-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-fringo*, *-frēgi*, *-fractum*.

Agō, *ēgi*, *actum*, to do, to drive. So, *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *rēd-*, *sub-*, *trans-*, *transād-igo* ; and *circum-*, *pēr-āgo* ; *cōgo*, (for *coāgo*,) *coēgi*, *coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine : *sātāgo*, *sātēgi*, to be busy about a thing ; *prōdigo*, *prōdēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously ; *dēgo*, (for *deāgo*,) *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambigo*, to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, *lēgi*, *lectum*, to gather, to read. So, *at-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-lēgo* : also *col-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *rēcol-*, *sē-ligo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Diligo, to love, has *dilexi*, *dilectum*. So, *negligo*, to neglect ; and *intelligo*, to understand ; but *negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango*, *tētigi*, *tactum*, to touch. So, *at-*, *con-*, *ob-*, *per-tingo* ; thus, *attingo*, *attigi*, *attactum*, &c.

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So, *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo*: but *rĕpungo* has *rĕpunxi* or *rĕpŭpŭgi*.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose; or *pĕpĭgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *păgo*, to bargain, for which we use *păciscor*. The compounds of *pango* have *pĕgi*; as, *compingo, compĕgi, compactum*, to put together. So, *im-, ob-, sup-pingo, -pĕgi, -pactum*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo, -spersi, -spersum*.

Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip, or plunge. So, *dĕ-, ĕ-, im-, sub-mergo*.

Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So, *abs-, dĕ-, ex-, per-tergo*.

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix or fasten. So, *af-, con-, dĕ-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, rĕ-, suf-, trans-figo*.

Frigo, frixi, frixum or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So, *ĕ-, dĕ-, in-vergo*.

HO, JO.

1. *Trăho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So, *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, dĕ-, dis-, ex-, per-, prō-, re-, sub-trăho*.

Vĕho, vĕxi, vectum, to carry. So, *ā-, ad-, circum-, con-, dĕ-, ĕ-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rĕ-, sub-, super-, trans-vĕho, -vĕxi, -vectum*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, mictum*, to make water. So, *immejo*.

LO.

1. *Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So, *ao-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, rĕ-cŏlo*; and likewise *occŭlo, occŭlui, occultum*, to hide.

Consŭlo, consŭlui, consultum, to advise or consult.

Alo, ħlui, ħlitum, or contracted, *altum*, to nourish.

Mŏlo, mŏlui, mŏlitum, to grind. So, *com-, ĕ-, per-mŏlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *antĕ-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percŭli, perculsum*.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, to thrust. So, *ap-, as-, com-, dē-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, rĕ-pello*; *appŭli, appulsum*, &c.

Fallo, fĕfellĭ, falsum, to deceive. But *rĕfello, rĕfellĭ*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, vellĭ or vulsi, vulsum*, to pull or pinch. So, *ā-, con-, ē-, inter-, præ-, rĕ-vello*. But, *dē-, dī-, per-vello*, have rather *vellĭ*.

Sallo, sallĭ, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psallĭ*, —, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustŭli*, and *sublātum*; *extollo, extŭli, ĕlātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, ĭtum*; as,

Gĕmo, gĕmui, gĕmĭtum, to groan. So, *ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, rĕ-gĕmo, -gĕmui, -gĕmĭtum*.

Frĕmo, frĕmui, frĕmĭtum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So, *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frĕmo*.

Vĕmo, ĕvĕmo, -ui, -ĭtum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dĕmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

Prĕmo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So, *dē-, ex-prĕmo*.

Sŭmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So, *ab-, as-, con-, dē-, in-, præ-, rĕ-, trans-sŭmo*.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *demsi, demtum*; *sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Ēmo, ĕmi, emptum or emtum*, to buy. So, *ād-, dīr-, ex-, intĕr-, pĕr-, rĕd-ĭmo*; and *co-ĕmo, -ĕmi, -emptum or emtum*.

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So, *ap-, com-, dē-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prĕmo, -pressi, -pressum*.

Trĕmo, trĕmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So, *at-, circum-, con-, in-trĕmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsĭtum*, to put or place. So, *ap-, antĕ-, circum-, com-, dē-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, prō-, rĕ-, sē-, sup-, sŭper-, sŭpĕrim-, trans-pōno, -pōsui, -pōsĭtum*.

Gigno, gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, to beget. So, *con-, ē-, in-, per-, prō-, rĕ-gigno, -gĕnui, -gĕnĭtum, -gignĕre*.

Cāno, cĕcĭni, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *cĭnui* and *centum*; as, *accĭno, accĭnui, accentum*, to sing

in concert. So, *con-, in-, præ-, suc-cīno; oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno; rēcīno*, and *rě-cāno*; but *occānui, rēcānui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi, contemptum*.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So, *desperno*.

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, to lay flat, to strow. So, *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno*.

Sino, sivi or sii, situm, to permit. So, *dēsīno, dēsīvi*, oftener *dēsii, dēsītum*, to leave off.

Līno, livi or lēvi, litum, to anoint or daub. So, *al-, circum-, col-, dē-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-, subter-, sūper-, sūpēril-līno*.

Cerno, crēvi, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So, *dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, sē-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. — So, *con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo, -cerpsi, -cerptum*.

Clēpo, -psi, -ptum, to steal.
Rēpo, -psi, -ptum, to creep; *ad-, v. ar-, cor-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ir-, intrō-, ob-, per-, prō-, sub-rēpo, -repsi, -ptum*.

Scalpo, to scratch or engrave. So, *circum-, ex-scalpo, -pai, -ptum*.

Sculpo, to grave or carve. So, *ex-, in-sculpo, -psi, -ptum*.

Serpo, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo, strēpui, strēpitum*, to make a noise. So, *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strēpo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum*, to break. So, *ab-, cor-, dī-, ē-, inter-, intrō-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, prō-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So, *con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, rē-cōquo, -coxi, -coctum*.

Linguo, liqui, —, to leave. The compounds have *lic-tum*; as, *rēlinquo, rēliqui, rēlictum*, to forsake. So, *dē-, and dērē-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsiui, quæsitum*, to seek. So, *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, rē-quæro, -quæsiui, -quæsitum*.

Tēro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So, *at-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, sub-tēro*.

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So, *ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, præ-, rē-verro*.

Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So, *ād-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pēr-, sūb-ūro, -ussi, -ustum*.

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So, *ag-, con-, dī-, intrō-, rē-, sug-gĕro, -gessi, -gestum*.

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum*, to run. So, *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prō-curro*, which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum-, rē-, suc-, trans-curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sĕro, sēvi, sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sītum*; as, *consĕro, consēvi, consītum*, to plant together. So, *as-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, prō-, rē-, sub-, tran-sĕro, -sēvi, -sītum*.

Sĕro, —, to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assĕro, assĕrui, assertum*, to claim. So, *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sĕro*.

4. *Fūro*, (obsol.), *fūris*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum*; as,

Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, to call or send for. So, *cāpesso*, to take away; *fācesso*, to do, to go away; *lācesso*, to provoke; *cāpessīvi, -ītum*, &c.

Exc. 1. *Viso, vīsi, —*, to go to see, to visit. So, *in-, rē-viso*. *Incesso, incessi, —*, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsui, depstum*, to knead. So, *con-, per-depso, -ui, -stum*.

Pinso, pinsui or pinsi, pinsum, pistum, or pinsītum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi, flexum*, to bow or bend. So, *circum-, dē-, in-, re-, retrō-flecto, -xi, -xum*.

Plecto, plexi and *plexui, plexum*, to plait. So, *implecto*.

Necto, nexi and *nexui, nexum*, to tie or knit. So, *ad-, or an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto, -xi* and *-xui, -xum*.

Pecto, pexi and *perui, pexum*, to dress or comb. So, *dē-, ex-, rē-pecto, -xi* and *-xui, -xum*.

2. *Mĕto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So, *dē-, ē-, præ-mĕto, -ssui, -ssum*.

3. *Pĕto, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum*, to seek, to pursue. So, *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, rē-, sup-pĕto, -īvi, -ītum*.

Mitto, misi, missum, to send. So, *ā-, ad-, com-, circum-,*

dē-, dī-, ē-, inter-, intrō-, ō-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, sūper-, trans-mitto, -misi, -missum.

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So, *ā-, ad-, ānimad-, antē-, circum-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, rē-, sub-, trans-vertō, -ti, -sum.*

Sterto, stertui, —, to snore. So, *de-sterto, -ui, —.*

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *sistī, stātum*; but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti, stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *sistī* and *sistum*; as, *assistō, astīti, astitum*, to stand by. So, *ab-, circum-, con-, dē-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated :

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum, to live.* So, *ad-, con-, per-, prō-, rē-, sūper-vivo, -xi, -ctum.*

Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, to loose. So, *absolvo, to acquit; dis-, ex-, per-, rē-solvo, -solvi, -sōlūtum.*

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, to roll. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo, -volvi, -vōlūtum.*

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*,) has *texui, textum*. So, *at-, circum-, con-, dē-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, prō-, rē-, sub-texo, -texui, -xtum.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum, to fortify. So,

<i>Balbūtio, to stammer,</i>	<i>Garrio, to prate.</i>	<i>Mollio, to soften.</i>
<i>to lisp, to stutter.</i>	<i>Glūtio, to swallow.</i>	<i>Mūgio, to bellow.</i>
<i>Bullio, to boil or bubble.</i>	<i>Grunnio, to grunt.</i>	<i>Mūtio, to mutter.</i>
<i>Condio, to season.</i>	<i>Hinnio, to neigh.</i>	<i>Nutrio, to nourish.</i>
<i>Crōcio, to croak.</i>	<i>Impēdio, to entangle, to hinder.</i>	<i>Obēdio, to obey.</i>
<i>Custōdio, to keep.</i>	<i>Insānio, to be mad.</i>	<i>Pāvio, to beat.</i>
<i>Dormio, to sleep.</i>	<i>Irrētio, to ensnare.</i>	<i>Pīpio, to peep like a chick.</i>
<i>Effūtio, to babble or blab out.</i>	<i>Lascīvio, to be wanton.</i>	<i>Pōlio, to polish.</i>
<i>Erūdīo, to instruct.</i>	<i>Lēnio, to ease or mitigate.</i>	<i>Prūrīo, to itch, to tickle.</i>
<i>Expēdio, to disentangle, to free.</i>	<i>Līgūrīo, to eat deliciously, to slabber up.</i>	<i>Pūnio, to punish.</i>
<i>Fastīdio, to disdain.</i>	<i>Lippio, to be dim-sighted or blear-eyed.</i>	<i>Rēdlmīo, to bind.</i>
<i>Gannio, to yelp or whine.</i>		<i>Rūgio, to roar like a lion.</i>
		<i>Sāvīo, to rage.</i>

Sēgio, præsēgio, to	Servio, to serve.	Tianio, to tiar.
<i>guess, to foresee.</i>	Sitio, to thirst.	Tussio, to cough.
Sarrio, to weed, to rake.	Sōpio, to lull asleep.	Vāgio, to cry or squeal
Scio, to know.	Stābilio, to establish.	<i>as a child.</i>
Nescio, not to know.	Sūperbio, to be proud.	Vestio, to clothe.
Scātūrio, to gush out.	Suffio, to perfume.	

Exc. 1. Singultio, singultivi, singultum, to sob.

Sēpēlio, sēpēlivi, sēpultum, to bury.

Vēnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So, *ad-, antē-, circum-, con-, contrā-, dē-, ē-, in-, inter-, intrō-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, rē-, sub-, sūper-vēnio, -vēni, -ventum.*

Vēneo, vēnii, —, to be sold.

Sālio, sālui and sālii, saltum, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīlui*, sometimes *sīlii* or *sīlivi*, and *sultum*; as, *translilio, translui, transīlii and transīlivi, transultum, to leap over.* So, *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, rē-, sub-, sūper-sīlio, -sīlui, -sīlii and -sīlivi, -sultum.*

Exc. 2. Amīcio has amīcui, amictum, seldom amixi, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So, *circum-, dē-, ē-, rē-vincio, -vinxi, -vinctum.*

Sancio, sanxi, sanotum, and sancivi, sancitum, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. Cambio, campsi, campsum, to change money.

Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge or enclose. So, *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio, -psi, -ptum.*

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely hausum, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So, *de-, ex-haurio, -si, -stum.*

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So, *as-, con-, dis-, præ-, sub-sentio, -si, -sum.*

Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, to mend or repair. So, *ex-, rē-sarcio, -sarsi, -sartum.*

Farcio, farsī, fartum, to cram. So, *con-fercio; ef-fercio, or ef-farcio; in-fercio, or in-farcio; rē-fercio, -si, -rtum.*

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So, *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio, -si, -ltum.*

Exc. 5. The compounds of pārio have pēruī, pertum; as, apērio, apēruī, apertum, to open. So, *ōpērio, to shut, to cover.* But *compērio* has *compēri, compertum, to know a thing for certain.* *Rēpērio, rēpēri, rēpertum, to find.*

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine: *cæcütio*, *cæcütivi*, to be dim-sighted; *gestio*, *gestivi*, to show one's joy by the gesture of his body; *glöcio*, *glöcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen; *dēmentio*, *dēmentivi*, to be mad; *īneptio*, *īneptivi*, to play the fool; *prösilio*, *prösilui*, to leap forth; *fēröcio*, *fēröcivi*, to be fierce.

Fërio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So, *rëfërio*, to strike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A *deponent* verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *löquor*, I speak; *mörior*, I die.

A *common* verb is that which, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *crīmīnor*, I accuse; or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *lætor*, *lætätus*, *lætāri*, to rejoice; *vëreor*, *vërītus*, *vërëri*, to fear; *fungor*, *functus*, *fungi*, to discharge an office; *pötior*, *pötītus*, *pötüri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lætor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor*:

Indicative Mood.

Pres. *Lætor*, I rejoice; *lætāris*, vel *-äre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Lætābar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lætābāris*, &c.

Perf. *Lætätus sum*, vel *fui*,* I have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Lætätus eram*, vel *fuëram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætābor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lætābëris*, or *-übëre*, &c.

Lætätürus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive.

Pres. *Læter*, I may rejoice; *lætëris*, or *-ëre*, &c.

Imp. *Lætärer*, I might rejoice; *lætärëris*, or *-rëre*, &c.

Perf. *Lætätus sim*, vel *fuërim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Lætätus essem*, vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætätus fuëro*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

* *Fui*, *fuëram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs, and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Imperative.

Pres. *Latāre, vel -ātor, rejoice thou; latātor, let him rejoice, &c.*

Infinitive.

Pres. *Latāri, to rejoice.*

Perf. *Latātus esse, vel fuisse, to have rejoiced.*

Fut. { *Latātūrus esse, to be about to rejoice.*
Latātūrus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pres. *Latans, rejoicing.*

Perf. *Latātus, having rejoiced.*

Fut. { *Latātūrus, about to rejoice.*
Latandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Ābōmīnor, to abhor.	Commentor, to meditate	Inflicior, to deny.
Ādūlor, to flatter.	on, or write what one	Insector, to pursue, to
Āmūlor, to vie with,	is to say.	inveigh against.
to envy.	Conciōnor, to harangue.	Insīdior, to lie in wait.
Altercor, to dispute, to	Conflicior, to struggle.	Interprētor, to explain.
make a repartee.	Cōnor, to endeavour.	Jācūlor, to dart.
Aprīcor, to bask in the	Conspīcor, to spy, to	Jōcor, to jest.
sun.	see.	Lāmentor, to bewail.
Arbitror, to think.	Contemplor, to view.	Lucror, to gain.
Aspēnor, to despise.	Convīvor, to feast.	Luctor, to wrestle.
Āversor, to dislike.	Cornīcor, to chatter like	Māchīnor, to contrive.
Auctiōnor, to sell by	a crow.	Mēdicor, to cure.
auction.	Crīmīnor, to blame.	Mēdītor, to muse or
Aucūpor, & -o, to hunt	Cunctor, to delay.	ponder.
after.	Dētestor, to abhor.	Mercor, to purchase.
Augūror, & -o, to fore-	Dōmīnor, to rule.	Mētor, to measure.
bode, or presage by	Ēpūlor, to feast.	Minor, to threaten.
augury.	Exsecror, to curse.	Mīror, to wonder.
Auspīcor, to take an	Fāmūlor, to serve.	Misēror, to pity.
omen, to begin.	Fērior, to keep holiday.	Mōdēror, to rule.
Auxīlior, to assist.	Frustror, to disappoint.	Mōdūlor, to play a tune.
Bacchor, to rage, to re-	Fūror, to steal.	Mōrigēror, to humour.
vel, to riot.	Glōrior, to boast.	Mōror, to delay.
Cālumnior, to accuse	Grātūlor, to rejoice, to	Mūnēror, to present.
falsely.	wish one joy.	Mūtuor, to borrow.
Cāvīllor, to scoff.	Grāvor, to grudge.	Nūgor, to trifle.
Caupōnor, to huckster,	Hārīdōlor, to conjecture.	Obtestor, to beseech.
to retail.	Helluor, to guttle or gor-	Ōdōror, to smell.
Causor, to plead in ex-	mandize, to waste.	Ōpēror, to work.
cuse, to blame.	Hortor, to encourage.	Ōpīnor, to think.
Circūlor, to meet in	Hallūcīnor, to speak at	Ōpītūlor, to help.
companies, to stroll,	random, to err.	Oscūlor, to kiss.
to talk.	Īmāgīnor, to conceive.	Ōtiōr, to be at leisure.
Cōmessor, to revel.	Īmītor, to imitate.	Pālōr, to stroll or strag-
Cōmītor, to accompany.	Indīgnor, to disdain.	gle.

Palpor, & -o, to stroke or soothe.	Prēcōr, to pray.	Suāvior, to kiss.
Patrōclnor, to patronise.	Dēprēcōr, to entreat, to pray against.	Suffrāgor, to vote for one, to favour.
Percontor, to inquire.	Prēcōr, to ask, to woo.	Suspcōr, to suspect.
Pēgrīnor, to go abroad.	Rēcōr, to remember.	Tergiversor, to boggle, to put off.
Pēriclitor, to be in danger.	Refrāgor, to be against.	Testor, to witness.
Pignērōr, to pledge.	Rimor, to search.	Tūtor, to defend.
Piscor, to fish.	Rixor, to scold or brawl.	Vādōr, to bail, to force to give bail.
Pōpūlor, & -o, to lay waste.	Rusticor, to dwell in the country.	Vāgor, to wander.
Prādor, to plunder.	Scrūtōr, to search.	Vātīcīnor, to prophesy.
Prēlior, to fight.	Sōlor, to comfort.	Vēlitor, to skirmish.
Prēstolor, to wait for.	Spātior, to walk abroad.	Vēnērōr, to worship.
Prāvāricor, to go crooked, to shuffle or prevaricate.	Spēcūlor, to view, to spy.	Vēnor, to hunt.
	Stipūlor, to stipulate or agree.	Vēnor, to hunt.
	Stōmāchor, to be angry.	Vōōfērōr, to banol.

In the Second Conjugation.

Mēreor, mēritus, to deserve.	Polliceor, pollicitus, to promise.
Tueor, tuitus or tūtus, to defend.	Liceor, licitus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation.

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.
Rēvertor, rēversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation.

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.	Partior, to divide.
Mentior, to lie.	Sortior, to draw or cast lots.
Mōlior, to attempt something difficult.	Largior, to give liberally.
Part. perf. blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.	

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Reor, rātus, to think.

Misēreor, misertus, or not contracted, misērītus, to pity.
Fāteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of *fāteor* have *fessus*; as, *prōfīteor, prōfessus, to profess.* So, *confāteor, confessus, to confess, to own or acknowledge.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lābor, lapsus, to slide or glide. So, *al-, col-, dē-, di-, ē-, il-, inter-, per-, prāter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, subter-, sūper-trans-lābor.*

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So, *ab-, de-ūtor, -usus.*

Lōquor, lōquūtus, or lōcūtus, to speak. So, *al-, col-, circum-, ē-, inter-, ob-, præ-, prō-lōquor.*

Sēquor, sēquūtus, or sēcūtus, to follow. So, *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-sēquor.*

Quēror, questus, to complain. So, *con-, inter-, præ-quēror: conquestus, conquēri, &c.*

Nitor, nisus, or nixus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So, *ad- or an-, con-, ē-, in-, ob-, rē-, sub-nitor*; but the compounds have oftener *nixus*.

Pāciscor, pactus, to bargain. So, *dē-pēciscor, v. dēpāciscor.*

Grādior, gressus, to go. So, *ag-, antē-, circum-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, in-, intrō-, præ-, præter-, prō-, re-, retrō-, sug-, sūper-, trans-grēdior, -gressus, -grēdi, &c.*

Prōficiscor, prōfectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Pātior, passus, to suffer. So, *per-pētior, -pessus, -pēti.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So, *ādīpiscor, ādeptus*; and *indīpiscor, indeptus.*

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus, or fructus, to enjoy. So, *per-fruor.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mōrior, mortuus, mōri or mōriri, to die. So, *com-, dē-, ē-, im-, inter-, præ-mōrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So, *ad-, circum-, dē-, ē-, in-, inter-, rē-, sub-nascor.*

Orior, ortus, ōriri, to rise. So, *āb-, ād-, co-, ex-, ōb-, sūb-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ītūrus*; thus, *mōrītūrus, nascītūrus, ōrītūrus,*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So, *ad-, com-, dī-, ē-, præ-, rē-mētior.*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So, *ex-, rēd-ordior.*

Expērior, expertus, to try, to experience.

Oppērior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, to feed.

Mēdeor, mēdēri, to heal.

Liquor, liqui, to melt or to be dissolved.

Rēmīniscor, rēmīnisci, to remember.

Irascor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog. **Divertor, divertī, to turn aside, to**
Prævertor, præverti, to get before, take lodging.
to outrun. **Dēfētiscor, dēfētisci, to be weary**
Diffiteor, diffitēri, to deny. **or faint.**

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, queo, vōlo, nōlo, mālō, fēro, and fīo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six, *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated, (p. 88.) After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, dē-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*; and *insum*, which wants the preterite: thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse, &c.*

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as, Ind. *Pr. Prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est; prō-sūmus, &c.*

Im. Prōd-eram, prōd-eras, prōd-erat; prōd-ērāmus, &c.

Sub. Im. Prōd-essem, prōd-esses, prōd-esset; prōd-essēmus, &c.

Imperat. Prōd-es, or -esto; prōd-este, or -estōte.

Infinit. Pres. Prōd-esse.

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *prō-sim, -sis, -sit, -simus, &c. Prōfui, -fuēram, &c.*

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Possum, pōtui, posse, to be able.

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Possum, pōtes, pōtest; possūmus, pōtestis, possunt.

Im. Pōt-eram, -ēras, -ērat; -ērāmus, -ērātis, -ērant.

Per. Pōt-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uīmus, -uistis, { -uērunt,

v. -uēre.

Plu. Pōt-uēram, -uēras, -uērat; -uērāmus, -uērātis, -uērant.

Fut. Pōt-ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -ērīmus, -ērītis, -ērunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sītis, -sint.

Im. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -sētis, -sent.

Per. Pōt-uērim, -uēris, -uērit; -uērīmus, -uērītis, -uērint.

Plu. Pōt-uissēm, -uissēs, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissētis, -uissent.

Fut. Pōt-uēro, -uēris, -uērit; -uērīmus, -uērītis, -uērint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Posse. Perf. Pōtuisse. The rest wanting.

EO, Ivi, Itum, ire, to go.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Ibam,	ibas,	ihat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
<i>Per.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	{ ivērunt, v. ivēre.
<i>Plu.</i> Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat;	ivērāmus,	ivērātis,	ivērant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
<i>Per.</i> Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit;	ivērimus,	ivēritis,	ivērint.
<i>Plu.</i> Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Ivēro,	ivēris,	ivērit;	ivērimus,	ivēritis,	ivērint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.*

<i>Pres.</i> { I,	ito;	{ ite,	eunto.	<i>Pres.</i> Ire.
{ Ito,	{ itōte,			<i>Perf.</i> Ivisse.
				<i>Fut.</i> { Esse Itūrus, -a, -um.
				{ Fuisse Itūrus.

Participles.

<i>Pr.</i> Iens,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Fut.</i> Itūrus,	-a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum,
Eundi,
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *co-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *për-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo*: only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *ādeo*, *ādii*, seldom *ādivi*, *ādītum*, *ādīre*, to go to: perf. *ādii*, *ādīisti* or *ādīsti*, &c. *ādīēram*, *ādīērim*, &c. So likewise, *veneo*, *vēnii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO*, *-īvi*, *-itum*, *-ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *ivit*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So, *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are chiefly used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come, &c. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericūla adsumitur*, are undergone, Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into, Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*, Cæs. *Inimicitiae subeantur*, Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated in the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO, vōlui, velle, to will, or to be willing.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Vōlo,	vis,	vult;	vōlūmus,	vultis,	vōlunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Vōl-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Per.</i>	Vōl-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	{ -uērunt, v. -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vōl-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uērāmus,	-uērātis,	-uērant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vōl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Vēlim,	vēlis,	vēlit;	vēlīmus,	vēlītis,	vēlint.
<i>Im.</i>	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i>	Vōl-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uērimus,	-uēritis,	-uērint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vōl-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vōl-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uērimus,	-uēritis,	-uērint.

Infinitive.

Participle.

Pres. Velle. *Perf.* Vōluisse. *Pres.* Vōlens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nōlui, nolle, to be unwilling.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nōlūmus,	non-vultis,	nōlunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Nōl-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Per.</i>	Nōl-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uīstis,	{ -uērunt, v. -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nōl-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uērāmus,	-uērātis,	-uērant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nōlam,	nōles,	nōlet;	nōlēmus,	nōlētis,	nōlent.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nōlim,	nōlis,	nōlit;	nōlīmus,	nōlītis,	nōlint.
<i>Im.</i>	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
<i>Per.</i>	Nōl-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uērimus,	-uēritis,	-uērint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nōl-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nōl-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uērimus,	-uēritis,	-uērint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participles.

	2. Sing.	2. Plur.		
<i>Pr.</i>	{ Nōli, vel	{ nōlite, vel	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pr.</i> Nōlens.
	{ Nōlito;	{ nōlītōte.	<i>Per.</i> Nōluisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>

MALO, mālui, malle, *to be more willing.*

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Mālo, māvis, māvult; mālūmus, māvultis, mālunt.
Im. Māl-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.
Per. Māl-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uīmus, -uīstis, { -uērunt,
v. -uēre.
Plu. Māl-uēram, -uēras, -uērat; -uērāmus, -uērātis, -uērant.
Fut. Māl-am, -es, -et; &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Mālim, mālīs, mālīt; mālīmus, mālītis, mālīnt.
Im. Mālem, māles, mālet; mallēmus, mallētis, mallent.
Per. Māl-uērim, -uēris, -uērit; -uērimus, -uēritis, -uērint.
Plu. Māl-uīsem, -uīses, -uīset; -uīssēmus, -uīssētis, -uīssent.
Fut. Māl-uēro, -uēris, -uērit; -uērimus, -uēritis, -uērint.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Māluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *to carry, to bring, or to suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Fēro, fers, fert; fērīmus, fertis, fērunt.
Im. Fēr-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.
Per. Tūli, tūlisti, tūlit; tūlīmus, tūlistis, { tūlērunt,
v. -ēre.
Plu. Tūl-ēram, -ēras, -ērat; -ērāmus, -ērātis, -ērant.
Fut. Fēram, fēres, fēret; fērēmus, fērētis, fērent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Fēram, fēras, fērat; fērāmus, fērātis, fērant.
Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent.
Per. Tūl-ērim, -ēris, -ērit; -ērīmus, -ērītis, -ērīnt.
Plu. Tūl-issem, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.
Fut. Tūl-ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -ērīmus, -ērītis, -ērīnt.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fer, fert; { ferte, fērunto. *Pr.* Ferre.
 { Ferto, fertō; { fertōte, *Per.* Tūlissee.
Fut. { Esse lātūrus, -a, -um.
 { Puisse lātūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

Pres. Fērens.
Fut. Lātūrus, -a, -um.

Fērendum,
 Fērendi,
 Fērendo, &c.

1. Lātum.
 2. Lātu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fëror, lätus, ferri, to be brought.

Indicative Mood.

Pr.	Fëror,	{ ferris, vel ferre,	fertur; fërimur, fërimini, fërantur.
Imp.	Fër-ëbar,	{ -ëbāris, vel -ëbāre,	-ëbātur; -ëbāmur, -ëbāmini, -ëbantur.
Perf.	Lätus sum, &c.		lätus fui, &c.
Plu.	Lätus eram, &c.		lätus fuëram, &c.
Fut.	Fërar,	{ fëreris, vel fërere,	fëretur; fëremur, fëremini, fërentur.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres.	Fërar,	{ fërāris, vel fërare,	fëratür; fëramur, fëramini, fërantur.
Imp.	Ferrer,	{ ferrēris, vel ferrere,	ferrētür; ferrēmur, ferrēmini, ferrentur.
Perf.	Lätus sim, &c.		lätus fuërim, &c.
Plu.	Lätus essem, &c.		lätus fuisset, &c.
Fut.	Lätus fuëro, &c.		

Imperative Mood.

Pres. Ferre, vel fertor, fertor; fërimini, fërantur.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pres. Ferri.

Perf. Lätus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse, vel fuisse lätus, -a, -um. Fut. Fërendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Lätum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fëro*; *as*, *affëro*, *attüli*, *allätum*; *aufëro*, *abstüli*, *ablätum*; *diffëro*, *distüli*, *dilätum*; *confëro*, *contüli*, *collätum*; *infëro*, *intüli*, *illätum*; *offëro*, *obtüli*, *oblätum*; *effëro*, *extüli*, *elätum*. So, *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *dë-*, *prö-*, *antë-*, *præ-*, *rë-fëro*. In some writers we find *adfëro*, *adtüli*, *adlätum*; *conlätum*, *inlätum*; *obfëro*, &c. for *offëro*, &c.

OBS. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted for *völis*, *völit*, *völitis*, the *o* being changed into *u*. In old writers we find *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*. *Nölo* is contracted for *non völo*; *mälo*, for *mägis völo*; *fëro*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *fëris*, *fërit*, &c. *Fëror*, *ferris* v. *ferre*, *fertur*, for *fëreris*, *fëritur*, &c.

OBS. 2. The imperatives of *dëco*, *düco*, and *fäcio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, instead of *dice*, *düce*, *fäce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fiëri, to be made, or to be done, to become.

Imperative Mood.

Pr.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Im.	Fiëbam,	fiëbas,	fiëbat;	fiëbāmus,	fiëbātis,	fiëbant.
Perf.	Factus sum, &c.					factus fui, &c.
Plu.	Factus eram, &c.					factus fuëram, &c.
Fut.	Fiam	fies,	fiet;	fiëmus,	fiëtis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiāmus, fiātis, fiant.

Im. Flērem, flēres, flēret; flērēmus, flērētis, flērent.

Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuērim, &c.

Pls. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisset, &c.

Fut. Factus fuēro, &c.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.*

Pr. { Fi, fīto; { fīte, fīunto.
 { Fīto, fīto; { fītote,

Pr. Flēri.

Per. Esse v. fuisse factus, -a, -um.

Fut. Factum iri.

*Participles.**Supine.*

Perf. Factus, -a, -um.

Factu.

Fut. Fāciendus, -a, -um.

The compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fīo* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *cālēfācio*, to warm, *cālēfīo*, *cālēfac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fīce* in the imperative; as, *confīcio*, *confīce*; *confīcior*, *confectus*, *confīci*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confīeri*; *dēfīit*, it is wanting; *infīit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called **NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs**, which, like *fīo*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *sōlītus*, *sōlēre*, to use; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audēre*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gāvīsus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fīdo*, *fīsus*, *fīdēre*, to trust: so, *confīdo*, to trust; and *diffīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdī*, and *diffīdī*, in the perfect. Some add *mareo*, *masus*, *marēre*, to be sad; but *masus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrātus sum* and *cenātus sum*, for *jūrāvi* and *cenāvi*; but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpūlo*, -āvi, -ātum, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cēpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *ōdēram*, *ōdērim*, *ōdissem*, *ōdēro*, *ōdisse*. Participles, *ōsus*, *ōsūrus*: *exōsus*, *pērōsus*.

Cēpi, I begin, or have begun, *cēpēram*, -ērim, -issem, -ēro, -isse. Supine, *cēptu*. Participles, *cēptus*, *cēptūrus*,

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *mēmīnēram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse* : Imperative, 2d pers. *mēmēnto*, *mēmēntōte*.

Instead of *ōdī*, we sometimes say *ōsus sum* ; and always *exōsus*, *pēdōsus sum*, and not *exōdī*, *pērōdī*. We say, *opus cepit fiēri*, or *captum est*, the work began to be done.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known* ; though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Fūrēre, to be mad, *dāri*, to be given, and *fāri*, to speak, are not used in the first person singular of the present of the indicative and subjunctive ; thus we say, *dāris*, *dātur* ; *dēris*, *dētur*, &c. ; but never *dor* nor *der*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur : *aio*, I say ; *inquam*, I say ; *fōrem*, I should be ; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare ; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it ; *āve* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow ; *cēdo*, tell thou, or give me ; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	aīs,	ait ;	_____	_____	aīunt.
Im.	Aiēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	_____	aīsti,	_____	_____	_____	_____
Sub. Pr.	_____	aīas,	aīat ;	_____	aīātis,	aīant.
Imperat.	Ai.			Particip.	Pres.	Aiens.
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit ;	-quīmus,	-quītis,	-quīunt.
Im.	_____		inquiēbat ;	_____	_____	inquiēbant.
Per.	_____	inquisti,	_____	_____	_____	_____
Fut.	_____	inquies,	inquiet ;	_____	_____	_____
Imperat.	Inque,	inquīto,	_____	Particip.	Pres.	Inquiens.
Sub. Im.	} Fōrem, fōres,	fōret ;	fōrēmus, fōrētis,	fōrent.		
et Plu.						

Inf. Fōre, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. Pr.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit ;	_____	_____	_____
Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit ;	_____	_____	faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit ;	_____	faxītis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fēcērim* and *fēcēro*.

Imperat. 2. pers. s. *Ave*, vel *āveto* ; plur. *āvete*, vel *āvētōte*. Inf. *āvete*.
 _____ *Salve*, vel *salvēto* ; _____ *salvēte*, v. *salvētōte*. — *salvēre*.

Indic. Fut. _____ *Salvēbis*.

Imperat. second pers. sing. *Cēdo*, plur. *cēdite*.

Indic. Pres. first pers. sing. *Quæso*, plur. *quæsumus*.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found but among the poets ; as, *infīt*, he begins ; *dēfīt*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si* ; as, *sis*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt ; *sūltis*, for *si vultis* ; *sōdes*, for *si audes*, equivalent to *quæso*, I pray ; *capis*, for *cape si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A Verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person ; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights ; *dēcet*, it becomes ; *contingit*, it happens ; *evēnit*, it happens.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. Pr.	Dēlectat.	Dēcet.	Contingit.	Evēnit.
Im.	Dēlectābat.	Dēcēbat.	Contingēbat.	Evēniēbat.
Per.	Dēlectāvit.	Dēcuit.	Contigit.	Evēnit.
Plu.	Dēlectāverat.	Dēcuerat.	Contigērat.	Evēnērat.
Fut.	Dēlectābit.	Dēcēbit.	Continget.	Evēniet.
Sub. Pr.	Dēlectet.	Dēceat.	Contingat.	Evēniat.
Im.	Dēlectāret.	Dēcēret.	Contingēret.	Evēnīret.
Per.	Dēlectāverit.	Dēcuerit.	Contigērit.	Evēnērit.
Plu.	Dēlectāvisset.	Dēcuisset.	Contigisset.	Evēnisset.
Fut.	Dēlectāverit.	Dēcuerit.	Contigērit.	Evēnērit.
Inf. Pr.	Dēlectāre.	Dēcēre.	Contingēre.	Evēnīre.
Per.	Dēlectāvisse.	Dēcuisse.	Contigisse.	Evēnīsse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive ; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnitur* ; from *pugno*, I fight ; *fāveo*, I favour ; *curro*, I run ; *vēnio*, I come.

Ind. Pr.	Pugnātur.	Fāvētur.	Curritur.	Vēnitur.
Im.	Pugnābātur.	Fāvēbātur.	Currēbātur.	Vēniēbātur.
Per.	Pugnātum est.	Fautum est.	Cursum est.	Ventum est.
Plu.	Pugnātum erat.	Fautum erat.	Cursum erat.	Ventum erat.
Fut.	Pugnābitur.	Fāvēbitur.	Currētur.	Vēniētur.
Sub. Pr.	Pugnētur.	Fāveātur.	Currātur.	Vēniātur.
Im.	Pugnārētur.	Fāvērētur.	Currērētur.	Vēnīrētur.
Per.	Pugnātum sit.	Fautum sit.	Cursum sit.	Ventum sit.
Plu.	Pugnātum esset.	Fautum esset.	Cursum esset.	Ventum esset.
Fut.	Pugnātum fuērit.	Fautum fuērit.	Cursum fuērit.	Ventum fuērit.
Inf. Pr.	Pugnāri.	Fāvēri.	Curri.	Vēniri.
Per.	Pugnātum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
Fut.	Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive ; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c. ; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few which have

the participles and gerunds; as, *penitens, -dum, -dus, &c.* *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always found in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation: *dēcet*, it becomes; *penitet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irks; *pūdet*, it shames; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleases; *tadet*, it wearies; *liquet*, it appears: of which the following have a double preterite: *misēret*, *misēruit* or *misertum est*; *pīget*, *pīguit* or *pīgītum est*; *pūdet*, *pūdrit* or *pūdītum est*; *licet*, *licuit* or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit* or *libītum est*; *tadet*, *tadruit*, *tasum est*, oftener *pertasum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first conjugation, *jūvat*, *spectat*, *rācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.; *dātur*, *stātur*, *certātur*, *peccātur*, *impērātur*, &c.

In the second, *appāret*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *displicet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.; *fāvētur*, *nōcētur*, &c.

In the third, *accidit*, *incipit*, *dēsinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also Irregular verbs, *est*, *ōbest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *sūpērest*; *fit*, *præterit*, *nēquit*, and *nēquitur*, *sūbit*, *confert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *fulgūrat*, *fulminat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lūcescit*, *advespērascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c.: *pugnātur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fights or fighteth, &c. So, *curritur, venitur a me, a te, a nobis, a militibus, &c.* I run, thou runnest, &c. *Fāvētur tibi a me*, thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can be acquired only by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, I agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, I frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, I deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form, have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lāvo, lāvas, lāvāre*; and *lāvo, lāvis, lāvère*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo, ferves, fervère*, and *fervo, fervis, fervère*, to boil.

Fulgeo, fulges, fulgēre, and fulgo, fulgis, fulgēre, to shine.

Strideo, strides, stridēre, and strido, stridis, stridēre, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, tuēris, tuēri, rarely tuor, tuēris, tui, to defend.

To these add *tergeo*, *terges*, *tergēre*, and *tergo*, *tergis*, *tergēre*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fōdio, fōdis, fōdēre, and fōdīo, fōdis, fōdīre, to dig.

Sallo, saltis, sallēre, and sallio, saltis, sallire, to salt.

Arcesso, -is, arcessēre, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for.

Mōrior, mōrēris, mōri, and mōrior, mōrīris, mōrīri, to die.

So, Ōrior, ōrēris, and ōrior, ōrīris, ōrīri, to rise.

Pōtior, pōtēris, and pōtior, pōtīris, pōtīri, to obtain, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cieo*, *cies*, *ciēre*; and *cio*, *cis*, *cire*, to rouse; whence *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which, though regularly formed, agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo*, *ēdis* or *ēs*, *ēdit* or *est*; — *ēditis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Edērem* or *essem*, *ēdēres* or *esses*, &c.

Imp. *Ede* or *ēs*, *ēdīto* or *esto*; *ēdīte* or *este*, *ēdūtōte* or *estōte*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive, Ind. Pres. *Edītur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggēro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effēro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsēro, -as, to lock.

Vōlo, -as, to fly.

Aggēro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive at.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to strew.

Effēro, -fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to chew.

Obsēro, -is, to beset.

Vōlo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, to strain through a cloth. Cōlo, -is, to till.

Dico, -as, to dedicate. Dico, -is, to say.

Edūco, -as, to train up. Edūco, -is, to lead forth.

Lēgo, -as, to send on an embassy. Lēgo, -is, to read.

Vādo, -as, to wade. Vādo, -is, to go.

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Āceo, ācui, to be sour.	Ācuo, ācui, to sharpen.
Cresco, crēvi, to grow.	Cerno, crēvi, to see.
Frigeo, frixi, to be cold.	Frigo, frixi, to fry.
Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine.	Fulcio, fulsi, to prop.
Lūceo, luxi, to shine.	Lūgeo, luxi, to mourn.
Pāveo, pāvi, to be afraid.	Pasco, pāvi, to feed.
Pendeo, pēpendi, to hang.	Pendo, pēpendi, to weigh.

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, crētum, to grow.	Cerno, crētum, to behold.
Māneo, mansum, to stay.	Mando, mansum, to chew.
Sto, stātum, to stand.	Sisto, stātum, to stop.
Succenseo, -censum, to be angry.	Succendo, -censum, to kindle.
Tēneo, tentum, to hold.	Tendo, tentum, to stretch out.
Verro, versum, to sweep.	Verto, versum, to turn.
Vinco, victum, to overcome.	Vivo, victum, to live.

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This occurs chiefly in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e* ; as, *audiābam*, *sciābam*, for *audiēbam*, *sciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *IBOR* in the passive voice ; as, *dormībo*, *dormībor*, for *dormiā*, *dormiār*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM* ; as, *ēdim*, for *ēdam* ; *duim*, for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO* ; as, *lēvassim*, *lēvasso*, for *lēvāvērīm*, *lēvāvērō* ; *capssim*, *capso*, for *cēpērīm*, *cēpērō* : hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE* ; as, *lēvassère*, for *lēvātūrus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *MINOR* in the plural ; as, *fāmino*, for *fāre* ; and *progrēdīminor*, for *progrēdīminī*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive ; as, *fārier*, for *fāri* ; *dīcier*, for *dīci*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable ; thus, *credo inimicos dictūrum esse*, for *dictūros*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. Att. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominatives* ; as, *cæno*, I sup ; *laudo*, I praise ; *fraudo*, I defraud ; *lāpido*, I throw stones ; *ŏp̄ror*, I work ; *frumentor*, I forage ; *hignor*, I gather fuel, &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they

are called *Imitative*; as, *patrisso, Græcor, bûbûlo, cornicor, &c.* I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater, Græcus, bûba, cornix.*

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives, Inceptives, and Desideratives.*

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *âtu* into *îto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clâmo, I cry, clâ-mîto, I cry frequently; terreo, terrîto; verto, verso; dormio, dormîto.*

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor, I threaten; minîtor, I threaten frequently.*

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nâto*, from *no*; *nosçito*, from *nosco*; *scîtor*, or rather *sciscîtor*, from *scio*; *pâvîto*, from *pâveo*; *sector*, from *sêquor*; *lôquîtor*, from *lôquor*. So, *quarîto, fundîto, âgîto, fluîto, &c.*

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro, curso, cursîto; pello, pulso, pulsîto*, or by contraction *pulto*; *câpio, capto, captîto; câno, canto, cantîto; dēfendo, dēfensio, dēfensîto; dîco, dîcto, dictîto; gēro, gesto, gestîto; jâcio, jacto, jactîto; vēnio, vento, ventîto; mûtio, musso, (for mûtîto,) mussîto, &c.*

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *eo*: as, *câleo, I am hot, câles, câlesco, I grow hot.* So in the other conjugations, *lâbasco*, from *lâbo*; *trêmisco*, from *trêmo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hîsco*, from *hie*, is contracted for *hîasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puêrasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *jâvênesco*, from *jâvênis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *canâtûrio, I desire to sup, from canâtu.* They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and supine; except these three, *êâtûrio, -îvi, -îtum, I desire to eat; partûrio, -îvi, —, I am in travail; nuptûrio, -îvi, —, I desire to be married.*

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *can-tillo, sorbillo, -âre, I sing, I sup a little.* To these some add *albico* and *candîco, -âre, to be or to grow whitish*; also, *nigrîco, fôdîco, and vel-îco.* Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as, *câpesso, fâcesso, pêtesso, or pêtisso, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.*

II. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *fûto, fendo, spêcio, gruo, &c.* The component parts usually

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prōdeo*, for *pro-eo*: or taken away; as, *asporto*, *ōmitto*, *trādo*, *pejēro*, *pergo*, *dēbeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjūro*, *perrēgo*, *dehībeo*, *prohībeo*, &c. So, *dēmo*, *prōmo*, *sūmo*, of *dē*, *prō*, *sūb*, and *ēmo*, which anciently signified to take or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, are changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *ōbēdio*, &c. *Affēro*, *aufēro*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfēro*, *abfēro*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in *English*, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in *Latin* are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *āmans*, loving; *āmātūrus*, about to love: and the perfect and future passive; as, *āmātus*, loved, *āmendus*, to be loved.

The *Latins* have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in *English*, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in *Latin*, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as *sēdēns*, *sessūrus*; *stans*, *stātūrus*.

From some Neuter Verbs are formed participles of the perfect tense; as, *errātus*, *festinātus*, *jūrātus*, *lābōrātus*, *vigilātus*, *cessātus*, *sūdātus*, *triūmphātus*, *regnātus*, *dēcursus*, *dēsītus*, *ēmērītus*, *ēmersus*, *ōbītus*, *plācītus*, *successus*, *occāsus*, &c.; and also of the future in *dus*; as, *jūrandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *dormiendus*, *ērūbescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Vēneo* has no participle: *fīdo*, only *fīdens* and *fīsus*; *sōleo*, *sōlens* and *sōlītus*; *vāpūlo*, *vāpūlans* and *vāpūlātūrus*; *gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gāvisus*, and *gāvisūrus*; *audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausūrus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immāne nefas, ausōque potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Lōquens, speaking; *lōcūtūrus*, about to speak; *lōcūtus*, having spoken; *lōquendus*, to be spoken; *dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignātūrus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from deponent verbs, have both an active and passive sense; as, *abōminātus*, *cōnātus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *testātus*, *vēnērātus*, &c.

There are several participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as, *insciens*, *inspērans*, *indicens*, for *non dicens*, *inōpīans*, and *nēcōpīans*, *immērens*; *illasus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustōditus*, *immētātus*, *impūnitus*, *impārātus*, *incomptus*, *indemnātus*, *indōtātus*, *incorruptus*, *interrītus*, and *imperferrītus*, *intestātus*, *inausus*, *inōpīnātus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *non census*, not registered; *infectus*, for *non factus*; *invisus*, for *non visus*; *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus*, from *incendo*; *infectus*, from *inficio*; *invisus*, from *invideo*; *indictus*, from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*: or becomes a substantive; as, *præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consōnans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *contīnens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. sc. *fluvius*, a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, a writing, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *ālātus*, *barbātus*, *cordātus*, *caudātus*, *cristātus*, *aurītus*, *pellītus*, *turrītus*; *astūtus*, *cornūtus*, *nāsūtus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *aurātus*, *arātus*, *argentātus*, *ferrātus*, *plumbātus*, *gypsātus*, *calceātus*, *clīpeātus*, *gāleātus*, *tūnicātus*, *larvātus*, *pallhātus*, *lymphātus*, *purpurātus*, *prætextātus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *cōllāministrātus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crīnītus*, having long hair; *pērītus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or a great deal of the action; as, *vītābundus*, the same with *valde vītans*, avoiding much, Sall. Jug. 60, and 101; Liv. xxv. 13. So, *errābundus*, *lūdībundus*, *pōpūlābundus*, *mōribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and, in English, have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Cicēronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Cicēronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle passive of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *fāciundum*, *dī, dō*; *dus*: *expēriundum*, *pōtiundum*, *gērundum*, *pētundum*, *dīcundum*, &c., for *fāciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *Coctum non vapulatum dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plant.

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*, and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.			
Ūbi?	Where?	Illūc,	} Thither.
Hīc,	Here.	Isthīc,	
Illūc,	} There.	Intro,	In.
Isthīc,		Fōrās,	Out.
Ībi,	} Within.	Eō,	To that place.
Intūs,		Āliō,	To another place.
Fōrīs,	Without.	Āliquō,	To some place.
Ūbiquē,	Every where.	Eōdem,	To the same place.
Nusquam,	No where.	3. Motion towards a place.	
Ālicūbi,	Some where.	Quorsum?	Whitherward?
Ālibi,	Else where.	Versūs,	Towards.
Ūbius,	Any where.	Horsum,	Hitherward.
Ībidem,	In the same place.	Illorsum,	Thitherward.
2. Motion to a place.		Sursum,	Upward.
Quā?	Whither?	Deorsum,	Downward.
	Hither.	Antrorsum,	Forward.
		Retrorsum,	Backward.

Dextrorsum,	<i>Towards the right.</i>	Utrinquē,	<i>On both sides.</i>
Sinistrorsum,	<i>Towards the left.</i>	Sūpernē,	<i>From above.</i>
4. <i>Motion from a place.</i>		Infernē,	<i>From below.</i>
Undē?	<i>Whence?</i>	Coelltūs,	<i>From heaven.</i>
Hinc,	<i>Hence.</i>	Funditūs,	<i>From the ground.</i>
Illinc,	} <i>Thence.</i>	5. <i>Motion through or by a place.</i>	
Isthinc,		Quā?	<i>Which way?</i>
Indē,		Hāc,	<i>This way.</i>
Indidem,	<i>From the same place.</i>	Illāc,	} <i>That way.</i>
Aliundē,	<i>From elsewhere.</i>	Isthāc,	
Alīcundē,	<i>From some place.</i>	Aliū,	<i>Another way.</i>
Sicundē,	<i>If from any place.</i>	Eā,	<i>That way.</i>

2. Adverbs of *Time* are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.</i>		Nunquam,	<i>Never.</i>
Nunc,	<i>Now.</i>	Intērim,	<i>In the mean time.</i>
Hōdiē,	<i>To-day.</i>	Quōtidiē,	<i>Daily.</i>
		2. <i>Continuance of Time.</i>	
Tunc, }	<i>Then.</i>	Diū,	<i>Long.</i>
Tum, }		Quamdiū?	<i>How long?</i>
Hērī,	<i>Yesterday.</i>	Tamdiū,	<i>So long.</i>
Dūdum, }	<i>Heretofore.</i>	Jamdiū,	} <i>Long ago.</i>
Prīdem, }		Jamdūdum,	
Prīdiē,	<i>The day before.</i>	Jamprīdem,	} <i>By turns.</i>
Nūdiūs tertiūs,	<i>Three days ago.</i>	3. <i>Vicissitude or repetition of Time.</i>	
Nūpēr,	<i>Lately.</i>	Quōtiēs?	<i>How often?</i>
Jamjam, }	<i>Presently.</i>	Sæpē,	<i>Often.</i>
Mox, }	<i>Immediately.</i>	Rārō,	<i>Seldom.</i>
Stātīm,	<i>By and by.</i>	Tōtiēs,	<i>So often.</i>
Prōtinūs,	<i>Instantly.</i>	Alīquōtiēs,	<i>For several times.</i>
Illicō,	<i>Straightway.</i>	Vicissim,	} <i>By turns.</i>
Crās,	<i>To-morrow.</i>	Alternātīm,	
Postrīdiē,	<i>The day after.</i>	Rursūs,	} <i>Again.</i>
Pērendiē,	<i>Two days hence.</i>	Itērum,	
Nondum,	<i>Not yet.</i>	Sūbindē,	} <i>Ever and anon,</i>
Quando?	<i>When?</i>	Īdentīdem,	
Alīquando,	} <i>Sometimes.</i>	Sēmēl,	<i>Once.</i>
Nonnunquam,		Bīs,	<i>Twice.</i>
Interdum,		Tēr,	<i>Thrice.</i>
Sempēr,	<i>Ever, always.</i>	Quātēr,	<i>Four times, &c.</i>

Adverbs of *Order*.

Indē,	<i>Then.</i>	Dēnīquē,	<i>Finally.</i>
Deindē,	<i>After that.</i>	Postrēmo,	<i>Lastly.</i>
Dehinc,	<i>Henceforth.</i>	Prīmō, -um,	<i>First.</i>
Porro,	<i>Moreover.</i>	Sēcundō, -um,	<i>Secondly.</i>
Deincepa,	<i>So forth.</i>	Tertiō, -um,	<i>Thirdly.</i>
Dēnuo,	<i>Of new.</i>	Quartō, -um,	<i>Fourthly, &c.</i>

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called **ABSOLUTE** denote,

1. **QUALITY**, simply; as, *bēnē*, well; *mālē*, ill; *civilitēr*, civilly; *crūdēlitēr*, cruelly; *dēmentēr*, madly; *dulcitēr*, sweetly; *dūrītēr*, rarely; *dūrē*, hardly; *fēlicitēr*, happily; *fortitēr*, bravely; *grāvītēr*, heavily; *jūcundē*, pleasantly; *mollitēr*, softly; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. **CERTAINTY**; as, *prōfectō*, *certē*, *sānē*, *plānē*, *nē*, *ūtiquē*, *itā*, *ētiām*, truly, verily, yes; *quidnī*, why not? *omnīnō*, certainly.

3. **CONTINGENCE**; as, *fortē*, *forēān*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. **NEGATION**; as, *nōn*, *haud*, not; *nēquāquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minimē*, nothing less.

5. **PROHIBITION**; as, *nē*, not.

6. **SWEARING**; as, *herclē*, *pōl*, *ēdēpōl*, *mēcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, by the temple of Pollux, &c.

7. **EXPLAINING**; as, *utpōtē*, *videlicēt*, *scilicēt*, *nīmīrum*, *nempē*, to-wit, namely, that is, that is to say.

8. **SEPARATION**; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sēpārātīm*, separately; *sigillātīm*, one by one; *vīritīm*, man by man; *oppidātīm*, town by town, &c.

9. **JOINING TOGETHER**; as, *simul*, *inā*, *pārītēr*, together; *gēnērālītēr*, generally; *ūniversālītēr*, universally; *plērūmqūē*, for the most part.

10. **INDICATION** or **POINTING** out; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. **INTERROGATION**; as, *cūr*, *quārē*, *quāmōbrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *ān*, whether? *quōmōdō*, *quī*, how? To which add, *ūbi*, *quō*, *quorsum*, *undē*, *quā*, *quando*, *quamdiū*, *quōtiēs*.

Those Adverbs which are called **COMPARATIVE** denote,

1. **EXCESS**; as, *valdē*, *maximē*, *magnōpērē*, *maximōpērē*, *summōpērē*, *admōdum*, *oppidō*, *perquam*, *longē*, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nīmīum*, too much; *prorsus*, *pēnitūs*, *omnīnō*, altogether, wholly; *māgis*, more; *mēliūs*, better; *pejūs*, worse; *fortiūs*, more bravely; and *optimē*, best; *passimē*, worst; *fortissimē*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. **DEFECT**; as, *fermē*, *fērē*, *prōpēmōdum*, *pēnē*, almost; *pārum*, little; *paulō*, *paulūlum*, very little.

3. **PREFERENCE**; as, *pōtiūs*, *sātiūs*, rather; *pōtissimūm*, *præcipuē*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imō*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. **LIKENESS** or **EQUALITY**; as, *itā*, *sic*, *ādēō*, so; *ūt*, *ūtī*, *sicut*, *sicutī*, *vēlūt*, *vēlūtī*, *ceu*, *tāquam*, *quāsi*, as, as if; *quemadmōdum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *itēdem*, in like manner; *juxtā*, alike, equally.

5. **UNLIKENESS** or **INEQUALITY**; as, *aliitēr*, *aliōquē*, otherwise; *aliōquā* or *aliōquān*, else; *nēdum*, much more or much less.

6. **ABATEMENT**; as, *sensim*, *paulātīm*, *pēdētentīm*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *agrē*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. **EXCLUSION**; as, *tantum*, *solum*, *mōdō*, *tantummodō*, *ducatardī*, *dēmum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. From Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *partim*, partly, by parts; *nōmīnātīm*, by name; *gēnērātīm*, by kinds, generally; *spēciātīm*, *vicātīm*, *grēgātīm*; *rādīcītūs*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from adjectives of the first and second declension, usually end in E; as, *libērē*, freely; *plēnē*, fully: some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsō*, *tantūm*, *largitēr*: a few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectā*, *antiquitūs*, *privātīm*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primūm*, v. -ō; *pūrē*, -itēr; *certē*, -ō; *cautē*, -tim; *hūmānē*, -itēr, -itūs; *publicē*, *publicitūs*, &c.—Adverbs from adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpītēr*, *fēlicītēr*, *acritēr*, *pārītēr*; *fācilitē*, *rēpentē*; one in O, *omnīnō*. The neuter of adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *rēcens nātūs*, for *rēcēntēr*; *perfidūm rīdens*, for *perfidē*, Hor.; *multa rēbuctans*, for *multūm* or *valdē*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primō*, sc. *loco*; *optātō advēnis*, sc. *tempōre*; *hūc*, sc. *viā*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *ILLE*, *illīc*, *illūc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illūc*. So from *QUIS*, *ūbi*, *quō*, *quorsum*, *undē*, and *quā*: also of time; thus, *quando*, *quandīū*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cāsīm*, with the edge; *punctīm*, with the point; *strictīm*, closely; from *cado*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *āmantēr*, *prōpērantēr*, *dūbitantēr*; *distinctē*, *ēmendatē*; *mēritō*, *inōpīnatō*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intūs*, *intrō*, from *in*; *clancūlum*, from *clam*; *subtūs*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *dūrē*, *fācilitē*, *ācritēr*: the *comparative* in *ius*; as, *dūriūs*, *fāciliūs*, *ācriūs*: the *superlative* in *ime*; as, *dūrisīmē*, *fācillīmē*, *ācerrīmē*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *bēnē*, *mēliūs*, *optimē*; *mālē*, *pejūs*, *pessimē*; *pārūm*, *minūs*, *minimē*, & -um; *multūm*, *plūs*, *plūrimūm*; *prōpē*, *prōpiūs*, *proximē*; *ōcyūs*, *ōcyssimē*; *priūs*, *primō*, -um; *nūpēr*, *nūperrīmē*; *nōvē*, & *nōvitēr*, *nōvissimē*; *mēritō*, *mēritissimō*, &c. Those adverbs also are compared, whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapē*, *sapiūs*, *sapiissimē*; *pēnitūs*, *pēnitūs*, *pēnitissimē*; *sātīs*, *sātius*; *sēcūs*, *sēcūs*, &c. *Māgis*, *maximē*; and *pōtiūs*, *pōtissimūm*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded of all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridiē*, *magnōpērē*, *maximōpērē*, *summōpērē*, *tantōpērē*, *multimōdis*, *omnimōdis*, *quōmōdō*, *quārē*; of *postēro die*, *magno opēre*, &c. *Illicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, of *ire*, *scire*, *vidēre*, and *licet*; *illicō*, of *in loco*; *comminūs*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *mānus*; *ēminūs*, at a distance, of *e* and *mānus*; *quorsum*, of *quōd versum*; *dēnuo*, *anew*, of *de*

novo ; *quā*, why not, but, of *qui ne* ; *cūr*, of *cui rei* ; *pāddētentim*, step by step, as it were *pedem tendendo* ; *pērendiā*, for *perempto die* ; *nīmīrum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non*, and *mīrum* ; *antēā*, *postēā*, *prætēā*, &c. of *ante* and *ea*, &c. *Ubivīs*, *quōvīs*, *undēlibēt*, *quousquē*, *sicūt*, *sicūtī*, *vēlūt*, *vēlūtī*, *dēsūpēr*, *insūpēr*, *quamobrem*, &c. of *ubi* and *vis*, &c. ; *nūdiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius* ; *identīdem*, of *idem et idem* ; *imprāsentiūrum*, i. e. *in tempore rerum præsentium*, &c.

OBS. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more ; as, *sāpienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiā* ; *hīc*, for *in hoc loco* ; *sempēr*, for *in omni tempore* ; *sēmēl*, for *unā vice* ; *bis*, for *duobus vicibus* ; *Mehercūle*, for *Hercūles me juvet*, &c.

OBS. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other ; as, *ubi*, where or when ; *indē*, from that place, from that time, after that, next ; *hactēnūs*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time or order, &c. *cātēnūs*, *quātēnūs*, &c.

OBS. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future* ; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by ; *ōlim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various ; thus, *esse peregrē*, to be abroad ; *ire peregrē*, to go abroad ; *redire peregrē*, to return from abroad.

OBS. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever* ; as, *ūbiūbi*, or *ūbicunquē*, wheresoever ; *quōquō*, *quōcunquē*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words ; as, *quotquōt*, or *quotcunquē*, how many soever ; *quantusquantūs*, or *quantuscunquē*, how great soever ; *ūtūt*, or *utcunquē*, however, or howsoever, &c.—In English, the adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where*, when joined to certain particles or prepositions, as *to*, *of*, *by*, *with*, *in*, &c. have the signification of pronouns ; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this* ; *thereof*, the same with *of that* ; *whereof*, *of which*, &c. Several adverbs are composed of nouns and the particle *a* ; as, *abroad*, *afloat*, *afoot*, *aground*, *ahead*, *ashore*, *aside*, *asleep*, *athirst*, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative ; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ād,	To.	Infrā,	Beneath.
Āpūd,	At.	Juxtā,	Nigh to.
Antē,	Before.	Ōb,	For.
Adversūs,	} Against, towards.	Proptēr,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Pēr,	By, through.
Contrā,	Against.	Prætēr,	Besides, except.
Cis,	} On this side.	Pēnēs,	In the power of.
Citrā,		Post,	After.
Circā,	} About.	Pōnē,	Behind.
Circum,		Sēcūs,	By, along.
Ergā,	Towards.	Sēcundum,	According to.
Extrā,	Without, not within.	Suprā,	Above.
Intēr,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intrā,	Within.	Ultrā,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

Ā,	}	From, or by.	Ē,	}	Of, out of.
Āb,			Ex,		
Abs,	}	Without.	Prō,	}	For.
Absquē,			Præ,		
Cum,	}	With.	Pālam,	}	With the knowledge of.
Clam,			Sinē,		
Cōram,	}	Before, in the presence of.	Tēnūs,	}	Without, not with.
Dē,					
		Of, concerning.			Up to, as far as.

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative:

In, *in, into*. Sūb, *under*. Sūpēr, *above*. Subtēr, *beneath*.

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed *before* the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as *cum* when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, quā, and quibus*; thus, *mēcum, tēcum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are the adverbs *versūs* and *usquē*; and *ward* in English; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obs. 2. Most prepositions are simple primitives; as, *ad, apud, ante, ob, per, &c.* *a, ab, abs, e, ex, in, &c.* Of these some are derived from the Greek; as, *ab*, from ἀπὸ; *ante*, from ἀντι; *ex*, from ἐκ or ἐξ; *in*, from ἐν; *per*, from παρ; *sub*, from ὑπὸ; *super*, from ὑπέρ. Several prepositions are derivatives or compounds; as, *adversus, -um*, from *adversus, -a, -um*, compounded of *ad* and *versus*; *citra*, from *citer*; *circa, -um*, from *circus*; *extra*, from *extērus*; *infra*, from *infērus*; *intra*, from *intērus*; *juxta*, from *jungo*; *propter*, from *prōpe*, quasi *prōpiter*; *secundum*, from *secundus*; *supra*, from *supērus*; *absque*, from *abs* and *que*.

Obs. 3. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *sūbire*, to undergo; *sustinēre*, (of *sub* and *tēnēre*,) to uphold, to sustain. The number of Latin verbs, with prepositions prefixed to them, which have been adopted into the English language, is so great, that it is needless to mention particular examples. In English, the preposition is usually put after the verb; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Latin prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. De Div. i. 45. *Ex adversum Athēnas*, C. Nep. 2, 3. *In ante diem quartum Kalendārum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. Phil. 3, 8. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octōbris*, i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. xi. 16. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *prōpālam, prōtīnūs, insūpēr, &c.*

Obs. 4. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adeo*, I go to; *inspicio*, I look into or inspect; *prapōno*, I place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *IN* joined with adjectives, generally denotes privation or contrariety; as, *infidus*, unfaithful; *ignāvus*, (*in* and *navus*,) inactive; *indignus*, unworthy, &c.; but when joined with verbs, it increases their signification; as, *indūro*, I harden greatly. In some words *in* has contrary senses; as, *invocātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So, *infrēnātus, immūtātus, insuētus*,

impensus, inhūmātus, intentātus, infractus, &c. 2. **PER** commonly increases the signification; as, *percūrus, percēler, percōmis, percūriōsus, perdifficilis, pērēlēgans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perillustis, perlatus, &c.*; very dear, very swift, &c. 3. **PÆ** sometimes increases; as, *præclārus, prædives, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævālidus; prævileo, præpolleo*; and also **EX**; as, *exclāmo, exaggēro, exaugeo, excālēfācio, extēnuo, exhilāro, exopto*; but **EX** sometimes denotes privation; as, *exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors, exānimis, -mo, &c.* 4. **SUB** often diminishes; as, *subalbīdus, subabsurdus, subāmārus, subdulcis, subgrandis, subgrāvis, subniger, &c.*; a little white, or whitish, &c. **DE** often signifies downward; as, *dēcido, dēcurro, dēgrāvo, despicio, dēlābor*: sometimes increases; as, *dēmo, dēmīror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *dēmens, dēcōlor, dēformis, &c.*

In English a preposition prefixed sometimes gives a new or opposite meaning to the verb; as, *to forbear*, i. e. to cease, to intermit; *to forgive*, to pardon; *to withdraw*, to retire; *to withhold*, to keep back, to restrain; *to withstand*, to stand against, to oppose, to resist.—Several verbs have a quite different meaning, when the same preposition is put after them, from what they have when it is prefixed to them; as, *to come over* from France, *to overcome* an enemy; *to drive* cattle over a brook, i. e. *to make them to pass*; *to overdrive* the flocks and herds, *to drive them too hard*, or *beyond their strength*. In like manner, *to set over*, *to overset*; *to take over*, *to overtake*; *to throw over*, *to overthrow*; *to turn over*, *to overturn*; *to run out*, *to outrun*, i. e. *to surpass* or *leave behind* in running; so, *to sail out*, *to outsail*; *to stand under*, *to understand*, i. e. *to comprehend fully, &c.*

OBS. 5. There are five or six syllables, namely, **AM**, **DI** or **DIS**, **RE**, **SE**, **CON**, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	round about,	} as,	Ambio,	<i>I surround.</i>
Di,	} asunder,		Divello,	<i>I pull asunder.</i>
Dis,			Distrāho,	<i>I draw asunder.</i>
Rě,	again,		Rělēgo,	<i>I read again.</i>
Sē,	aside or apart,		Sēpōno,	<i>I lay aside.</i>
Cōn,	together,		Concreasco,	<i>I grow together.</i>

AM or **AN** is contracted for *ambe* or *ambi*, from *ἀμφί*, *circum*; as, *ambūro, ambēdo, ambigo, anquīro, &c.*—**DIS** or **DI**, from *dis*, *bis*, or rather from *δια*, *per*, commonly denotes separation or distinction; as, *disjūngo, dijūdicō*: sometimes it marks negation or privation; as, *diffīdo*, I distrust.—**DIS** is put before words beginning with *c, f, j, p, s, t*; as, *discumbō, diffēro* (*s* being changed into *f*), *disjīcio, displiceo, dissēco, distīneo*: and **DI**, before other consonants; as, *d' dūco, d' gēro, d' lūo, d' mitto, d' nūmēro, diruo, &c.* We hardly ever find *di* or *dis* before a vowel.—**RE** usually signifies iteration; as, *rēbībo, rēcīto, rēcōrrigo*, I drink again, &c.; or reciprocation; as, *rēdāmo*, (*d* being inserted for the sake of sound,) I love in return for love: or the same with *retro*; as, *respicio*, I look back; *rētrāho*, I draw back; *rēvertor*, I turn back, I return. It sometimes denotes privation; as, *rētēgo*, I uncover; *rēcīngo*, I ungird;

rēsēro, I unlock ; so, *rēvēlo*, *reclūdo*, &c. : sometimes repugnance ; as, *reclāmo*, I cry against ; *rēluctor*, I struggle against ; *rēnītor*, I strive against, or I resist : also other different meanings.—*SE* has sometimes the force of *sine*, without ; as, *sēcūrus*, i. e. *sine curā* ; *segnis*, *sine igne* ; *sēdūlō*, *sine dolo* : or of *seorsim*, apart ; as, *sēcūbo*, *sēdūco*, *sēvōco* : sometimes of *semi* ; as, *sēlibra*, for *sēmīlibra* ; *sēmōdius*, for *sēmīmōdius*.—*CON* before a vowel drops the *n* ; as, *coalesco*, *coēresco*, *cohībeo*, *cōgo*, for *codgo*, *cohæreo* ; or the *n* is turned into *m* ; as, *cōmēdo*. Before consonants it is often changed into the consonant which it precedes ; as, *collido*, *colludo*, *commūto*, *corrādo* : sometimes it assumes *b* ; as, *combūro*, of *con* and *ūro*.

OBS. 6. There are several English particles found only in composition, and therefore by some they have been termed *Inseparable Prepositions*. These are, *be*, *fore*, *mis*, *un* : *BE* signifies about ; as, *bedeck*, *begird*, *bestir* : *FORE*, before ; as, *to foreknow*, *foresee*, *foretell* : *MIS*, wrong or ill ; as, *to misapply*, *miscall*, *miscarry*, *mischance*, *misdo*, *misdeed*, *misgive*, *mislead*, *misplace*, *misrepresent*, *mistake*, &c. *UN*, not ; answering to the Latin *in* ; as, *unable*, *unacquainted*, *unactive*, or *inactive*, *unaffected*, *unaided*, *unbecoming*, *unbelief*, *unhandsome*, *unhurt*, *unhappy*, *unheard*, *unkind*, *unlike*, *unmerited*, *unmindful*, *unmoved*, *unmusical*, *unskilful*, *unsold*, *unsound*, *unsuccessful*, *untaught*, *unwieldy*, *unwise*, &c.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages ; as, *Oh* ! *Ah* !—Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them : thus,

1. JOY ; as, *ēvax*, hey, brave, io !—2. GRIEF ; as, *oh*, *hei*, *heu*, *cheu* ! ah, alas, alack, woes me !—3. WONDER ; as, *pāpæ* ! O strange ! *vah* ! hah ! ahah !—4. PRAISE ; as, *eugē* ! well done !—5. AVERSION ; as, *āpāgē* ! away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush !—6. EXCLAIMING ; as, *Oh*, *prōh* ! O !—7. SURPRISE or FEAR ; as, *āūt* ! ha, aha !—8. IMPRECATION ; as, *væ* ! wo, pox on't !—9. LAUGHTER ; as, *ha*, *ha*, *he* !—10. SILENCING ; as, *eu*, 'st, *pax* ! silence, hush, 'st !—11. CALLING ; as, *eho*, *chōdum*, *io*, *ho* ! so, ho, ho, O !—12. DERISION ; as, *hui* ! away with !—13. ATTENTION ; as, *hem* ! ha !

Some interjections denote several different passions ; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.—Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections ; as, *mālum* ! with a mischief ! *infandum* ! O shame ! fy, fy ! *misērum* ! O wretched ! *nē-fās* ! O the villany !

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together :

Thus, “ *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil*,” is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed ; *I read Vir-*

gil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil. In like manner, "You and I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.—Conjunctions sometimes only connect single words in the same sentence; as, *Two and three make five; A man of wisdom and virtue is a perfect character, &c.*

Conjunctions, according to their different meanings, are divided into the following classes:

1. **COPULATIVE**; as, *et, ac, atque, quæ, and; etiam, quoque, item,* also; *cum, tum, both, and.* Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, nevé,* neither, nor.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE**; as, *aut, vè, vèl, seu, sive,* either, or.

3. **CONCESSIVE**; as, *etsi, etiamet, tametsi, licet, quanquam, or quamquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.

4. **ADVERSATIVE**; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, atque, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumtamen, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.*

5. **CAUSAL**; as, *nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quod, that, because.*

6. **ILLATIVE or RATIONAL**; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco itaque, therefore; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore cum, quum, seeing, since; quandòquidem, forasmuch as.*

7. **FINAL or PERFECTIVE**; as, *ut, uti, that, to the end that.*

8. **CONDITIONAL**; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modò, dummodò, provided, upon condition that; siquidem, if indeed.*

9. **EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE**; as, *ni, nisi, unless, except.*

10. **DIMINUTIVE**; as, *saltem, certè, at least.*

11. **SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE**; as, *an, annè, num, whether; nè, annon, whether, not; necnè, or not.*

12. **EXPLETIVE**; as, *autem, verò, now, truly; quidem, èquidem, indeed.*

13. **ORDINATIVE**; as, *deindè, thereafter; denique, finally; iurèpèr, moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.*

14. **DECLARATIVE**; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempè, nimirum, &c. to-wit, namely, truly.*

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat,* I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandòquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *autem, verò, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpòte, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*; which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse:

Indoctusque pila, discive, trochive, quiescit, Hor. de Art. Poet. 380.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbutos fatus montanèque fraga legebat, Ov. Met. i. 104

SYNTAX OR CONSTRUCTION.

SENTENCES.

A **SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another ; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement* ; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mood ; and then one word is said to *govern*, and the other *to be governed*.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.
10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active, or a preposition.

All sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject ; as,

The boy reads his lesson. Here "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of ; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject.—*The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we still have the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it ; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences :—1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. Substantives signifying the samething, agree in case ; as,

Cicēro Orātor, Cicero the Orator. *Cicerōnis Oratōris*, of Cicero the Orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens. *Urbis Athēnārum*, of the city Athens.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case ; as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> ,	A good man.	<i>Boni viri</i> ,	Good men.
<i>Famīna casta</i> ,	A chaste woman.	<i>Famīnæ castæ</i> ,	Chaste women.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> ,	A sweet apple.	<i>Dulcia poma</i> ,	Sweet apples.

And so through all the cases, and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles; as, *meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled; Plur. *mei libri*, *agri colendi*; *meorum librorum*, &c.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. Ecl. 3, 80. *Scire tuum*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. 1, 27. *Velle suum cuique est*, for *sua voluntas*, every one has a will of his own, Id. 5, 53. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter. Ad. v. 4, 26.—In English, also, the substantive is often understood; as, *the rich*, *the poor*, *the high*, *the low*, &c. that is, *rich men* or *women*, &c. Blessed are *the pure* in heart: Blessed are *the merciful*: *The good* are happy.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *certus amicus*, a sure friend; *bona ferina*, good venison; *summum bonum*, the chief good; *homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba* vocant, the inhabitants call, Ov. Fast. iii. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cætēra*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *media nox*, the middle of the night; *summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man*, *a good horse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the great*. And the article goes before the adjective; except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*; *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect*! or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective be a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res præstantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *well-water*, *river-water*, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, *a wine-glass*, *a silver-spoon*, *a gold-cup*, &c.; and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty foot*; *six*

score ; ten thousand fathom ; a hundred head ; a hundred weight. We say, by this means, by that means ; for, by these means, by those means ; or, by this mean, by that mean, as it was used anciently. So, this forty years, for these ; these and those kind of things, for this and that. Each, every, either, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea ; as, every twelve years.—Enough is always put after a noun in the singular to express quantity ; as, bread enough, gold enough. Enow is put after a noun in the plural, and denotes number ; as, books enow. Sometimes it is put before the noun.

2. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person ; as,

Ego lego, I read.

Nos legimus, We read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write. *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write.

Præceptor docet, The master teaches. *Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the moods, tenses, and numbers.

OBS. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person ; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person ; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin, is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction ; as, *Tu es patrōnus, tu pater*, Ter. Ad. iii. 4, 10. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

OBS. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative ; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base. *Vacare culpâ magnum est solatium*, Cic. Fam. vii. 3. *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*, the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. vii. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly ; as, *Facere quæ libet* (sc. *alicui facere*), *id est esse regem*, to do what one pleases, that is to be a king, Sall. Jug. 31.

OBS. 3. The infinitive mood often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative ; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant*, or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*, Ter. Eun. iii. 1, 20.

OBS. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number ; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*, the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole ; but when joined with a verb plural, it

signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi*, *Pars obnixæ trudent*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virginæ*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *it is I*; *it is he*; *it was they*; *it appears*; in Latin, *ego sum*, *ille est*, &c. *It* is sometimes understood; as, *may be*, for *it may be*; *as follows*, for *as it follows*; *as is thought*, for *as it is thought*, &c.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So, *there's two or three of us*, for *there are*; *there was more sophists*, for *there were*; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mood has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valère,

I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, they say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugère*, that a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse* must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum cæsum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Phil. 14, 1. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus sum suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter. Andr. ii. 3, 27.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valère*, i. e. *quod vales*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*: *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *Non dubito eum fecisse*, or much oftener, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, for *filium amare*, Plant. Asin. i. 1, 87. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo*

dubitāt, ut populus Rōmānus omnes virtute superārit, for *populum Rōmānum superāsse*, Nep. 23, 1. *Ex animi sententiā juro, ut ego rempublicam non desēram*, for *me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

The same case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

Ego sūm discipūlus,

Tu vocāris Johannes,

Illā incēdit regīna,

Scio illum habēri sapientem,

Scio vos esse discipūlos,

I am a scholar.

You are named John.

She walks as a queen.

I know that he is esteemed wise.

I know that you are scholars.

So, *Redeo irātus*; *Jaceo supplex*; *Evādent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens*; *Nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim vidēri timīdus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentī*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claudian. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *Cupio non putari mendācem*; *Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, he wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*, Ter. *Id est dominum, non imperatōrem esse*, Sall. Jug. 85.

OBS. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

OBS. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *sum, fio, forem*, and *existo*; *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c.; as, *dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncūpor*; to which add *videor, existīmor, creor, constituor, salūtor, designor*, &c.

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus*, or *doctum*, sc. *me dici*; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax*; *vult esse medius*.

OBS. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, her dowry is ten talents, Ter. Andr. v. 4, 47. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ov. Met. i. 292. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium irā amoris integratio est*, the quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. Andr. iii. 3, 23. So when a

adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse ; as, *Oppidum Pæstum, Græcis Posidonia appellatum*, Plin. iii. 10. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly of the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative ; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy ; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood ; *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied ; as, *Licet esse beatum*, one may be happy, scil. *alicui* or *homini*. So, *Licet esse beatis*, sc. *illis*, Hor. Sat. i. 1, 19.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression which are not to be imitated in prose ; as, *Retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronæpos*, for *se esse pronepôtém*, Ov. Met. xiii. 141. *Cum patris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Hor. Ep. i. 16, 30. So, *Acceptum reféro versibus esse nocens*, Ov. Tr. ii. 1, 10. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*, Lucan. ix. 1037.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it ; as, *It was I* ; unless it be of the infinitive mood ; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use, however, this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him*, for *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*) ; as,

Amor Dei, The love of God. *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.
Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective ; as, *Domus patris* or *paterna*, a father's house ; *filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son ; and among the poets, *labor Hercules*, for *Herculis* ; *ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him : so, *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or a passive sense ; thus, *timor Dei* always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So, *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *Hectoris Andromæche*, scil. *uxor* ; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find often the dative used after a verb for the genitive,

particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, his body is extended, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax cum aliquo*; *amor in*, vel *erga aliquem*; *gaudium de re*; *cura de aliquo*; *mentio illius*, vel *de illo*; *quies ab armis*; *fumus ex incendiis*; *prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sall. Jug. 44, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 126. *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law, Cic. de Or. i. 60.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *liber ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. the book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*: the book of her, or her book, sc. *feminae*; *libri eorum*, v. *earum*, their books; *cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; as, *amor mei*, the love of me, that is, the love wherewith I am loved; *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8, 27 *Labor mei*, my labour, Plaut. Pseud. i. 1, 3.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Tuum hominis simplicis pectus*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta timentis*, &c., Hor. Sat. i. 4, 22. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. Att. xi. 15. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque maxime suum*, Id. Off. i. 31.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se. Miles defendit suam vitam. Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, for *una secum*, Cæs. B. G. i. 5.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indôlis, or *probâ indôle*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive only is used ; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii*, homo minimi pretii, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war, Sall. Jug. 85. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. Fam. ix. 26, fin. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Bono animo* &c, be of good courage, Ter. Eun. i. 2, 4. *Mirum sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. Att. ii. 7. *Capite aperto est*, his head is bare ; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et superciliis semper est rasis*, Id. Q. Rosc. 7. *Mulier magno natu*, Liv. xxvi. 49. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens eximie spe, summe virtutis*, Cic. Fam. i. 7. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say either, *Vir prastantis ingenii*, or *prastanti ingenio* ; or, *Vir prastans ingenio*, and sometimes *prastans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche* ; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Hor. Sat. i. 1, 5. So, *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg. Æn. i. 589.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est ?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used with the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquentia, minus sapientia, tantum fideli, id negotii ; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres*, all the senators, Liv. ii. 35. *Id loci ; ad hoc ætatis*, Sall. Jug. 85.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity ; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid*, &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive ; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity ; but seldom govern, in this manner, adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* ; as, *nequid hostile timèrent*, not *hostilis* ; we find, however, *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural ; as, *angusta viarum, opaca locorum, Telluris operta, loca* being understood. So, *amara curarum ; acuta belli*, sc. *negotia*, Hor. Od. iv. 4, 76. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood ; as, *amicus Cæsaris, patria Ulyssis*, &c.

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative ; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money. *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although rarely, govern the genitive ; as, *Lectionis opus est*, Quintil. xii. 3, 8. *Opæ usus est*, Liv. xxvi. 9.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective ; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, we need a general, Cic. Fam. ii. 6. *Dices marmos mihi opus esse*, Id. Att. vi. 9. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id. *Quæ amicis suis opus fuerant,—dedit*, Nep. 25, 7.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle ; as, *Opus maturato*, need of haste ; *Opus consulto*, need of deliberation : so *usus* ; as, *Quid facto usus est ?* Ter. Ad. iii. 3, 75. *Non usus facto est mihi*, Id. Hec. iii. 1, 47. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it ; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, it behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic. Att. x. 4.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut* ; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adimiles*, Plant. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Hor. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word ; as, *sic opus est ; si opus sit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive ; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignârus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX ; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c., and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS ; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens* ; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind ; 1. Desire ; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting ; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciens*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignârus*, *incertus*, *insciens*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis* ; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary ; as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens* ; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence ; as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus* ;

impavidus, interritus, intrepidus. 5. Guilt and innocence ; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ; innoxius, innoxens, insons*.

To these add many adjectives of various significations ; as, *ager animi ; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, præstans animi ; modicus voti ; integer vitæ ; seri studiorum*, Hor. But we say *ager pedibus ; ardens in cupiditatibus ; præstans doctrinæ ; modicus cultus ; latus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

OBS. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles ; thus, *patiens algōris*, able to bear cold ; and *patiens algōrem*, actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtūtis*, and *amans virtutem ; doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar ; *doctus grammaticam*, having been taught grammar.

OBS. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction ; as, *Avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Jure consultus & peritus, or juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala*, Ov. *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis*, Cic. *Assuetus labore, in omnia*, Liv. *Mensæ herili*, Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis*, in the dative, Liv. *Labōris, ad onera portanda*, Cæs. *Desuetus bello, & triumphis*, in the dative or ablative, rather the dative, Virg. *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua ; diligens, in, ad, de*, Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re ; Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

OBS. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood ; as, *eupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive ; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural ; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophorum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers.
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum ?</i>	Which of us ?
<i>Una Musarum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octavus sapientum,</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among* ; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds, *quisque, quidam* : also Comparatives, Superlatives,

and some Numerals ; as, *unus, duo, tres ; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. N. D. ii. 52. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*, Plin. ix. 8. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex, or in* ; as, *De tot modò fratribus unus*, Ov. Ep. 14, 73. *Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi*, Cic. Or. ii. 87 ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*, Virg. Æn. vii. 55. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Hor. Od. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives, when we speak of more than two ; as, *major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *maximus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two ; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *uter vestrum*, whether or which of you *two* ; *quis vestrum*, which of you *three* : but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,

Utilis bello,
Perniciosus reipublicæ,
Similis patri,

Profitable for war.
Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the sign TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong ;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. Of pleasure or pain ; as, *acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.*

3. Of friendship or hatred ; as, *addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immisus, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness ; as, *finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness ; as, *aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconueniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty ; as, *facilis, levis, obuius, peruius*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, inuius*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness ; as, *pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality or inequality ; as, *æquālis, æquævus, par, compar, expar*.—*Inæquālis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness ; as, *similis, æmulus, geminus*.—*Dissimilis, absōnus, aliēnus, diversus, discōlor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON ; as, *cognātus, concōlor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consōnus, conueniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous* ; as, *Mari aër continens est*, Cic. Nat. Deor. ii. 45. *Huic fundo continentia quædam prædia mercatur*, Id. Cæcin. 4.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations ; as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decōrus, deformis, præsto, indecl.*, at hand ; *secundus*, &c.—particularly,

Verbals in **BILIS** and **DUS** govern the dative : as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus, To be loved by all men.

So, *Mors est terribilis malis ; Optabilis omnibus pax ; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*, Hor. Od. i. 28, 16. Also some participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by, Hor. Od. i. 1, 25. *Mihi amatus*, Ov. Pont. iv. 12, 22.

Verbals in **DUS** are often construed with the preposition *a* ; as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis*, Cic. Perfect participles are usually so ; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta*, rather than *multis defleta*, Cic. Or. iii. 3. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus*, &c. hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other parts of speech ; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English, is often to be supplied ; as *similis patri*, like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them ; as, *ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, he is father, leader, or son to me ; so, *præsidium reis, decus amicis*, &c. Hor. ; *exitium pecōri*, Virg. ; *virtutibus hostis*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive ; *affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æquālis, contrarius*, and *adversus* ; as,

similis tibi, or tui; superstes patri, or patris; conscius facinōri, or facinōris. Conscius and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, commūnes, inter se; par et commūnis cum aliquo; civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia,* Liv.

OBS. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative, or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or ad aliquid. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quasitis,* Hor. Sat. ii. 6, 82. *Attentus ad rem,* Ter. Ad. v. 8, 31.

OBS. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one, I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invidus, iratus, offensus, suspectus,* ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratiosus, injuriōsus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens,* IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accusative and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS going before; as, *contumax, criminōsus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitālis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*,) INIQUUS, sēvus, ALICUI, or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus,* ALICUI, or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis* IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM, and ALICUI. *Pervicax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudelis* IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amicus, amūlus, infensus, infestus,* ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS, ALIQUEM. We say *aliēnus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliqua*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat,* he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussu magistratum,* Nep. 17, 4. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt,* not *dictis*, Cic. Ver. v. 32.

OBS. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.

OBS. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *propior montem,* scil. *ad*, Sall. Jug. 49. *Proximus finem,* Liv. *Proximus Pompeium sedēbam,* Cic. Att. i. 14.

OBS. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti,* Hor. A. Poet. 467. *Jupiter omnibus idem,* Virg. Æn. x. 112. *Eādem illis censēmus,* Cic. Fam. ix. 6. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui, et, ac, atque,* and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici,* Cic. Off. iii. 4.

Est animus erga te idem, ac fuit, Ter. Heaut. ii. 2, 24. *Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. N. D. ii. 27. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eōdem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eādem est cum Diāna*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque, or et*; and sometimes *similis* and *par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So, *generatus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *procreatus regibus*, descended or sprung of or from kings.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sall. Jug. 5. *Edita de flumine*, Ov. Ep. 5. 9. *Ab Ulize oriundus*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *indignus avorum*, Virg. Æn. xii. 649. So, *Macte esto*, or *macti estote virtutis*, or *virtute*, increase in virtue, or go on and prosper. *Jubërem macte virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example, *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. Adjectives of plenty and want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *iræ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So, *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. 5, 66. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ov. Ep. 1, 12. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cædis habete manus*, Ov. Art. Am. i. 642.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. With the genitive only; as, *benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, *prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only: *beatus*, *differtus*, *frugifer*, *mutulus*, *tentus*, *distentus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *compos*, *consors*, *egēnus*, *exhaeres*, *expers*, *fertilis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prodigus*, *sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently: *abundans*, *cassus*, *extorris*,

fatus, frequens, gravis, gravibus, jejūnus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.

5. With both promiscuously: *copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immūnis, inānis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. With a preposition; as, *copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus à re aliqua*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in, or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*, Liv. So, *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parcus in re aliqua. Immūnis, inānis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, and in re.*

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king; it is the part or property of a king.

So, *Inspicientis est dicere, non putaram*, it is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, it is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani, vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibæi*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ov. *Temertitas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

OBS. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender, instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis. Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*, Liv. ii. 12.

OBS. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which is sometimes expressed; as, *munus est principum; tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causa* or *facta*, Sall. Jug. 88. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv. xxxviii. 50.

OBS. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*. So, *mos est vel fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic. Verr. i. 26.

XVI. *Misereor, miseresco, and satāgo*, govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.

Satāgit rerum suarum, { He has his hands full at home, or he has
enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction; particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fullo, and fallor, fastidio, invideo, lator, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Labōrum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendēmus animis*, not *animorum*, we are in suspense, Cic. *Justitiæ prius mirer*, Virg. In like manner, *abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno*: likewise, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo*: as, *Abstinetō irarum*; *Desine querēlarum*; *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Desistere pugnæ*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv. i. 32.

But all these verbs are, for the most part, differently construed; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor aliquem, vel aliquid. Lator aliquā re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quodd, ut, ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, and *ab aliquo*, I give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente*; *Quiesco a labore*; *Regnare in equitibus, oppidis*, sc. in, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adipisci id*; *Frustrari in re*; *Furere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs: thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causā*; *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate*.

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the sign TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis vēnit imperio, An end is come to the empire, Liv.

Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

Tibi seris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*, Id. *Sol lucet etiam scelerātis*, Sen. *Haret latèri lethālis arundo*, Virg. *Æn. iv. 73.*

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*, and as these particles are not always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds, (except *possum*), govern the dative; as,

Præfuit exercitui, He commanded the army,
Adfuit precibus, He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person ; as,

Est mihi liber, A book is to me, *that is*, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri, Books are to me, *i. e.* I have books.
Dico libros esse mihi, I say that I have books.

This manner of expression is more frequently used than *habeo librum*, *habeo libros*, &c.—So, *Suus cuique mos*, *sc. est*, every one has his way, Ter. Phor. ii. 4, 14. *Sunt nobis mitia poma*, Virg. E. 1, 81. *An nescis longus regibus esse manus?* Ov. Ep. 17, 166.—So also *foret*, and *suppëtit* for *est* : *Si mihi cauda foret, cercopithëcus eram*, if I had a tail, I should be a marmoset, Martial. xiv. 202. *Quid animi creditis illi misëro fore?* What feeling do you think that unhappy youth will have? Ter. Ad. iv. 5, 31. *Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppëtit usus*, who has enough, Hor. Ep. i. 12, 4.—In like manner *DEEST*, for *careo* ; as, *Liber deest mihi*, for *careo libro*, I want a book ; so, *Libri desunt mihi* ; *Scio libros deesse mihi* ; *Defuit ars vobis*, Ov. Art. Am. iii. 42.—So also *deföret* and *defit* : thus, *Neque sibi voluntariorum copias deföre*, and that he should not want numbers of volunteers, Cæs. B. G. v. 54. *Non deföre Arsacidis virtutem fortunamque*, Tacit. Ann. xiii. 37. *Lac mihi non ætate novum, non frigöre defit*, Virg. E. 2, 22.—Sometimes the dative is understood ; as, *Sit spes fallendi, miscëbis sacra profānis*, *sc. tibi*, Hor. Ep. I. 16, 54. *Si causa peccandi in præsens minüs suppëtëbat*, *i. e. erat iis*, Sall. Cat. 16. *Ut (for etsi) desint vires (sc. alicui) tamen est laudanda voluntas*, Ov. Pont. iii. 4, 79.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative ; as,

Satisfacio, *satisdo*, *benefacio*, *benedïco*, *benevölo*, *malefacio*, *maledïco tibi*, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accëdo*, *accesco*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *adno*, *adnôto*, *adequïto*, *adhæreo*, *adsto*, *adstipûlor*, *advolvor*, *affulgeo*, *alläbor*, *allabôro*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arrideo*, *aspïro*, *assentior*, *assideo*, *assisto*, *assuesco*, *assurgo*.—*Adspirat primo Fortuna labori*, Virg. Æn. ii. 385.

2. *Antecello*, *anteo*, *antesto*, *anteverto*.—*Virtus omnibus rebus anteit*, Pl.

3. *Collûdo*, *concino*, *consöno*, *convivo*.—*Puer gestit colludere paribus*, Hor.

4. *Incumbo*, *indormio*, *indubito*, *inhio*, *ingemisco*, *inhæreo*, *insideo*, *insidiör*, *insto*, *insisto*, *insûdo*, *insulto*, *invigilo*, *illacrïmo*, *illûdo*, *immineo*, *immörrior*, *immöror*, *impendeo*.—*Impendent hominibus multa*, Cic. Phil. 14, 13.

5. *Intervenio*, *intermico*, *intercëdo*, *intercïdo*, *interjaceo*.

6. *Obrëpo*, *obluctor*, *obtrecto*, *obstrëpo*, *obmurmuro*, *occumbo*, *occurro*, *occurso*, *obeto*, *obsisto*, *obvenio*.—*Certæ occumbere morti*, Virg. Æn. ii. 62.

7. *Præcëdo*, *præcurro*, *præeo*, *prasideo*, *præluceo*, *præniteo*, *præsto*, *prævaleo*, *præverto*.—*Homo ceteris animantibus plurimum præstat*, Cic. Fin. ii. 33.

8. *Succëdo*, *succumbo*, *sufficio*, *suffrāgo*, *subcreasco*, *suboleo*, *subjaceo*, *subrëpo*.

9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commōdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consūlo, for prospicio. Likewise *noceo, officio, incommōdo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary ; as,

Faveo, gratūlor, gratiflor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adūlor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. Likewise, *auxilior, adminicūlor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitūlor.* Likewise, *derōgo, detrako, invideo, amūlor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist ; as,

Impēro, præcipio, mando, modēror, for modum adhibeo. Likewise, *parco, ausculto, obedio, obsēquor, obtempēro, moremgēro, morigēror, obsacundo.* Likewise, *famūlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *repugno, obato, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo alicui.

5. To trust ; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido tibi.*

To these add *nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despēro, opēror, præstolor, prævaricor, recipio, to promise ; renuncio ; respondeo, to answer or satisfy ; tempēro, studeo, vaco, to apply ; convicior.*

Exc. Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo, govern the accusative ; as,

Dextræque silentia jussit, sc. fieri, Lucan. i. 298. Cur ego amicum offendam in nugis? Hor. Art. Poet. 450. Injuste neminem læsit, Cic. Muren. 40. Jurit facundia causam, Ov. Met. vii. 505.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative, have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most Verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed ; and still more, signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative ; as, *levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, aversor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed ; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition ; as, *Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere rei, re, v. in re. Adequitare portæ ; Syracusas. Adjacere mari, v. mare, to lie near, Liv. xxvi. 42. Nep. 13, 2. Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to, Liv. xxviii. 36. Cæs. B. C. ii. 44.

Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose, Cic. de Or. i. 18. Tacit. H. i. 1.

Advolveri genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum ; rostra, to fly up to, Cic. Att. i. 14.

Adflare rei, v. homini ; rem, v. hominem ; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, v. eum, to flatter. Allābi oris; aures ejus, Virg.; ad exta, Liv.
Apparēre consuli, to attend; ad solium Jovis. Res appāret mihi, *appears.*
Appropinquare Britanniae, portam, ad portam, to approach.
Dominari cunctis oris, Virg.; in cætera animalia, to rule over, Ov.
Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, ad aliquid, inter se, to agree.
Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, to trust to or in.
Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me or my fault.
Impendēre alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, to hang over.
Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, seized.
Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, to fall upon; labori, ad laudem,
ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.
Indulgēre alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, to indulge in, Ter. Ad. i. 1, 38.
Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gape after. Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, to depend on.
Insultare rei et homini, v. hominem; fores, patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, to insult over.

Latet res mihi, v. me, is unknown to me. Medēri ei; cupiditates, *to cure.*
Ministrare ei, to serve; arma ei, to furnish.
Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, to rule.
Nocēre ei, Cic. Off. iii. 5, rarely eum, to hurt, Plaut. Mil. v. 1, 18.
Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei, & cum eo, to marry, Cic.
Obrepere ei, & eum, to creep upon; in animos; ad honores.
Obstrepere auribus, & aures. Obrectare ei, laudibus ejus, to detract from.
Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui, & aliquem.
Pacisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall.; vitam pro laude, Virg.
Præstolari alicui, & aliquem, to wait upon, Cic. Att. ii. 15; Ter. Eun. v. 6, 5.
Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ov.; ad genua, Liv.; ad pedes, to fall.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugna, concurro, coëo, congregior alicui,* for *cum aliquo*. 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidēre, differre rei alicui,* for *a re aliquâ*. We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se;* and *contendere, pugnare contra,* and *adversus aliquem.*

OBS. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te,* and *pro te,* I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te, v. a te,* I fear or dread you as an enemy. So, *Consûlo, prospicio, caveo tibi,* I consult or provide for your safety; but *consûlo te,* I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc,* I foresee this: *Studēre aliquid,* to desire; *alicui,* to favour any one; *alicui rei, rem,* and *in re,* to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi,* I envy; *te, I imitate;* *Auscullo tibi,* I obey or listen to; *te, I hear;* *Cupio tibi,* I favour; *rem, I desire;* *Fanëro,* and *fenerar tibi,* I lend you on interest; *abs te, I borrow;* *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc feneraret,* should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. Ad. ii. 2, 11. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

OBS. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad;* as,

Eo, vado, curro, propëro, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem. Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor celo,* Virg. *Æn. v. 451.*

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. Reverere parentes, Reverence your parents.

OBS. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own ; as,

Ire iter or viam ; Pugnare pugnam or praelium ; Currere cursum ; Canere cantilenam ; Vivere vitam ; Ludere ludum ; Sequi sectam ; Somniare somnium, &c. : or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense ; as, Corydon ardebat Alexin, scil. propter, i. e. vehementer amabat, Virg. E. 2, 1. Currimus aquor, scil. per, Id. So, Comptos arsit adulteri crines, Hor. Od. iv. 9, 13. Saltare Cyclopa ; Olet hircum ; Sulcos et vineta crepat mera, Hor. Vox hominem sonat ; Sudare mella, Virg. Si Xerxes, Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset, sc. per, Cic. Fin. ii. 34 : or when they have a kind of active sense ; as, Clamare aliquem nomine, Virg. Callere jura ; Morere mortem ; Horret iratum mare, Hor.

Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative ; as, *Ire itinere ; dolere dolore, vice v. vicem ejus ; gaudere gaudio ; mori v. obire morte : vivere vita ; ardet virgine, Hor. Ludere aleam, v. alea ; manare, plueret, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo. Erubescere jura, Virg. ; origine, Tac. ; equo vehi, Curt.*

OBS. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense ; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. ; a litibus ; ab uxore ducenda, to be averse from matrimony ; Id a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic. Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. Iis cladis Caudinae nondum memoria aboleverat, the remembrance of the disaster at Caudium was not yet effaced from their mind, or they had not yet forgotten, Liv. ix. 36.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg. AEn. i. 704.

Ætas adolevit ; adolevit ad ætatem, Plaut.

Declinare ictum, to avoid ; loco ; agmen aliquo, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken ; patri, to degenerate from ; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, to harden ; Res durat ad breve tem-

pus, endures ; In sedibus durare nequeo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay ; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, inclines ; acies inclinat, vel inclinatur, gives way.

Laborare arma, to forge ; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill ; de re aliqua, to be concerned.

Morari iter, to stop ; in urbe, to stay ; Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind this.

Properare pecuniam heredi, Hor. ; in urbem ; ad unam sedem, Ov.

Quadrare acervum, to square, Hor. ; aliquid ad normam ; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, to fit.

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, to furnish ; sumptus illi, vel illi sumptibus, Ter. ; suppeditat ei ratio, is afforded ; Manubiae vix in fundamenta suppeditavere, were scarcely sufficient, Liv. i. 55.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca*, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the preposition *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrumat, id succenset, sc. propter, Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit, sc. se, Virg. Æn. i. 104. Flumina præcipitant, sc. se, Id. Quodcumque intenderat, sc. se, turned or directed himself, Sall. Obiit, sc. mortem, Ter. Cum faciam vitulâ, sc. sacra, Virg. E. 3, 77. Or its place supplied by an infinitive, or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; for *dulcem sermonem, decorum risum*, Hor. Ep. i. 7, 27.*

XIX. Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

<i>Recordor lectionis, or lectionem,</i>	I remember the lesson.
<i>Oliviscor injuriæ, or injuriam,</i>	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive, or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter. Andr. ii. 5, 18. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, Cic. Brut. 60.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus, vel de aliquo.* So, *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire, ecquid de te recordere, Cic. Tusc. i. 6.*

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

<i>Abundat divitiis,</i>	He abounds in riches.
<i>Caret omni culpâ,</i>	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scateo*, &c.; of want, *careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget aris, he needs money, Hor. Ep. i. 6, 39. Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic. de Or. i. 34.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs, is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpâ, he is free from fault; Ne quando a metu ac periculis vacarent, Liv. vii. 1.*

XXI. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit.

Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labōro* for *male me habeo*, I am ill; *conficior, confictor, periclitor, pascor, epŭlor, nitor, &c.*

OBS. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. Cat. 47. *Totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant*, Cæs. B. G. i. 3. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command; never *rebus, imperio* being understood. *Dum civitas Atheniensium rerum potita est*, Cic. Rosc. Amer. 25.

OBS. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epŭlor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. Tusc. i. 37. *Officia fungi*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1. 14. *Munera fungi*, Tac. Ann. iii. 2. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. G. iii. 314. And in ancient writers, *utor, abŭtor*, and *fruo*; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. Andr. prol. 5. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg. G. iii. 458.

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affĕro* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verito, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, it is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi munĕri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

OBS. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecōri*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptum*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern the accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *id*.

OBS. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui, &c. scil. mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignōri*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curā, quastui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. sc. sibi*.

OBS. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,
Meipsum inertiae condemno,
Illum homicidii absolvunt,
Monet me officii,

He accuses me of theft.
 I condemn myself of laziness.
 They acquit him of manslaughter.
 He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *accuso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *anquiro*, *arguo*, *defero*, *insimulo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *astringo*; of condemning, *damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*; of acquitting, *absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*; of admonishing, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. So, *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic. Phil. 2, 2.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative, but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere ex criminis*, v. *capitis*; and *crimine*, v. *capite*; also, *Absolvo me peccato*, Liv. ii. 8. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the accusative of a person and the genitive of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiae*. We sometimes also find *accuso*, *incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiae*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. i. 28. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic. Mur. 17; Fam. vii. 22.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc*, *illud*, *istud*, *id*, *unum*, *multa*, *pauca*, &c.; as, *Moneo, accuso te illud*. We seldom however find, *Errorrem te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*; except in old writers; as in Plautus, &c.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*; as,

Aestimo te magni,

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *aestimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *pili*, *assis*, *teruncii*, *hujus*; thus,

Quanti hoc emisti? Tanti valet res, quanti vendi potest. Res nulla minoris constabit patri, quàm filius, Juv. 7, 187. *Merito te semper maximi feci*, *Chreme*, Ter. Andr. iii. 3, 42. *Te pluris quàm omnes illos puto*, Cic. Att. xii. 21. *Tu fortasse, quid me (for de me) fiat, parvi pendis*, Ter. Heaut. iv. 3, 37.

OBS. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*; and also *nihilo*, Cic. Verr. iv. 7; Fin. iv. 23. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*, Cic. Dom. 15; Fin. iii. 8.

OBS. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consûlo*; as, *Hoc consûlo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

OBS. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consûlo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*, or *munus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monère aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

<i>Compâro Virgilium Homêro,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer.
<i>Suum cuique tribuïto,</i>	Give every one his own.
<i>Narras fabulâ surdo,</i>	You tell a story to a deaf man.
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*); as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, he bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis arâtra boves*, Virg. *Pauvèrtas sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

OBS. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum aliâ*, and *ad aliâ*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti, morte*, a or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolâ alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere æri*, *in æs*, or *in ære*; and so in many others.

OBS. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdâre mœnia oppido, or *oppidum mœnibus*, to surround a city with walls, Cic. Tusc. v. 20; Fam. xv. 4.

Intercludere commeâtum alicui, or *aliquem commeâtum*, to intercept one's provisions, Plaut. Mil. ii. 2, 68; Cæs. B. G. i. 48.

Donare, prohibère rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing,

Mactare hostiam Deo, or Deum hostiâ, to sacrifice.

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, he debarred the Romans from Gaul, Cæs. B. G. i. 46. Ei domo et provinciis suis (in the ablat.) interdixit, Suet. Aug. 66. Interdicere aliquem re aliquâ, rarely occurs; though it appears to have been in use from similar expressions in the passive: thus, Non poterat interdici socëro gener, Nep. 22, 5. Philosophi urbe et Italiâ interdicti sunt. Gell. xv. 11.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress. Me omnium jam laborum levas, Plaut. Rud. i. 4, 27.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic., to threaten one with any thing; Cæsari gladio, Sall. Cat. 49.

Gratûlor tibi hanc rem, hâc re, in, pro, and de hâc re, I congratulate you on this. Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur, Liv. i. 28.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui, or aliquem labe, to put an affront on one; aram sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, and sacra Deo, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui, and apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobrare vitium ei, and in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, and apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam fânôri locare, to place at interest, Cic. Flacc. 21; Verr. i. 36.

Opponere se morti, and ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, and ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lëgo, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also hortor, and invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso; thus, Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem trahit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latio, for in Latium, to introduce, Virg. Æn. i. 6. Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahère alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, he gave me a book, for to me.*

4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,

We beg peace of thee.

Docuit me grammaticam,

He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *rogo, oro, exôro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, he concealed this matter from me; or *celavit me de hac re*: and more rarely, *celavit hanc rem mihi*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammaticâ*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo, a* or *abs te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex* or *a te*, or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo, consulto te de re*: *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, for divos*, Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the ablative, without a preposition. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in or *ab artibus*. Also, *instruo ad rem*, or in *re*, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes, de* or in *re, ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem studii, studia ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo*: Of unloading, *levo, exonero*, &c.: Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo*, &c.: Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio*, &c.: Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*: Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corôno*, and *calceo*: Of unclothing, *eruo, discingo*, &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, mans the ships, Virg. *Æn.* xi. 327.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*, Liv. i. 46: and also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

<i>Accusor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparatur Homero,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Doceor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis oneratur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*; — *eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a or ex morte*; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam*; — *rem celatum iri me, or mihi*; *me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis*; (see page 173.)

OBS. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: and so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition, as, *Mare a sole collūcet*, Cic. *Phalāris non a paucis interiit*, Id. So, *Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a praeliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo, &c.* Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*; *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo*.

The preposition is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjūge*, Ov.; *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tac. *Tabūla distinguitur undā, qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juv. 14, 289.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*: *Per me restitutus*: *Per me*, or *a me factum est*, Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores*, sc. *a rege*, or *a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

OBS. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for *ab ullo*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ov. *Scribēris Vario*, for *a Vario*, Hor. Od. i. 6, 1. *Honesta bonis viris quæritur*, for *a viris*, Cic. — *VIDEOR*, I seem, always governs the dative; as, *Vidēris mihi*, you seem to me. But we commonly say, *Vidēris a me*, you are seen by me: although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg. Æn. i. 326.

OBS. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor* and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

OBS. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless they are joined with a noun of similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. Mur. 16. *Bellum militabitur*, Hor. Epod. 1, 23. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, or *ab aliquo*, I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*, Cic. Inv. i. 30. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athēnas*; *pugnatum est biduum*;

dormitur totam noctem, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hiems*; *Noctes vigilantur amarae*; *Oceānus raris ab orbe nostro navibus adiitur*, Tac. Germ. 2.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expēdit reipublicæ,

It is profitable for the state.

So, *Aliis si licet, tibi non licet*, Ter. Heaut. iv. 5, 49. *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum*, Hor. Ep. i. 17, 36. *Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Jovi*, Jupiter is not at leisure to attend to small things, Ov. Trist. ii. 216.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured; and not *Ego favor*. So, *Nocetur mihi*; *imperatur mihi*, &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invidetur*, for *imperatur*, *invidetur mihi*, Hor. Ep. i. 5, 21; De Art. Poet. 56.

OBS. 1. These verbs, *potest*, *cæpit*, *incipit*, *destinit*, *debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, you cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet*, the praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, the weakest could not be resisted by the bravest, Sall. Jug. 67.

OBS. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria*, this thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*; *Doleo*, vel *dolet mihi id factum esse*.

OBS. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *it rains*, *it shines*, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expēdit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expēdit omnibus bonis*, Cic. Phil. 13, 8. *Accidit, evēnit, contigit, ut ibi essemus*.—These nominatives, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs; as, *Idem mihi licet*, Cic. Verr. v. 70. *Sed marito ista non eadem licent*, Catull. 61, 147.

Exc. I. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; as,

Rēfert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea rēfert, It does not concern me.

OBS. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either, *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cuja interest*, from *cujus*, -a, -um.

OBS. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil*, &c.; also with common nouns, and with these genitives, *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. Att. xi. 22. *Usque adea magni refert studium*, Lucr. iv. 985. *Incessus in gravidā refert*, Plin. vii. 6.

These verbs are frequently construed with the adverbs, *tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime*, &c.; as, *Faciam, quod maxime reipublice interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes, instead of the genitive, they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. Pers. iv. 3, 44. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic.; rarely the dative; as, *Dic, quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sat. i. 1, 49. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolabellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Aedone est fundata leviter fides, ut, ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat?* Liv. ii. 7. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, et quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv. 14, 73.

OBS. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua*, &c. likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis*; *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris*. So, *Interest mea*, i. e. *est inter negotia mea*.

Exc. II. These five, *MISERET, PÆNITET, PUDET, TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pænitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of my fault.

OBS. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

OBS. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pænitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelèrum si bene pænitet*, scil. *me*, Hor. Od. iii. 24, 50.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.*; as, *Ipse sui miseret*, Lucr. iii. 894. *Non te hæc pudet?* Ter. Ad. iv. 7, 36. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedæmi vicem miseret me*, soil. *secundum*, or *quod ad*, Ter. Heaut. iv. 5, 1.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Misereatur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

Exc. III. DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT, and OPORTET, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studère,
Non decet te rixari,

It delights me to study.
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*, Hor. Ep. i. 7, 44. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiam si licet*, Cic. Balb. 3. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter. Heaut. iii. 2, 25.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter. Ad. v. 8, 5.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mood, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet, Cic.: or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, the young man should have been humoured, Ter. Ad. ii. 2, 6.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic. Att. vii. 18.

NOTE. *Attinet, pertinet, and spectat*, are construed with *ad*: *Ad rem publicum pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. Att. ix. 11. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. Ad. iii. 3. 82. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic. Fam. xiv. 5.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. One Verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Lycorum Horatius, ferè solus est legi dignus*, Quintil. x. 1, 96. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg. G. ii. 542.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam ?* scil. *deceat*, or *par est*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 37. *Videre est*, one may see; *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Hor. *Sat.* i. 5, 87. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socrētem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. *Fam.* ix. 22. So, *Discere*, *scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros*, Ov. *Ep.* ex P. ii. 9, 47. —2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi* or *cantūs*, Virg. *E.* 10, 32.—3. In the dative, *Et vos servire magis, quàm imperare, parati estis*, Sall. *Cat.* 20.—4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Hor. *Ep.* i. 16, 61. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ov. *Ep.* 19, 16.—5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis !* for *vita nostra*.—6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur*, Virg. *E.* 5, 89.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping*; in short, after any verb which has relation to futurity; as, *Dubitāt ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitavit, an faceret necne*; *Non dubito, quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere*, or *ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore, ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Att.* xvi. 16, C. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 101.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*; and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c.*; *Ready to hear, promptus ad audiendum*; *Time to read, tempus legendi*; *Fit to swim, aptus natando*; *Easy to say, facile dictu*; *I am to write, scripturus sum*; *A house to let, or more properly, to be let, domus locanda*; *He was left to guard the city, relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

To, in English, is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth*; *to proceed*; *to conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Cat.* 7. *Invisus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me. *Indies invisor*, Suet. *Tib.* 13.

Occulta, et maribus non invisâ solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra, unseen, Cic. Har. Resp. 27.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also **PERTÆSUS**, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exôsa jugâles*, Ov. Met. i. 483. *Plebs consulum nomen, haud secus quàm regum, perôsa erat*, Liv. iii. 34. *Pertæsus ignaviâ suam*; *semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet.; *vitam*, weary of, Just. xxxviii. 9.

Verbals in **BUNDUS** govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. vi. 8. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. xxv. 13. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. Leg. i. 15. *Insidia consuli*, Sall. Cat. 32. *Domum reditionis spe sublata*, Cæs. B. G. i. 5. *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plaut. Amph. i. 3, 21; cf. Id. Cas. ii. 6, 54.

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrâsis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *compëri*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo, et mecum adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Andr. iv. 2, 1. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas, or ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum, or ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum, or ad legendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, condûco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *du*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas ædificandas locavit*, Cic. Verr. i. 59.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study.

Aptus studendo, Fit for studying.

Tempus studendi, Time of study.

Scio studendum esse mihi, I know that I must study.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in **DUM** with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So, *Scio legendum esse mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity, and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive, or the subjunctive with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum, or omnibus necesse est mori, or ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good, for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. x. 356. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites est*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. xxi. 43. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi*, v. *alicui*, Pub. Syr. *Canes potiùs acres paucos habendum, quàm multos*, sc. *est tibi*, i. e. *oportet te habere*, Varr. R. R. i. 21, 1.

II. The Gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives ; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

So, *Certus eundi*, determined on going, or to depart, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 554. *Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi?* Id. *E.* 1, 27. *Cui dabit partes scelus expiandi Jupiter?* Hor. *Od.* i. 2, 29. *Ipsi consulationem petenti magna spes*, sc. *erat*, Sall. *Cat.* 16. *Veritus ne reliquos populares metus invaderet parendi sibi*, Id. *Jug.* 35.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural ; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Phil.* 5, 3. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*, Ter. *Heaut. Prol.* 29. But chiefly with pronouns ; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ*, Cæsar. *B. G.* iv. 13. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*, Liv. *xxi.* 41. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *femina*, Ter. *Hec.* iii. 3, 12. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The Gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

So, *Nullum semen ultra quadrimâtum utile est serendo*, Plin. *xix.* 58, 11. *Charta emporetica est inutilis scribendo*, Id. *xiii.* 23, 12. *Rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo*, Id. *xxxiv.* 43, 15.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, he is not able to pay, Cic. *Fam.* iii. 8. So, *Cum solvendo civitates non essent*, Cic. *Fam.* iii. 8. *Alexandrinæ ficus non sunt vescendo*, sc. *apta*, are not fit for eating, Plin. *xv.* 18. So, *Radix ejus est vescendo*, sc. *apta*, Id. *xxi.* 56, 16. *Aqua bituminata et nitrosa bibendo atque purgationibus*, sc. *utilis*, Id. *xxxi.* 6.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Har. Resp.* 7. *Aptus habendo ensem*, for wearing, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 88. *Is finis censendo factus est*, Liv. *i.* 44.

IV. The Gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *G.* iii. 206. *Pecuniam ab aliquo ob absolvendum accipere*, Cic. *Verr.* ii. 32. *Plus eloquentia circa movendum valet*, Quintil. *iv.* 5, 6. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood ; as, *Moriendum sibi potius, quam perpetiendum putant*, Cic. *Verr.* i. 32.

V. The Gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as,

Pæna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause ; as,

Memoria excolendo augētur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

OBS. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other ; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere* : only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense ; as, *Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. Jug. 62. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius ; sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*, Cic. Fam. ix. 25. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*, Virg. G. iii. 215.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of* ; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or *in the writing of letters* ; but it is improper to say, *in the writing*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	} or more frequently	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>		<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>		<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>		<i>A petendâ pace.</i>

OBS. 1. In changing Gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the Gerund was ; as,

Genitive ; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani exstinguendi*, Cic. Muren. 37.

Dative ; *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*, Colum. i. 9. 3. *Capessendæ rei publicæ habilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. ii. 5. *Onëri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus*, v. *habilis*, Liv. ii. 9. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv. *Manubiæ, quæ perducendo ad culmen operi destinatæ erant*, Liv. i. 55.

Accusative and Ablative ; *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Capuâ duces Romanos abstrahere*, Liv. xxvii. 7. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies plenior*, Cic. Of. i. 1.

OBS. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior* ; as, *Spes potiundi urbe, or potiundæ urbis ; justitiæ fruendæ causâ videntur olim benè morati reges constituti*,

Cic. Off. ii. 12. *Ille etas magis ad hæc utenda idonea est*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1, 81. *Nos in omni munere fungendo summam adhibebimus diligentiam*, Cic. Att. i. 1. But we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*, &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum, He has gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum?* *Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat ut se perdat*, he is bent on his own destruction, Ter. Andr. i. 1, 107. So, *Dum paucis sceleratis parcat, bonos omnes perditum eunt*, Sall. Cat. 52; cf. Id. Jug. 31. This supine, with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tua operâ in cubiculum iri deductum domum?* which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Did you think that she would be brought home into your bed-chamber, without any pains of your own? Ter. Ad. iv. 5, 60. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem randi causâ*, or *opis orandæ causâ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit iui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The Supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So, *Nil dictu fædum, visûque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est*, uv. 14, 43. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas*, v. *nefas est ictu*; *quod scitu opus est*, Cic. Inv. i. 20. *Ita dictu est opus*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1, 68. *Quodque nefas dictu, fieri nec posse putavi*, Ov. Pont. i. 9, 3.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *imius cubitu surgat* (villicus), from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cat. 5.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive, or by the gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognita, cognosci, or ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to verbs and participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.

Servus egregiè fidèlis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Satis bene, Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

Homèrus planè orator; *planè noster, verè Metellus*, Cic. So, *Hodie mane*; *cras mane*; *heri mane*; *hodie vesperi*, &c.; *tam mane*; *tam vespere*.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non senserunt, nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et senserunt*, and they did perceive; *Non poteram non exanimari metu*, Cic. So, *Non sum nescius*, i. e. *scio*, Cic. de Or. i. 11. *Haud nihil est*, i. e. *est aliquid*, Ter. Eun. iv. 2, 13; *nonnulli*, i. e. *aliqui*; *nonnunquam*, i. e. *aliquando*; *non nemo*, i. e. *quidam*; *nemo non*, i. e. *quilibet*, &c. Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccatum siet, (te) fecisse dicas de meâ sententiâ*, I will not cause, that, &c. Plant. Bacch. iv. 9, 114. *Jura, te non nociturum homini hac de re nemini*, for *nulli homini*, Id. Mil. v. 1, 18; cf. Epid. iv. 1, 6; & v. 1, 57. *Nolle successum, non Patribus, non Consulibus*, they did not wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls, Liv. ii. 45. So, *Nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit*, Virg. Æn. ix. 428. Add Virg. E. 4, 52, and 5, 53; Ter. Eun. v. 9, 47; Heaut. i. 1, 11. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque manceps factus est*, Nep. 25, 6.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the Degree of Comparison, and the Mood with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidè*, &c. and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the Positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, you will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. Amic. 4; *perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppidè pauci*, very few; *perfacile est*, &c. In like manner, *parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus*; *paru*

firmus; *multum bonus*, Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to Comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ*, Liv. i. 7.

QUAM is joined to the Positive or Superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis*, or *Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quam familiariter*, very familiarly, Ter. So, *quam severe*, very severely, Cic.; *quam late*, very widely, Cæs. *Tam multa, quam*, &c. as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat*, as great forces as possible, Sall. Jug. 13. *Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sæpissimè*, Cic. *Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est*, Sall. Jug. 31.

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to Superlatives, or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facile doctissimus, facile princeps*, v. *præcipuus*. LONGE, to Comparatives or Superlatives, rarely to the Positive; as, *Longè omnium eloquentissimus Plato*, Cic. de Or. i. 11. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus*, Virg. Æn. ix. 556.

2. CUM, when, is construed with the Indicative or Subjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilst, or how long, with the Indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægrò, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*, Cic. Att. ix. 10. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Ov. Trist. i. 8, 5. DUM and DONEC, for *usque dum*, until, sometimes with the Indicative and sometimes with the Subjunctive; as, *Opperior, dum ista cognosco*, Cic. Att. x. 3. *Haud desinam, donec perfecero hoc*, Ter. Phorm. iii. 2, 73. So, QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad possem et liceret; quoad progrèdi potuerit amentia*, Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the Subjunctive; as, *Thessalonica esse statuam, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. Att. iii. 13.—but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. ib. xvi. 20.—The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris*, ib. xi. 12. *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, Cic. Fam. v. 8. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid*, or some such word understood.—*Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the Indicative; ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMUL AC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive; as, *Antequam dico, or dicam*, Cic. *Simul ac persensit*, Virg. Æn. iv. 90. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cic. Att. x. 4. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, Liv. xxii. 50; Virg. Æn. vi. 628. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, Cic. Rabir. 13. So *NÆ*, or *NE*, truly; as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Ne tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ tuæ consulisses*, Cic. Phil. ii. 2. But *NE*, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the Subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plant. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, Liv. xxx. 30.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, Virg. Æn. ii. 416. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*, Cic. de Or. iii. 56. But when used ironically, they have the Subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic. Tuac. ii. 12.

5. **UTINAM**, *ô si*, *ut* for *utinam*, I wish, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. Fam. xiv. 1. *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. Æn. viii. 560. *Ut illum dii deaque perdant*, Ter. Eun. ii. 3, 11.

6. **UT**, when or after, takes the Indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quàm* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. Capt. i. 2. 62. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, item omnes censes esse*, as you are, Plaut. Rud. iv. 4, 55. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the Subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, as you sow, Cic. de Or. ii. 65.

7. **QUIN**, for *cur non*, takes the Indicative; as, *Quin continetis vocem, indicem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. Rabir. 6. ¶ For *imo*, nay or but, the Indicative or Imperative; as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For *ut non*, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod non*, or *quo minus*, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis siet, quam invitus facias*, Ter. Heaut. iv. 4, 1. *Nemo est, quin malit; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserri-mus*, Cic. Att. xi. 15.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Pridie ejus diûi,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verborum,</i>	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of Time governing the genitive are, *interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of Place: *ubi* and *quod*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *ubivis*, *ubiubi*, &c. Also, *ed*, *huc*, *hucine*, *unde*, *usque*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longè*, *ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quod, quovis*, &c.; also *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde terrarum*, *vel gentium*; *longè gentium*; *ibidem loci*; *ed audaciæ*, *vecordiæ*, *miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of Quantity: *abundè*, *affâtim*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *parum*, *minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriæ*, *affâtim divitiarum*, *largiter auri*, *satis eloquentiæ*, *sapientiæ parum est illi*, *vel ille habet*, he has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means. *Nimis insidiarum*, Cic. Or. 51.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Donari virtutis ergo*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat. 7. *Instar montis equum—ædificant*, like a mountain, Virg. Æn. ii. 15. But these are properly nouns. (See page 51.)

OBS. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the Genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæ abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res*, *locus*, or *negotium*, with a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

OBS. 2. We usually say, *pridie*, *postridie ejus diei*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie*, *postridie Kalendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, *ludos Apollinariæ*, *natâlem ejus. absolutionem ejus*, &c.; rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

OBS. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis or *hostem*. *Ecce mixtum hominum* Cic. Fam. ii. 20.

Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Eccē tibi Strato*, Cic. Acad. ii. 38. *Eccē duas* (scil. aras) *tibi*, *Daphni*, Virg. E. 5, 66. *En tibi, inquit, ut sentias*, &c. Liv. ii. 12. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. Andr. v. 2, 1. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loquitur,
Convenienter naturæ,
Venit obviam ei,
Proximè castris, or castra,

He speaks the best of all.
Agreeably to nature.
He came to meet him.
Next the camp.

II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

AD astra, *to the stars*; religari ad assērem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tibērim, *near, at*; ad templa supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at most, or to the top*; ad summam, *on the whole*, Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally*; ad v. in speciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatālis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, sc. corpus, *to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodēcim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbas ad lunam messæ, *by the light of*, Virg.; ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est et ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*, Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*, Cic.; nebūla erat ad multum diēi, *for a great part of the day*, Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad

manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad amussim, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditæque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, *Ad duo millia cæsa sunt*; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; apud me cœnabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, judices, v. aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo apud illum, I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter. Ad. iv. 1, 19.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um; **CONTRA** hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipölim, *over against*, Plin. iii. 11.

CIS vel **CITRA** flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Sen.

CIRCUM & **CIRCA** regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.;

Circa quæ omnia multus hominibus labor est, Quinct. ii. 16, 14.
ERGA amicos, *towards*. **EXTRA** muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.
INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; inter, & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*, Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*, Cic. Inter diem, *whence interdiu, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi nunc non nôrimus nos inter nos, Ter. Ad. ii. 4, 7.

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; Intra famam est, *less than report*, Quinctil. xi. 3, 8.

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*; Volat æquora juxta, Virg.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam, *for de industriâ, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or quem penes, in the power of*; Penes te es? *Are you in your senses?* Hor.

PER agros, *through*; per vim, per scelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after*; post tergum, *behind*; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides*

or except you; præter casam fingere, *beyond*; præter legem, morem, æquum et bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond*; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above*; præter ripam ire, *along, near*; præter oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta et virtutes tuas, *according to*, Ter.; secundum litus, secundum aurem vulneratus, *est, near to*; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit, *for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along*.

SUPRA terram, *above*.

TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.

To prepositions governing the Accusative are commonly added **CIRCITER**, **PROPE**, **USQUE**, and **VERSUS**; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day*; prope muros, *near the walls*; usque Puteolos, Tarsum usque, *as far as*; Orientem versus, *towards the east*. But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from*; a puero, *vel pueris, a pueritiâ, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; a manu, *sc. servus, an amanuensis or clerk*; ad manum, *a waiting man*; a pedibus, *a footman*; a latere principis, *an attendant*. So, a secretis,

rationibus, consiliis, cyâthis, &c. *a secretary, an accountant, &c.*; fores a nobis, *for nostræ*. Injuria ab illo, *for illius*, Ter.; a cœnâ, *after*; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on or in*; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of*; ab oculis doleo, Plaut.; ab ingenio improbus, a pecuniâ et militibus imparatus, *as to, with respect to*, Cic. Est calor

a sole ; omissiores ab re, *too careless about money* ; a villâ mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causâ, *without* ; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si tu non esses, v. nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers ; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre, & patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with* ; testis mecum est annûlus, *in my possession*, Ter. ; cum primâ luce, *at break of day* ; cum imperio esse, *in* ; cum primis, in primis, *in the first place* ; cum metu dicere, cum lætitiâ vivere, cum curâ, &c. Cic. *We say*, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum ; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. ; and quocum, or cum quo, quibuscum, or cum quibus.

DE lanâ caprinâ rixantur, *about, concerning* ; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of* ; de loco superiore, *from* ; de die, *by day* ; de nocte, *by night* ; de integro, *anew, afresh* ; de v. ex improviso, *unexpectedly* ; de v. ex industriâ, *on purpose* ; de meo, *at my expense* ; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. ; de v. ex compacto agere, *by agreement* ; de transverso, *crosswise, athwart* ; de v. ex ejus sententiâ, consilio, *according to* ; quâ v. hac de causâ, *for* ; homo de plebe ; templum de marmôre, *of* ; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech* ; de filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus ; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, **EX** ædibus, *from, out of* ; e contrario, v. e contrariâ parte, *on the contrary* ; e regione, *over against* ; e republicâ, e re ali-

cujus, *for the good of* ; statim e somno, ex fugâ, ex tantâ properantiâ, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after* ; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately* ; poculum ex auro ; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback* ; facere pugnam ex com-môdo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. ; diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day* ; ex ordine, *in order* ; magnâ ex parte, *for the most part* ; ex super-vacuo, *superfluously* ; ex tuâ dignitate, v. virtute, ex decreto senatûs, e naturâ, *according to* ; so, vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat ; ex v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus. Ex animo, *from the heart* ; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e viâ languère, ex doctrinâ nobilis, *on account of* ; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage* ; ex eo die, *since* ; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among* ; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re natâ, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commemata mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

PRO gloriâ certare, *for* ; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. ; pro templo, tribunâli, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before* ; pro suâ dignitate, sapientiâ, &c. ; pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to* ; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of* ; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro suâ quisque parte, v. facultate, *to one's ability or power* ; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. ; pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve* ; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part* ; pro ratâ parte, pro portione, *in proportion* ; pro cive se gerit ; agere pro victoribus ; pro suo uti : pro runto

foedus habet, for, as; so, pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est, Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before; speciem præ se boni viri fert, pretends to be, Ter.; præ lacrymis non possum scribere, for, because of; illum præ me contempsit, in comparison of: So the adv. præut; as, Præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.*

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of.*

SINE labore, *without; sine ullâ causâ, pompâ, molestiâ, querelâ, impensâ, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunâ, sede, &c. Cic.*

Capûlo TENUS, *up to the hilt. Tenus* is construed with the ge-

nitive plural, when the word wants the singular; as, *Cumarum tenuis*, as far as *Cumæ*; or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenuis, up to. We also find Corcyræ tenuis, Liv. xxvi. 24. Antio atque Ostiis tenuis, Liv. ix. 19. Colchis tenuis, Flor. iii. 5, 25. Pectoribus tenuis, Ov. Met. xv. 512.*

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added **PROCUL**; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patriâ, Virg. Procul ab ostentatione, Quinctil. Culpa est procul a me, Ter. Ad. iii. 2, 50.*

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUS. AND ABL.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into; amor in patriam, in te benignus, towards; in lucem, until day; in eam sententiam, to that purpose, on that head; in rem tuam est, for your advantage; in utramque partem disputare, on both sides, for and against; litûra in nomen, on, Cic.; potestas in filium, over; in aliquem dicere, against; mirum in modum, after; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, on; in os laudare, to, before; in v. inter patres lectus, into the number of; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. among; crescit in dies,*

in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day; in diem postërum, proximum, decimum, against; in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow; Est in diem, will happen some time after, Ter.; induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for; Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transëgit, he bargained for three shillings a-foot, or for every foot. So, in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in* ; esse in potestate *v.* in potestatem, honore *v.* honorem, mente *v.* mentem ; in manu *v.* manibus esse, habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand* ; in amicis, *among* ; in oculis, *before* : Occisus est in provinciam, *for* in provinciâ, Sall. Cat. 19 ; et ibi Cort. In pueritiâ, adolescentiâ, senectute, absentîâ, *for* puer or pueri, *when a boy, or boys, &c.* Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for* ut fratrem, Ter.

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under* ; sub ipsum funus, *near, just before*, Hor. Od. ii. 18, 18 ; sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vespëram, brumam, *i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of*

day, &c. ; sub idem tempus, *about* ; sub eas literas recitatus sunt tuus, sub festos dies, *after*, Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, *&c. under* ; sub urbe, *near*, Ter. ; sub eâ conditione, *v. -em, on or with*. **SUPER** Numidiam, *above, beyond* ; super ripas, *upon* ; super hæc, super morbum etiam fames afflixit, *besides*, Liv. : super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon* ; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning* ; alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super cœnam, super vinum et epulas, *for* inter, *during*, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, Virg.

SUBTER terram, vel terrâ, *under*.

OBS. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case ; as, *He came to me, to us, &c.*

This rule is sometimes violated ; as, *Who do you speak to ? for whom.* So, *Who do men say that I am ?* instead of *whom*.

When prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *antè, cired, clàm, coràm, contrà, infrà, intrà, juxtà, palam, ponè, pòst, propter, secus, subter, super, suprà, ultrà*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense ; as, *Longe post tempore venit*, *sc. post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, and clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the accusative or ablative, as, *Intus cellum*, *for intrà*, Liv. xxvii. 11. *Intus templo divûm*, *sc. in*, Virg. *Æn. vii. 192*. *Simul his*, *sc. cum*, Hor. Sat. i. 10, 86.

OBS. 2. A and E are put only before consonants ; AB and EX usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants ; as,

A patre, e regione ; ab initio, ab rege ; ex urbe, ex parte : *abs* before *q* and *t* ; as, *abs te, abs quivis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e* ; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re medi est, &c.* Some only with *ex* ; as, *ex compacto, ex tempore, magnâ ex parte, &c.*

OBS. 3. Prepositions are often understood ; as, *Devenire locos*, *scil. ad*, *It portis*, *sc. ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, *scil. ob vel propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, *scil. per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, *scil. e vel de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, *scil. ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias ? Quid me fiet*, *sc. de*, Ter. And so in English, *Shew me the book ; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. *He died last year*, *for in last year* ; *I will see you Tuesday next*, *for on Tuesday ; next month, for in next month*.—We

sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*, Sall. *Round St Paul's*, namely church; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case as when it stands by itself;

as,

Adeamus scholam,

Let us go to the school.

Exeamus scholâ,

Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *exire e scholâ*; *adgrædi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingrædi orationem*, vel *in orationem*; *inducere animum*, and *in animum*; *evadere undis*, and *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ*, vel *de viâ*; *expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, allôqui, allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So, *Alluere urbem*; *accollere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; and *a, de, ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ, a vel de sententia*; *Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egrædi urbe, or urbem, sc. *extra*; *egrædi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis, or insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. i. 492. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Æn.* iii. 60. *Elâbi ex manibus*; *pugnam, vincula*, Tac. *Ann.* i. 61.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Allôquor patrem, or loquor ad patrem*.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus, or bone! *O good man*! *Heu me misèrum*! *Ah wretched me*!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium (ut aiunt) lupum*! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! *Ah me*!

Væ vobis! *Woe to you*!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohé* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heu Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Proh*, or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh sancte Jupiter*, Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter. Andr. iii. 4, 25.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quàm me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. *The Price of a thing.* 2. *The Cause, Manner, and Instrument.* 3. *Place.* 4. *Measure and Distance.* 5. *Time.*

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emit librum duobus assibus,
Constitit talento,

I bought a book for two shillings.
It cost a talent.

So, *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, &c.* *Nocet empti dolore voluptas*, Hor. Ep. i. 2, 55. *Spem pretio non emam*, Ter. *Non emam vitiosâ nuce*, Plaut. Mil. ii. 3, 45. *Sextante sal et Romæ et per totam Italiam erat*, Liv. xxix. 37. *Plurimus auro venit honos*, many a place of honour is sold for gold, Ov. Art. Am. ii. 277.

¶ These genitives, *tanti*, *quant*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

So, *Emit homo cupidus tanti, quanti Pythius voluit*, Cic. Off. iii. 14. *Vendo meum non pluris quàm ceteri; fortasse etiam minoris*, Ib. c. 12.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *Parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere*, Cic. *Domus referta vas* Corinthiis, in quibus est authepsa illa, quam tanto pretio nuper mercatus est, Cic. Sex. Rosc. 46. *Pretio minore captivos redimere*, Liv. xxii. 57.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*, Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ov. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emit carè, carius, carissimè; vendè, melius, optimè; malè, pejus; vilius, vilissimè; Valde carè aestimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quàm aestimabat*, Cic. Dom. 44.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*, Liv. xxxviii. 11.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative ; as,

Palleo metu,
Fecit suo more,
Scribo calāmo,

I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolore ; palleescere culpā ; æstuarè dubitatione ; gestire voluptate, vel secundis rebus ; Confectus morbo ; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio ; insignis pietate ; deterior licentiā ; Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater ;* hence *Rex Dei gratiā. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lento gradu ; Acceptus regio apparātu ; Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curvæ senecta pede, Ov. Art. Am. ii. 670. Percutere aliquem secūri, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed ; as, 1. *Solito matrum de more locuta est, Virg. Æn. vii. 357. Magno cum metu ; Hac de causâ ; Præ mærore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument ; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio :* unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab* ; as, *Trajectus ab ense, Ov. Fast. v. 709.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added ; as, 2. *Desinant obsidère cum gladiis curiam, Cic. Cat. I, 13. Ut Vettius in foro cum pugione, et item servi ejus comprehenderentur cum telis, Cic. Att. ii. 24. Ingressus est cum gladio, Id.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of ; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum, Liv. vi. 4. Floruit acumine ingenii, Cic. Acad. iv. 6. Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, &c. Æger pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added ; as, *Templum de marmore, seldom marmoris ; Poculum ex auro factum, Cic.*

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where, or in which.* 2. The place *whither, or to which.* 3. The place *whence, or from which.* 4. The place *by or through which.*

AT or IN a place, is put in the genitive ; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative ; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. *The place WHERE.*

L. When the question is made by *Ubi?* Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

<i>Vixit Romæ,</i>	He lived at Rome.
<i>Mortuus est Londinī,</i>	He died at London.

So, *Romæ nutrirī mihi contigit atque doceri*, Hor. Ep. ii. 2, 41. *Is habitat Milēti*, Ter. Ad. iv. 5, 20. *Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsīs expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat*, Cic. Tusc. iii. 12.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

<i>Habitat Carthagīne,</i>	He dwells at Carthage.
<i>Studuit Parisiis,</i>	He studied at Paris.

So, *Alexander paucis post diebus Babylōne mortuus est*, Cic. Div. i. 23. *Philippus Neapōli est, Lentūlus Puteōlis*, Id. Att. ix. 15. *Quoniam Delphis oracula cessant*, Juv. 6, 555.

OBS. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood, or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, at or near Troy.

OBS. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed; thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*; but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagīne*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagīni*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi?* Thus, *At ego aio hoc fieri in Græcia et Carthagīni*, Plaut. Cas. Prol. 71. *Fuere Sicyōni jamdiu Dionysia*, the feasts of Bacchus were some time ago celebrated at Sicyon, Id. Cist. i. 3, 8; cf. Pseud. iv. 2, 38. *Neglectum Anxūri præsidium*, Liv. v. 8. *Convento Antonio Tibūri*, having met with Antony at Tibur, Cic. Att. xvi. 3. *Nulla Lacedæmōni tam est nobilis vidua, quæ non ad scenam eat mercēde conducta*, Nep. Præf. *Tibūri genitus*, Suet. Cal. 8; add. Id. Claud. 34.—Sometimes, though more rarely, names of towns in the first and second declension are found in the ablative; as, *Rex Tyro decedit*, for *Tyri*, Justin. xviii. 4. *Eadem die, quæ in Italiâ pugnatum est, et Corintho, et Athenis, et Lacedæmōne nunciata est victoria*, Id. xx. 3, fin. Add. Vitruv. iii. 2, 7; Præf. 8, 3.

2. *The place* WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,
Profectus est Athēnas,

He came to Rome.
He went to Athens.

So, *Regūlus Carthaginem rediit*, Cic. Off. iii. 27. *Inde Capuam flectit iter*, Liv. xxiii. 2. *Epistolās Catinam, Tauromenium, Syracūsas commodiūs mittere potero*, Cic. Att. xvi. 11.

OBS. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Hor. Od. iv. 4, 69.

OBS. 2. Names of Towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, the report was carried to Rome, Cic. Fam. xi. 12. *Hæc nunciant domum Albāni*, Liv. i. 23. *Messānam literas dedit*, Cic. Verr. i. 10. *Missique, qui Carthaginem gaudium ingens nunciarent*, Liv. xxix. 32. *Quæ postquam Samum sunt nunciata*, Id. xxxvii. 18.

3. *The place* WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,
Laodicēā iter faciebat,

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicea.

So, *Accepi Romā fasciculum literarum*, Cic. Att. v. 17. *Servium discessisse Athenis molestè tuli*, Id. Fam. vi. 4. *Quæsitis Samo, Ilio, Erythris, per Africam etiam ac Siciliam, et Italicas colonias, carminibus Sibyllæ*, the Sibylline verses being searched for through or at Samos, &c.—Tac. Ann. vi. 12.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Cùm iter per Thebas faceret*, Nep. xvi. 1. *Proconsul provinciam Baticam per Ticinum est petiturus*, Plin. Ep. vii. 16, 3. cf. Liv. xxxi. 22.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet Domi,
Domum revertitur,
Domo arcessitus sum,

He stays at home.
He returns home.
I am called from home.

Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri*,
Rediit rure,
Abiit rus,

He lives in the country.
He is returned from the country.
He is gone to the country.

OBS. 1. *Humi, militiæ, and belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, at home and abroad; *Undæ semper militiæ et domi fuimus*, Ter. Ad. iii. 4, 49. *Qui legitis flores, et humi nascentia fraga*, and strawberries growing on the ground, Virg. E. 3, 92. *Jacet humi*, he lies on the ground.

OBS. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ*, not *domi paternæ*: so, *ad domum paternam*; *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius*, and *alienus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit*, Cic. Tusc. v. 39, 4. *Apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi meæ*, Cic. Fam. xiii. 69. *Nonne mavis sine periculo domi tuæ esse, quàm cum periculo alienæ?* ib. iv. 7. *Me domo meâ expulistis*, Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulistis, Cic. Pis. 7. *Alius alium domos suas invitant*, Sall. Jug. 66. *Add. Liv. ii. 7. Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiam comportant*, Sall. Jug. 76.—* *RUS* and *rure* in the sing. joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *Appropinquante vespere, equum conscendit, et rus urbanum contendit*, sc. *ad*, Justin. xxxi. 2. *Quantumque apud lapidem suburbano rure substiterat*, Tac. Ann. xv. 60;—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *Ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra eritis*, Liv. xxxix. 16.

OBS. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaris*, Cic. Att. i. 12. & ii. 7.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? *Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde? *Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

Qua? *Transiit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

OBS. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Româ*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam, ex Româ, &c.*

PETO always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Ægyptum petere decrevit*, he resolved to go to Egypt, Curt. iv. 1, 27. *Ab Europâ petis Asiam*, Id. vii. 8, 13, 1. *Grues loca calidiora petentes maria transmittunt*, Cic. N. D. ii. 49.

OBS. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæs. B. C. iii. 106. *Cretæ jussit considere Apollo*, Virg. Æn. iii. 162. *Non Libyæ*, for *in Libyâ*; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. Manil. 12. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinoræ ejus memòrat*, for *et in Numidiâ*, Sall. Jug. 33.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat triginta millia, vel triginta millibus passuum,</i>	} The city is thirty miles distant.
<i>Iter vel itinère unius diēi,</i>	
	One day's journey.

OBS. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ; as *longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus* : *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch ; *palmus*, a span, a hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance, is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as *eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

OBS. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denūm pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

OBS. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consēdit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliāre consēdit*, Cic. *Sepultus est ad quintum lapidem*, Nep. 25, 22.

OBS. 4. The *excess* or *difference* of measure and distance is put in the ablative ; as,

Hoc lignum excēdit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 784. *Superat capite et cervicibus altis*, ib. ii. 219. *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando* ? When ? time is put in the ablative ; as,

<i>Venit hora tertiā,</i>	He came at the third hour.
---------------------------	----------------------------

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu* ? How long ? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative ; as,

<i>Mansit paucos dies,</i>	He staid a few days.
<i>Sex mensibus absuit,</i>	He was away six months.

* *Or thus*, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accusative.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia* or *in præsentia*, scil. *tempore*; *in* vel *ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *Ad horam destinatum*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*; *Ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.* for *hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c.*; and *ante*, or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum et viginti, sc. ante. Sicili quotannis tributa confèrent, sc. tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. Verr. ii. 53. *Prope diem, sc. ad, soon. Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus ed ventum erat, expugnatum, sc. post eos dies*, Cæs. B. G. iii. 23. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas, for die tertio ante*, Cic. Fam. iv. 2. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembres*, Id. Cat. i. 3. *Ante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. xlv. 2. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, sc. quam per*, Cic. Flac. 26. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, sc. Cato, for septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep. xxiv. 1.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *Factum est ABHINC biennium*, it was done two years ago, Plaut. Bacch. iii. 2, 4. *Horum pater abhinc duo et viginti annos est mortuus*, Cic. Verr. ii. 9. *Quo tempore? abhinc annos quatuor*, Id. Q. Rosc. 13. *Qui abhinc sexaginta annos occisus foret*, Plaut. Most. ii. 2, 63.—So likewise *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos ante menses, i. e. ante id tempus*, a few months before, Suet. Cæs. 81. *Paucas post horas, a few hours after*, Liv. xxxi. 24.—*Perpaucis ante diebus dederam Q. Mucio literas ad te*, Cic. Fam. iv. 9. *Pecunia recuperata est multis post annis, sc. in*, Id. Flacc. 3.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence, there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mood.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.

<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.
<i>Fœmina quæ,</i>	The woman who.
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.
<i>Vir quem misëror,</i>	} The man whom I pity.
<i>Vir cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>	
<i>Vir cujus me misëret,</i>	} The man whose interest it is, &c.
<i>Vir cujus vel cuja interest, &c.</i>	
<i>Liber quo utor,</i>	The book which I use.
<i>Culpa cujus nos pœnitët,</i>	The fault of which we repent.
<i>nos pœnitët, &c.</i>	

Plural.

<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Fœminæ quæ.</i>
<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulières quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulières quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulières ad quas.</i>
<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, uses to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

OBS. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent

expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo: sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc (arte) se exerceat*, Cic. Tusc. i. 18. *Eunūchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit*, sc. *Eunūchus*, Ter. Eun. iv. 3, 11. Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnīno duo itinēra, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, Cæs. B. G. i. 6. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt quos genus hoc minimē juvat*, for *sunt homines, quos homines*, &c. Hor. Sat. i. 4, 24.

OBS. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixēre chaos, Ov. Met. i. 6. *Est locus in carcēre, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. Cat. 55. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. Leg. i. 7. *Cogito id, quod res est*, Ter. Ad. ii. 1, 52.—If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeium se affligere*, Cic. Att. ii. 19. *Concilia, cœtusque hominum jure sociati, quæ civitates appellantur*, Cic. Somn. Scip. c. 3. *Carcer, quæ Lautumia vocantur*, Id. Verr. v. 55. *Genus hominum, quod Helōta vocatur*, Nep. iv. 3. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui*, for *scelestus*, Ter. Andr. iii. 5, 1. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, scil. *negotia*, Sall. Jug. 41. *Vel virtus tua me, vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliquā parte amicitia puto, facit ut te moneam*, scil. *negotium*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1, 4. *In omni Africā, qui agebant*, for *in omnibus Afris*, Sall. Jug. 89. *Non diffidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset*, for *quod*, ib. 100. *Antea conjuravēre pauci contra rempublicam, de quā*, sc. *conjuracione*, Id. Cat. 18.

OBS. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir qui facio*, scarcely *facit*.

In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man who make, or makes*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus, it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it will be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective ; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum, All men praised my good fortune, who had a son endued with such a disposition, Ter. Andr. i. 1, 70. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words ; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur* ; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. iii. 10. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt*, scil. *tempora*, Cic. Mil. 4.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit* ; *Tyrî tenuère coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Æn. i. 12. cf. v. 159 & 530. Or if once expressed, it is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case ; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt*, for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. Jug. 101. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed ; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote* ; *the man I love*, to-wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent ; as, *Cùm aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuësti*, for *quæ consuësti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consuësti*, Cic. Fam. v. 14. So, *Raptim, quibus quisque poterat, elatis, exibant*, Liv. i. 29 ; cf. iv. 69. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*, Ter. Andr. iv. 1, 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui* ; as, *Liber ejus*, his or her book ; *Vita eorum*, their life, when applied to men ; *Vita earum*, their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives ; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ov. Met. ii. 13. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them ; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest* ; and are often applied to different substantives ; as, *Qualescunque sunt summi civitatis viri, talis est civitas*, Cic. Leg. iii. 14.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals ; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons ; as, *Our Father which art in heaven* ; and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which* ; thus, *The fruit of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste*, &c. Milton. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which* ; as, *This is what he wanted*, that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages ; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so ; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which

is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mood, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid quæris? Librum, sc. quæro. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus*, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Qui fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minimè, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et ed est indutus? Factum*, Ter. Eun. iv. 4, 39. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple like cases and moods; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.*; as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diæ memoriam, Cic. Cat. 3, 11. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*, Id. Tusc. i. 45.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and moods may be coupled together; as,

Interest mea et reipublica, Cic. Fam. ii. 19. *Constitit asse et plaris; Sive Romæ es, sive in Epiro*, Cic. Att. v. 18. *Decius cum se devoværet, et equis*

admisso in mediam aciem irruerat, Cic. Fin. ii. 19. *Vir magni ingenii summâque industriâ*; *Neque per vim, neque insidiis*, Sall. Jug. 7. *Tecum habita*; *nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex*, Pers. 4, fin.

OBS. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

Et legit, et scribit: so, *tum legit, tum scribit*; or, *cum legit, tum scribit*, he both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, whether he reads or writes; *Jacere quâ vera, quâ falsa*; *Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum*, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv. ii. 45.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes qui sunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

OBS. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus*, if you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. Fam. xiv. 5.

So, *Egregiam verò laudem et spolia ampla refertis tuque puerque tuis*, Virg. Æn. iv. 93. *Errâstis, Rulle, vehementer et tu et nonnulli collēgæ tui*, Cic. Rull. i. 7.—Sometimes the verb agrees in person with the nearest substantive; as, *Mihi magnæ curæ est, ut ipse tu, tuique omnes, scire possint, me tibi esse amicissimum*, Cic. Fam. iii. 5.—In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*; but in Latin, the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*; not *tu et ego*. This, however, is not always the case; as, *Pater, ego, fratresque mei,—terrâ marique pro vobis arma tulimus*, Liv. xxxvii. 53, ad fin.

OBS. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural agrees with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, Ter. Eun. iii. 3, 11. *Mulcibëris capti Marsque Venusque dolis*, Ov. Art. Am. ii. 562. But this rule is applicable only to living things.

So also if one or more of the substantives be plural; as, *Domus, uxor, liberi inventi, invito patre*, Ter. Andr. v. 3, 20. *Decem ingenui, decem virgines, patrîmi omnes matrimique, ad id sacrificium adhibiti*, Liv. xxxvii. 3. *Add. Virg. Æn. vii. 574.*—The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam et doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic. Off. i. 1*; where *Athenæ* and *urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substan-

tives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv. xxvii. 4. *Soceri tibi Marsque Venusque contigerant*, for *socer et socrus*, Ov. Met. iii. 132. *Marem feminamque filios dicimus*, Quintil. ix. 3, 63. *Add. Tac. Ann. xi. 38; xii. 4.*

OBS. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural is usually put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall. Cat. 20.

So, *Otium atque divitiæ, quæ prima mortales putant*, ib. 39. *Add. Id. Jug. 38. Favere pietati fideique deos, per quæ populus Romanus ad tantum fastigii venerit*, Liv. xlv. 1. *Add. Id. xxvi. 21; Cic. Fam. vii. 20; Fin. v. 12; N. D. iii. 24.*

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality, or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class under which they may be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*; thus, *Serpens, sitis, ardor, arena, dulcia virtuti*, Lucan, ix. 402. *Credere quæ jubeant, locus est, et nomen, et index*, Ov. Art. Am. iii. 719. *Jura, fidem, superos, unâ calcata ruinâ*, Stat. Achil. i. 403. *Delectabatur (C. Duilius) crebro funâi et tibicine, quæ sibi nullo exemplo privatus sumpserat*, Cic. Sen. 13. *Le-porem, et gallinam, et anserem gustare fas non putant (Britanni); hæc (animalia) tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causâ*, Cæs. B. G. v. 12. So, *Mollia sunt loligo, sepia, polypus, et cetera ejus generis*, Plin. ix. 44, 28.—*Atque hæc, sc. munera, (nempe Eunuchum et ancillam,) qui misit, &c. Ter. Eun. iii. 2, 27. Add. Sil. Ital. ii. 689.*—* Sometimes, in inanimate things, the adjective or participle plural agrees in gender with the substantive singular; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac musicæ juncta fuerunt*, Quintil. i. 10, 17.—*Misericordia in eo (Philippo) ac perfidia pari jure dilectæ*, Justin. ix. 8.

OBS. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Att. iv. 17. *Sociis et rege recepto*, Virg. Æn. i. 553; cf. 583. *Et ego in culpâ sum, et tu*, both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpâ*, both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt*; or *nihil hic deest, nisi carmina*, Virg. E. 8, 67. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men, Cic. Sen. 19. *Quibus ipse meique, ante Larem proprium vescor*, for *vescimur*, Hor. Sat. ii. 6, 65.

OBS. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. Æn. i. 292. The con-

junction is frequently understood; as, *Dem ætas, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. Andr. i. 1, 27. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this Rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*, or *Zeugma*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummòdo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mood; as,

<i>Lego ut discam,</i>	I read that I may learn.
<i>Utinam sapères,</i>	I wish you were wise.

OBS. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mood,—

Whether they be Adjectives, as *quantus*, *qualis*, *quotus*, *quotuplex*, *uter*; Pronouns, as *quis* and *cujas*; Adverbs, as *ubi*, *quò*, *unde*, *qua*, *quorsum*, *quamdiu*, *quamdūdum*, *quamp̄idem*, *quoties*, *cur*, *quare*, *quomobrem*, *num*, *utrūm*, *quomòdo*, *quī*, *ut*, *quàm*, *quantop̄ere*; or Conjunctions, as *ne*, *an*, *anne*, *annon*. Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*. I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit*. *Vides ut altā stet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. Od. i. 9, 1. But these words are sometimes joined with the Indicative; as, *Scio, quid ago*, Plaut. Bacch. i. 1, 45. *Haud scio an amat*, Ter. Ad. iv. 5, 33. *Vide, avaritia quid facit*, Id. Phorm. ii. 3, 11. *Vides, quam turpe est*, Cic. Att. x. 12.

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit*. *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; as, *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur*, &c. Sall. Cat. 57. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So, *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando*, v. *ubi*, &c. are joined with the Indicative or Subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim*, is the same with *dico*, *affirmo*, Cic. Fin. v. 3; de Or. i. 60, & 62; ii. 17; Acad. iv. 25; Leg. i. 6.

So in English, *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *whatever*, *whether*, *or*; also, *so*, *before*, *ere*, *till*, &c. have after them the subjunctive mood; as, *If thou let this man go*; *If thou be the Son of God*; *Although my house be not so*; *Though he slay me*; *Though he fall*, &c.; *Unless he wash his feet*; I will not let thee go, *except thou bless me*; *Except it were given from above*; *Whether it were I or they*; *Whosoever he be*; *Whatever be our fate*, &c. So likewise, *that* expressing the motive or end; *lest*, and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, Let him that standeth take heed *lest he fall*; Beware *that thou bring not my son thither*; *If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke*.

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if*, or *though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how* wisely *soever*, for, *though* he charm, &c.

OBS. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mood; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich*, &c.

OBS. 3. *ETSI*, *TAMETSI*, and *TAMENETSI*, *QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the Indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the Subjunctive: *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the Subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it; as, *Ut queras, non reperies*, Cic. *QUONIAM*, *QUANDO*, *QUANDOQUIDEM*, are usually construed with the Indicative; *SI*, *SIN*, *NE*, *NISI*, *SIQUIDEM*, *QUOD*, and *QUIA*, sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive. *DUM*, for *dummōdo*, provided, has always the Subjunctive; as, *Odērint dum metuant*, Cic. Off. i. 28. And *QUIPPE*, for *nam*, always the Indic.; as, *Quippe vetor fatis*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 39.

OBS. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, though or although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *tam—quam*; *adeo* or *ita—ut*: in English, *as—as* or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, although he is liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante—quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

OBS. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *sine*, *fac*, or *facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. iv. 47; scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, sc. *that*.

OBS. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the

event or thing done ; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Gaudeo quòd legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *adèd, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.* ; as, *Adedne ignarus es consuetudinis nostræ, ut hæc nescias ?* Cic. C. Rabir. 10. *Nullum tam impudens mendacium est, ut teste careat*, Plin. viii. 34, 22. *Vita quidem talis fuit, vel fortunâ vel gloriâ, ut nihil posset accedere*, sc. *ei*, Cic. Am. 3.

OBS. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense ; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it ; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves, ne ducas tu illam ; tu autem, ut ducas*, Ter. Andr. ii. 2, 12. *Ut sis vitâlis metuo*, I fear that you will not be long-lived, Hor. Sat. ii. 1, 60. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not live ;—*ne frater moriatur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative ; as,

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, Better than gold.

So, *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*, Hor. Ep. i. 1, 52. *Nerine Galatæa, thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ, candidior cygnis, hederâ formosior albâ*, Virg. E. 7, 37.

OBS. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative ; as, *O luce magis dilecta sorori*, Virg. Æn. iv. 31.

So, *Purâque magis pellucidâ gemmâ*, sc. *cornua*, Ov. Met. ii. 856. In like manner MINUS ; as, *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*, Ter. Eun. ii. 1, 20. *Novella quoque vetustis minus odorata*, Plin. xxi. 18, 7.—Sometimes the Comparative, and the Positive with *magis*, occur in the same sentence ; *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ*, Ov. Art. Am. i. 457. *Itaque et vina mustis odoratiora, et Silvestria magis omnia sativis*, Plin. ibid.—* The ablative after Comparatives is governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed ; *fortior præ ceteris*, Apul. Met. 8. p. 252.—The Comparative is construed also with *ante* and *præter* ; as, *Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes*, Virg. Æn. i. 347. *Multo præter ceteras altioræ crucem statui jussit*, Suet. Galb. 9.—* We sometimes find a comparison made by these prepositions joined with the positive ; as, *Non tu quidem vacuus molestiis, sed præ nobis beatus*, Cic. Fam. iv. 4. *Formâque ante omnes pulcher Iulus*, Virg. Æn. v. 570. *Ut Argonautas præter omnes candidum Medæa mirata est ducem*, Hor. Epod. 3, 9.

OBS. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the

ablative, the noun is put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. est. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. ab. So, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria*, Liv. xxx. 30. *Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*, Ter. Phorm. iv. 2, 1.

OBS. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plùs*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, scil. *quam*, Cæs. *Plùs quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, he has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. Ad. ii. 1, 46. *Castra ab urbe haud plùs quinque millia passuum locant*, so. *quàm*, Liv. *Capta plus quinque millia hominum*, Liv. xl. 33. *Romani sociique paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt*, Liv. xxxix. 31. *Animalibus, quibus plus quaterni pedes, sanguis nullus*, Plin. xi. 90, 38. *Paulo plus viginti millium alius exercitus fuit*, Liv. x. 38. *Ut decem haud amplius dierum frumentum in horreis fuerit*, Tac. Hist. iv. 52. *Cùm non amplius octingentos equites haberent*, Cæs. B. G. iv. 12. *Capta quatuor millia et octingenti cum equis plus quingentis*, Liv. xl. 32. Add. xxiv. 17.

Quàm is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quàm gratior, Liv. v. 23. *Alius auctiorem se quàm ornatiorem esse vult*, Cic. Opt. gen. Orat. 2. Or the preposition *pro* is added; as, *Prelum atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium, editur*, Liv. xxi. 29. *Majorem quàm pro flatu sonum reddebant*, sc. *silvæ*, Curt. v. 4, 25.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione, spe, æquo, justo, dicto, credibili*; as,

Credibili, opinione major, Cic. Brut. 1. *Credibili fortior*, Ov. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. Cat. 51, 11. *Dicto citius*, Virg. Æn. i. 142. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely, Nep. 2, 1.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil quidquam vidi lætius, for *neminem*, Ter. Ad. iii. 3, 12. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. Brut. 38. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*, Claud. Eutrop. 1, 181. *Intolerabilius nihil est quàm femina dives*, Juv. 6, 460. So, *Quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. Mil. 2. We say, *inferior patri nullâ re*, or *quàm pater*. Also, *inferior ei*; thus, *Padus nulli amnium claritate inferior*, Plin. iii. 20, 16. The Comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque*; *Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

OBS. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better; but here, if we substitute a pronoun

in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, There is none better than *he*; not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c., the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego*, he is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter. Andr. iv. 2, 15.

Obs. 6. The *excess* or *defect* of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference is put in the ablative); as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, he is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, he is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipède minor*, a foot and a half less. *Sesquipède est quàm tu longior*, Plaut. Trin. iv. 2, 58. *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as great again, or a half greater, Cic. Or. 56. *Ter tanto pejor est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*, Plaut. *Quinques tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit, civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the Comparative to increase its force; as *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.*; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, the more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, the better, the happier. *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius*, Cic. Off. i. 19. *Quanto superiores sumus, tanto nos geramus submissius*, ib. 26. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ov. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with Superlatives; as, *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive with a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,</i>	{ The sun rising, or while the sun rises,
	{ darkness flies away.
<i>Opère peracto, ludēmus,</i>	{ Our work being finished, or when our
	{ work is finished, we will play.

So, *Libidine dominante, temperantiæ nullus est locus*, Cic. Sen. 12. *Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute*; *Oppressâ libertate patriæ*;

nihil est quod speremus amplius ; Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto, Cic. Leg. iii. 14. Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris ; et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum, Liv. iv. 18. Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars, ades, Ov. Fast. iii. 1.

OBS. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*, the soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*; 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*; 3. *By conquering the enemy*; 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

OBS. 2. The perfect participles of Deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consēdit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of Common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of Deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of Passive verbs; as, *Romani, adepti libertatem, floruerunt*; or *Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt*. But as the participles of Common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

OBS. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*, Cæsar being general, or under the conduct of Cæsar; *His consuli-bus*, scil. *existentibus*, in their consulship; *Saturno rege*, in the reign of Saturn, Juv. vi. 1. *Saturno regnante*, Ov. Fast. i. 193. *Saturno regna tenente*, Propert. ii. 32, 52. *Rege incolūmi, mens omnibus una est ; amisso, rupere fidem*, Virg. G. iv. 212. *O quàm facile erat orbis imperium occupare, aut mihi Romanis militibus, aut me rege Romanis !* Flor. i. 18, 18. *Invitâ Minervâ*, i. e. *adversante et repugnante naturâ*, Cic. Off. i. 31. So, *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ ; vivis fratribus ; te hortatore ; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*, Liv. xxxi. 39. *Ibi permissio, ut, seu dicere prius, seu adire mallet, ita cœpit tyrannus*, Id. xxxiv. 31.

Tum demum palam facto, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. Ep. i. 10, 50. *Parto quod avēbas*, Id. Sat. i. 1, 94. In such examples *negotium* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ov.

OBS. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis præsentē*, Plaut. Amph. ii. 2, 194. *Absentē nobis*, Ter. Eun. iv. 3, 7. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duce, ad hanc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ov. Amor. ii. 12, 13. *Latos fecit, se consule, fastos*, Lucan. v. 384. *Populo teste fieri credam, quicquid, me conscio, faciam*, Sen. de Vit. Beat. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

OBS. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood; as *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis bene juvantibus arma capite*, Liv. xxi. 43. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosâ libidine paulisper usus, naturæ infirmitas accusatur*, Sall. Jug. 1.

OBS. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*, Cic. Tusc. i. 16. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

OBS. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, he descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The Verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A SPIRARE ad gloriā et laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, *dese*; salutem, *saluti, de salute, to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere, to bequeath*. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE aēs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. v. in eum transferre*, Cic.

RELEGARE tauros in pascua, *to send away, to remove*; ab urbe, *to banish*; rem ad auctores, *to refer*; invidiam rei in auctorem, *to transfer*.

LEVARE metum ejus, & ei, *eum metu, to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliquā re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. sordidam togam induere*, Liv.; vestem cum aliquo, Ter.; fidem, *to break faith, to change sides*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel conciliis, *i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words*, ALIO DIE: Consuli, v. Magistratui, *i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat*, Cic. (Vid. R. A. p. 89.)

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to*

order; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic. (A. 16.)

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, Plaut.; pecuniam alicui, v. apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic.; occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*, Liv. i. 30.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de eā re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic.; legem, *to propose*: hence, UTI ROGAS dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ADROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic.; fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars cæpti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c.; a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in, *v. ad rem, to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, *v. vacat tibi, if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*, Plaut.; jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, *v. se in fugam, in pedes, to flee or fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep.; veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter.; gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruïnam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace,*

sing, fall, &c.; cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic.; aliquid mutuum, *v. utendum, to lend*; pecuniam fœnðri, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic.; multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield*; fabûlam, scripta forâs, *to publish*, Cic.; effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipientem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*, Ter.; litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely lethum alicui, to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, *v. muneri, to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, *v. in militia, to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter.; Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id.; aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum, vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitæque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr.; servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas, secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*, Cic.; Dat ei bibere, Ter.; comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*, Virg. Da mihi, *v. nobis, tell us*, Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go*; solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid*, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party*; iudicio ejus, *to follow*; in sententiâ; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; stare, v. constare animo, *to be in his senses*: Non stat per me, quo minùs pecunia solvatur, *it is not owing to me that, &c.*; multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit, *cost*, Liv. Mihi stat alère morbum desinere, *I am resolved*, Nep.

ADSTARE mense, *to stand by*; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of*; secum, *to be consistent with*, Cic.; liber constitit, v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me*; non constat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio constat, *the sum is right*. Constat, impers. *it is evident, certain, or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXSTARE aquis, *to be above*, Ov.; ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain*, Cic.; sepulchra exstant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, *to press on the vanquished*; rectam viam, *to be in the right way*; currum Marti, *to make speedily*, Virg.; instat factum, *insists that it was done*, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder*.

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform*; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, *to excel*; silentium ei, *to give*; auxilium, *to grant*, Juv.; impensas, *to defray*; iter tutum, *to procure*; se incolūmem, *to preserve*; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, *to shew*; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, *to take on one's self*; præstabo de me, eum facturum, *I will be answerable*. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, *in recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial*, Cic. N. B. Those things were called Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quæ emptor manu caperet,) *the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.*

PRÆSTAT, impers. i. e. *it is better*; præsto esse alicui, adv. *to be present, to assist*; Libri prostant venditales, *the books are exposed for sale*.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near*; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis, & ova, *to sit upon*; stratis, & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in BEO.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, *to have*; gratiam, & gratum, *to have a grateful sense of a favour*; iudicium, *to hold a trial*; honorem ei, *to honour*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.; fidem alicui, *to trust or believe*; curam de, v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office*; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, *to*

have business with; satis, *to be satisfied*; orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a speech*; aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate*; ludibrio, *to mock*; id religioni, *to have a scruple about it*: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi, *to reckon as gain, as an honour, &c.*; se bene, & graviter, *to be well or ill*; se parçè, & duriter, *to live*, Ter.; aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum, v. pro certo,

to know for certain ; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, *v. in despiciatui, to despise* ; excusatum, *to excuse* ; susque deque, *to scorn, to slight* ; Ut res se habet, *stands, is* ; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs* ; Hæc habeo, *v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce. (A. 469.)*

ADHIBERE diligentiam ; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use* ; in convivium, *v. consilium, to admit* ; remedium vulnëri, curationem morbo, *to apply* ; vinum ægrôtis, *to give* ; aures versibus, *to hear with taste* ; cultum et preces diis, *to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass* ; regem, *to choose* ; aliquem salvëre, *to wish one health* ; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced, Cic.*

CEO, DEO, and LEO.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re, *I teach. Doctus, adj. utriusque linguae* ; Latînis et Græcis literis ; Latînè et Græcè ; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid ; vinum aquâ, Plin. ; cuncta sanguine, Tacit. ; sacra profanis, pacem duello, Hor. ; humana divinis, *to mix, Liv.*

VIDERE rem, *v. de re, to see* ; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of, Ter. ; plus, to be more wise, Cic. ; De hoc tu vidëris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see ; visus sum audire, methought I heard ; mihi visus est dicere, he seemed ; Quid tibi videtur ? What think you ? Si tibi videtur, if you please ; videtur fecisse, guilty, &c.*

INVIDERE honorem ei, *v. honori ejus ; ei, vel eum, to envy.*

PROVIDERE, & prospicere id, *to foresee* ; ei, *to provide for* ; in postërum, rei frumentariæ, rem, *v. dere.*

SEDERE ad dextram ejus ; in

equo, *to ride* ; toga bene sedet, *sits* ; Sedet hoc animo mihi, *is fixed, Virg.*

ASSIDERE ei ; Adherbâlem, *to sit by, Sall. Assidet insânô, is near or like to, Hor.*

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree* ; toga dissidet impar, *does not fit, Hor.*

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, *to sit upon* ; locum, Liv. ; in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed.*

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command, Cic. ; exercitum, Italiam, Tac.*

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus ; pugnæ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over.*

PENDERE promissis, ab, *v. ex aliquo, to depend* ; de, ex, ab, & in arbore ; Opera pendent interrupta, *are suspended, Virg.*

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, *v. in nos, threatens.*

SPONDERE, & despondere filiam alicui, *to betrothe.*

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of, Cic. ; animo, & -is, to promise, to hope* ; animum, & -os, *to despair, Liv.*

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer* ; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes* ; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, *v. de pace* ; legem, *to speak in favour of.*

DOLERE casum ejus, de, ab, ex, in, pro re, *to be grieved at* ; dolet mihi cor, *v. hoc dolet cordi meo* ; caput dolet a sole, *is pained.*

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one* ; lex valet, *is in force* ; quid verbum valeat, non video, *signifies* ; valet decem talenta, *or oftener talentis, is worth* ; vale, vel valeas, *farewell ; or ironically, away with you.*

NEO, REO, and VEO.

EMINERE aliquâ re, *vel in aliquâ re, inter omnes* ; super cætera, Liv. ; super utrumque, Hor. *to be eminent, to excel* ; ex aquâ, *v. aquam, super undas, to be above.*

Imminere alicui, to hang over, to threaten; in occasionem, exitio alicuius, to seek, to watch for.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *sc. in, to keep; modum, ordinem, to observe; rem, dicta, lectionem, to understand, to remember; linguam, but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, to be silent; ora, to keep the countenance fixed; secundum locum imperii, to hold, Nep.; jura civium, to enjoy, Cic.; causam, to gain; mare, to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of; terram, portum, metam, montes, to reach; risum, lachrymas, to restrain; se ab accusando, quin accūsset, Cic. Ventus tenet, blows; tenēri legibus, jurejurando, &c. to be bound by; leges tenent eum, bind; tenēri in manifesto furto, to be seized; tenet fama, prevails.*

ABSTINERE maledictis, *v. -a, to abstain; publico, to live retired, Tac.; animum a scelēre, ægrum a cibo, to keep from; jus belli ab aliquo, not to treat rigorously, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, concerns me; crimen ad te pertinet, &c. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, for meus, fratris est, belongs to; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, reach.*

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatūs, *to bear the character; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, to withhold assent; rem in noctem, to defer.*

MANERE apud aliquem, *to stay; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiā, in sententiā, statu suo, &c.; adventum hostium, to expect, Liv.; promissis,*

to stand to, to keep, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, awaits, Hor. Manentingeniasenibus, modo permaneat studium et industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem, *to deserve; benè, malè de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, to serve as a soldier; fustuarium, to be beaten to death.*

HÆRERE latēri, *to stick; tergis, v. in terga hostium, Liv.; curru, Virg.; alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, I am in doubt; Vide, ne hæreas, lest you be at a loss, Cic.*

ADHÆRERE, and *adhærescēre* justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp; bella, to raise; aliquem tribu, to remove a Roman Citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe; e senatu, to degrade a senator; risum, vel jecum alicui, to cause laughter; stomachum ei, to trouble, Cic.*

FAVETE ore, *vel* linguis, *sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen.*

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, *vel* ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid; alicui, to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client; aliquid alicui, Cic.; sibi ab aliquo, vel per aliquem de re aliquā, to get security on; mihi prædibus et chirogrāpho cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veterānis cautum esse volūmus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.*

CONNIVERE ad fulgūra, *Suet. to wink; in hominum sceleribus, to take no notice of, Cic.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fos-

sam, pontem in flumine, in Tibērim, *to make; divortium cum uxore, Cic.; bellum regi, Nep.; se hi-*

ſārem, to show, Ter.; **ſedivitem, miſerum, paup̄rem, to pretend, Cic.**; **ſes alienum, v. contrahere, conſarre, to contract debt**; **animos, to encourage**; **damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to loſe**; **naufragium, to ſuffer**; **ſumptum, to ſpend**; **gratum alicui, to oblige**; **gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault**; **gratiam legis, to diſpenſe with**; **juſta, v. funus alicui, to perform one's funeral rites**; **rem, to make an eſtate**; **pecuniam, divitias ex metallis**; **ſœdus, v. inire, icēre, ferire, percutere, jungere, ſancire, firmare, &c. to make a league**; **moram alicui, to delay**; **verba, to ſpeak**; **audientiam ſibi, Cic.**; **negotium, & facere, to trouble**; **aliquid miſſum, to paſs over**; **aliquem miſſum, to diſmiſs or excuſe**; **ad aliquid, rarely alicui, to be fit or uſeful**; **ratum, to ratify**; **planum, to explain**; **palam ſuis, to make known, Nep.**; **ſtipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to ſerve in the army**; **ſacra, ſacrificium, v. rem divinam, to ſacrifice**; **reum, to impeach**; **fabulā, carmen, verſus, &c. to write a play, &c.**; **copiam conſilii ei, to offer advice**; **copiam, vel poteſtatem dicens legatis, to grant leave**; **fidem, to procure or give credit**; **periculum, to make trial**; **poteſtatem ſui, to expoſe himſelf, Nep.**; **aliquem loquentem, v. loqui, to ſuppoſe or repreſent, Cic.**; **piraticam, ſc. rem, to be a pirate**; **argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an uſurer, a phyſician, &c.**; **verſuram, to contract a new debt to diſcharge an old one, to borrow money at great intereſt, Cic.**; **cum, v. ab aliquo, to ſide with**; **contra, v. adverſus, to oppoſe**; **nomen, v. nomina, to borrow money**; **and alſo, to ſettle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, ſc. pecuniarum, et expenſarum inter ſe conferre**; **nomen in liturā, to write it where ſomething was before, Cic.**; **pedem, v. pedes, to trim the ſails, Virg. Fac ita eſſe, ſup-**

poſe it is ſo; **obvius fieri alicui, to meet**; **ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious**; **equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, ſc. me, ſuppoſe me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.**

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, poenā, morte, leto, &c. to praiſe, honour, &c. to diſgrace, puniſh, &c. Affectus ſetate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finiſh; **orationes, to compoſe, Nep.**; **cibum, to chew**; **argentum, to raiſe, to get**; **alſo to ſpend, Cic.**; **cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain**; **exercitus hoſtium, to deſtroy**; **alterum Curiatium, to kill, Liv. Qui ſtipendiis conſectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had ſerved out their time, Cic.**

DEFICERE animo, to faint; **ab aliquo, to revolt**; **tempus deficit mihi, vel me, fails**; **Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.**

INFICERE ſe vitro, to ſtain; **Infectus, part. ſtained**; **infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny.**

OFFICERE alicui, to hinder or hurt; **Diogēni apicanti, to ſtand betwixt him and the ſun**; **auribus, viſui, to ſtop or obſtruct**; **Umbra terræ ſoli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.**

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, to ſet over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; **in philoſophiā, & progressus facere, to make progress.**

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, to repair; **animum, vires, ſaucios, ſe, jumenta, to reſreſh, to recover.**

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, to be able to bear; **arma, v. vires alicui, to afford**; **Valerius in locum Collatini ſuffectus eſt, was ſubſtituted, Liv. Filius patri ſuffectus, Tac. Oculos ſuffecti ſanguine et igne, ſc. ſecundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.**

SATISFACERE alicui, in, v. de aliquā re, to ſatisfy; **fidei, promiſſo, to perform.**

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchōram, *to cast*.

ADJICERE, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

INJICERE manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OBJICERE se hostibus, in, v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

REJICERE tela in hostes, *to throw back*; iudices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes, v. species generibus, ex quibus emānant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare: odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pompeii, v. fortunas hastæ, vel voci, & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic.; sub hastâ venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias, v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, *to transport*: Marius cum parvâ naviculâ in Africam trajecit, v. trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.*; augurium, v. auspiciū, & agere, *to take an omen*; exemplum de aliquo; locum castris; terram, *to alight*; insulam, summa, sc. loca, *to reach*; spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall.; de republicâ nihil præter gloriam, Nep.; magistratum, *to receive, or enjoy*; virginem Vestalem, *to choose*; amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*; aliquem consilio, perfidiâ, *to catch*; Nec te Troja capit. Virg.

Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*; Altero oculo capitur, *is blind of one eye*; capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep.; binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic.; clamorem, de Socrate, *to hear*; id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter.; rudem, v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene, v. malè, *to treat*; eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum cœgit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep.; rogationem, *to approve the bill*; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem, vel excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem patērâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excēpit, *succeeded*; sic excēpit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee*; gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæs.; lac, *to dry up*, Virg.; alicui id, v. de eâ re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*: se. v. nediem. *to retreat*:

ad domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again*, *to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERĒ, *vel trahere in pejorem partem, to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Hor.

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg.; hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferum; cæteros, Ter.; spumas, *to drive or toss*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt.; culpam suam, *vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone or suffer for*.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, *vel -ne, to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set or place*, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop or halt*, Sall.; in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic.; urbem, *to build*, Ov. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituet, tollet eâdem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ov.; deos pactâ mercêde, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic.; collegium fabrorum, sacra, *to institute, to found*, Plin.; aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs.; sermonem, *to deliver*, Id.; animum ad cogi-

tandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Murænâ dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic.; tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicosque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to substitute or put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE epûlas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel in aliquem, to raise against*.

BO.

SCRIBERE suâ manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, v. ad aliquem; bellum, v. de bello; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, v. -e, *to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare *vel* constituere; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercêde, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis, v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum litera-

rum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Cæsaris iræ, *to favour*, Ov.

CO.

DICERE aliquid, *vel de aliquâ re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad, vel apud aliquem; in aliquem, against; ad aliquid, in answer to; sententiam, to give an opinion; jus, to administer justice, to pronounce sentence; multam ei, to amerce or fine; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people; prodicere, to put it off; causam, to plead; testimonium, to give evidence; non idem loqui est ac dicere, to harangue*, Cic.; sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath.*

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell; servituti, v. in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor; se alicui, to devote himself to one's service; aves non addixerunt, v. abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance; cœnam alicui, v. ad cœnam, to propose supping with one without invitation.*

EDICERE alicui, *to order; delectum, to appoint a levy; prædam militibus, to promise by an edict; justitium, diem comitiis, v. comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint.*

INDICERE bellum, *to proclaim war; justitium, legem sibi, to appoint*, Cic.; cœtus in domus tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv.—Indicare, *to shew; Indictus, an adj. not said; causâ indictâ, vel non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, *vel aliquâ re; fœminis usum purpuræ, to forbid or debar from; ei aquâ et igne, v. aquam et ignem, to ban-*

ish; malè rem gerentibus patribus, bonis interdici solet, Cic.; interdici non poterat socero generi, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, *de aliquâ re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn.*

DUCERE in carcærem, *v. vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; fossam, murum, sulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on*, Virg.; ætatem, diem, *to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab, v. ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, oftener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloriâ*, Plin.; in crimen, Tac.; centesimas sc. usûras, *v. fœnus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent. per annum; binis centesimis fœnorari, to take 24 per cent. per annum*, Cic.; ducere longas voces in fletum, *to draw out*, Virg.; ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv.; ilia, *to pant like a broken-winded horse*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, *ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep.; arcum, to draw in; habēnas, to straiten the reins.*

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, *to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price; Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in, v. ad rem, is of advantage.*

DEDUCERE naves, *to launch; classem in prælium, to bring*, Nep.; equites, *to make to alight*, Liv.; eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home; de sententiâ, Cic.; coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.*

EDUCERE gladium e vaginâ, *to*

draw; *florem Italiae, to lead out*; *copias in aciem, Cic.*; *filium, to educate, oftener educare*; *in astra, to extol, Hor.*; *cælo, Virg.*

INDUCERE *tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic.*; *animum, v. in animum, to persuade himself*; *scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæs.*; *soleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on*; *colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin.*; *nomina, to cancel or rase, to rub out.*

OBducERE *exercitum, to lead against*; *callum dolori, to blunt it*; *sepulchrum sentibus, to cover.*

REDucERE *aliquem in memoriam alicujus, vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance*; *in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile*; *Vallis reducta, retired or low.*

PRoducERE *testes, to bring out*; *funus, to attend*; *sermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue*; *rem in hiemem, to defer*; *servos vendendos, to bring to market.*

SUBducERE *se a custodibus, to steal away*; *naves, to draw up on shore*; *cibum ei, & deducere, to take from*; *summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.*

PARCERE *sibi, labori, to spare, &c.*; *a cædibus, to forbear*; *aurum natis, Virg.*

ASSUESCERE *rei alicui, v. re aliquâ, in, v. ad hoc, to be accustomed*; *mentem pluribus, & assuefacere, Hor.* *Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. So, insuesco rei, v. re*; *insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.*

SCISCERE *legem, to vote, to decree*; *hence plebiscitum.*

ASCISCERE *regium nomen, to assume*; *socios sibi, ad societatem scelëris, to associate*; *ritus peregrinos, to adopt.*

CONSCISCERE *mortem, v. necem sibi, to kill one's self*; *fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.*

DISCERE *aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliquâ re, or without ex, to learn*; *Dediscere,*

to forget what he has learned; *Ediscere, to get by heart.*

DO.

DESCENDERE *de palatio, præsidio, ædibus*; *in forum, curiam, campum*; *ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, to have recourse to, Cic.*

LUdERE *aleâ, v. -am, to play at dice*; *par impar, at even and odd*; *operam, to lose one's labour.*

ALLUDERE *alicui, ad aliquem*; *Colludere ei, cum eo*; *illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo*; *id, to mock.*

EVADERE *insidias, -iis, vel ex, to escape*; *in murum, to mount*; *Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, to what they will turn out*; *Clarus evāsit, became.*

CEDERE *multa multis de suo jure, Cic.* *Bona creditoribus, to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; *alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, to give place*; *vitâ, e vitâ decedere, to die*; *foro, to turn bankrupt*; *Hæreditas cedit mihi, falls to*; *Cedit in proverbium, becomes.*

ACcedERE *oppidum, -do, ad, v. in oppidum, to approach*; *ad conditiones, to agree to*; *Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, to agree with*; *ad Ciceronem, to go to*; *ad rempublicam, to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; *ad amicitiam Philippi, to gain the friendship of, Nep.* *Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, is added, Ter.* *Robur accessit ætati, Cic.* *Animi accessere hosti, Liv.* *Ad corpõris firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep.* *Accedit plurimum pretio*; *huc, eo, accedit quod, is added.*

ANTECEDERE *alicui rei*; *aliquem, rarely alicui, to excel.*

CONCEDERE *ei aliquid, & de aliquo*; *paullum de suo jure*; *tempus ad rem, to grant*; *ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, to retire, to go*; *fato, naturæ, vitâ,*

to die; in sententiam ejus, to come into one's measures; in conditiones, to agree to, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, to depart in the least.

INTERCEDERE legi, to give a negative against, to oppose a law; pecuniam pro aliquo, to become surety; Intercēdit mihi tecum amicitia, v. inter nos, there is, &c.

SUCCEEDERE ei, in locum ejus, to succeed; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, to come up to.

CADERE altē, ab alto, in terram, to fall; causā, formulā, in judicio, & litem perdere, to lose one's cause, to be cast; in, v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c.; in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, a good man is incapable of lying, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genas, to fall at; auribus, v. ad aures, to come to; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, to happen; accēdit in te istud verbum, applies, Ter.

TENDERE vela, to stretch; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. to lay snares; arcum, to bend; iter, cursum, to direct; ad altiora, in cœlum, to aim at; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic.; tibi, Plin.; de hac re, ad hanc rem, to take heed; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, to exert one's self; aliquid ab aliquo, to ask earnestly; inter se; amoris, poet. for cum amore, to strive; causas, sc. inter se, to compare, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, to understand; rem pluribus et luculentioribus verbis, to express;

aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad, v. in rem, to apply: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem, v. litem alicui, v. in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law-suit against one; telum ei, v. in eum, to shoot at; manum, v. digitum in aliquid, to point at: aliquò sc. ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; pœnas, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbōri, de, in, v. ex arbōre, to hang; expectatione, v. suspensum detinēre, to keep in suspense; ædificium, to arch a house; naso adunco, to sneer at, Hor.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, to hide or shut up one's self among books; se domum, rus, &c.; domo, Virg.; in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcērem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close, Ov.; jura, to establish; terrā, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditus præceptori, & studiis, fond of; vino epulisque, engaged in, Nep.; deditā operā, on purpose.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, to publish; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, to sound, sing, &c.; munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a shew of gladiators; nomen, to mention; foetus, to bring forth; extremum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatūs in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

OBDERE possillum foribus, to bolt the door.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, to be-

tray; aliquid postēris, v. memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flammam, interrēgem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter.; exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, *to revise*; animam, v. vitam, *to die*; Latīnē, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo si, &c. *I suppose*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout*.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*; odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop*; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell*.

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ, *to join*; equos currui, *to yoke*; annem ponte, *to make a bridge*.

ADJUNGERE accessionem sedibus, *to build an addition to one's house*; animum ad studia, *to apply*.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ense, *to draw*; frondes, *to lop off*; glandes, baccas, *to beat down*; rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Hor.; littus, *to touch, to brush or graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head*.

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach*; reges, res summas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognitione, affinitate, *to be related to*; forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

FINGERE orationem, *to polish*; oratorem, *to form*; se ad arbitrium

alterius, *to adapt*; Vultus a mente fingitur; lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break*; navem, *to suffer shipwreck*; fœdus, fidem, *to violate*; sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic.; hostem, *to subdue*.

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks*; vitam, *to live*; prædas, *to plunder*; fabulam, *to act a play*; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliquâ re, *to triumph*; nugas, *to trifle*; ambāges, *to beat about the bush*; stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard*; rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent*; causam, *to plead*; de re, *to speak*; radices, *to take root*; cuniculos, *to undermine*; undam, *to raise a steam*; animam, *to be at the last gasp*; alias res, *to be inattentive*; festum diem, natālem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe*; actum, v. rem actam, *to labour in vain*; censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.*; forum, *to hold a court to try causes*; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one*; hence actor, a plaintiff; in hæreditatem, *to claim*; cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before*; decimum agit annum, *he is in his tenth year*; id agitur, *that is the question*; libertas agitur, vel de libertate, *is at stake*; actum est de libertate, *is lost*; actum est, illicet, *all is over*; actum est de pace, *peace was treated about*; cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky or well used*; hoc age, *mind what you are about*. Civitas læta agere, *for erat*, Sall.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad, v. in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per iusjurandum, *to force to enlist*; arbitrum, i. e. agere, vel cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together*; ad militiam, *to force to enlist*; senatum, *to assemble*; in senatum, sc. minis, pignoribus cap-

tis, &c. *to force to attend*; agmen, *to rally, to bring up*; lac, *to curdle*; jus civile diffusum et dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, *to digest, to arrange*.

EXIGERE foras, *to drive out, to divorce*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to require*; sarta tecta, sc. et i. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic.; supplicium de aliquo, *to inflict*; sua nomina, *to demand or call in one's debts*; ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend*; aliquid ad normam, *to try or examine*; columnam ad perpendiculum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight*; monumentum, *to finish*, Hor.; tempus et modum, *to settle*, Virg.; comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back*; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money*; hostes sub imperium, *to reduce*.

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along*; vela, *to furl the sails*; hallitum, *to catch one's breath*; milites, *to enlist*; aliquem in senatum, in Patres, *to choose*; sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege*, Hor.

HO.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, *to prolong*; purpuras, *to spin*; aliquid in religionem, *to scruple*; navem remulco, *to tow*.

DETRAHERE aliquem, *to draw down*; alicui, vel de aliquo, de famâ, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame*; aliquid alicui, *to take by force*; laudem, vel de laudibus; novem partes mulctæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep. 13, 4.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehî in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehî longius. sc. secundo. *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem, v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute suâ; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*, in commûne, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consûlor, *I am consulted*, i. e. *my advice is asked*; mihi consulitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, vel classem, *to land on*; se aliquo, Ter.; ad villam nostram navis appelletur, Cic.; animum ad philosophiam, *to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, rarely eum, *to excel, to surpass*; excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliquâ re, v. in re, *to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de, v. e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to take away the keys from a wife*, i. e. *to divorce*; annulum, v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or the horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxe, e vinculis, a culpâ, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; vinum de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex, v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; necunias mutuas *to borrow* - to

gam virilem, to put on the dress of a man; sibi inimicitias, to get ill will; operam in re, vel in rem insumere, to bestow pains; sumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, I take this upon me.

PREMERE caseum, to make cheese; vocem, to be silent; dolorem corde, to conceal; vestigia ejus, to follow; litus, to come near; pollicem, to save a gladiator by pressing down the thumb; librum in nonum annum, to delay publishing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, to press out; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to translate word for word.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, to imprint.

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere v. retinere, to check.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine, v. re, & habere; castra, to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; insidias alicui; panem convlvis, not ante; personam amici, to lay aside the character of a friend; præmia, to propose; pocula, to stake or lay; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliquâ re, to employ, to bestow; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon; ferocia corda, to lay aside; aliquem in gratiam, v. gratiâ, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.; ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, to paint; saxo, to engrave, Hor.; pecuniam in fœndre, to lay out at interest; templa, to build, Virg. Venti posuere sc. se, are hushed, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

COMPOSERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose; lites, to settle; bellum, to finish by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE, v. ponere togam prætextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy; imperium, & dimittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to set forth or explain; frumentum, to expose to sale, Cic.; pueros, fostus, to expose, to leave to perish, Liv.; exercitum sc. ex navibus in terram, to land.

IMPONERE onus alicui, v. in aliquem; aliquem in equum, to set upon; personam, v. partes duriores ei, to lay a task or duty on one; alicui, to impose on, to deceive, Nep.; honorem ei, to confer; vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep.; manum summam, v. extremam rei alicui, in aliquâ re, to put the last hand to a thing, to finish; pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis, & ad pericula, to expose; pignori, to pledge; manum fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ov.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propose, to set before; edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere; congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, to set a hen; testamentum, v. subjicere, to forge.

CANERE aliquem, to praise; signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle; receptui, rarely -um, to sound a retreat; tibia, to play on the pipe; ad tibiam, to sing to it; palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to spread or cover the couches; equos, to harness; viam, to pave; æquora, to calm, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear; somnos, quietem, to sleep; viam, iter, to go, Virg.; opera alterius, to censure; labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.;

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate*; vocem, v. silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c.; se portis, *to break out*; stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion*; nubem, *to break*, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain*, Cic.; sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter.; rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise*; ex aliquo, & in aliquem, de re aliquâ per tormenta, *to put to the rack*; in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, *forbade a slave to be examined by torture against his master*, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after*; aliquem capitis, v. -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*.

GERERE res, *to perform*; negotium malè, *to manage*; consulatam, *to bear, to manage*; se benè, vel malè, *to behave*; exercitum, *to conduct*, Sall.; morem ei, v. morigerari, *to humour*; civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of*; inimicitias, vel similitatem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against*.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*; Horatium Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations*.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage*.

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuriâ, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitutem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim*.

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely eum*; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romam mutuum mentes de rebus

to make for; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; consulatam, *to seek*; poenas ab aliquo, & repetere, *to punish*.

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum compètit actio, *an action lies against him*, Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bona lege, v. prosèqui lite, *to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind*; altè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppètit, multa suppètunt, *I have*; si vita suppètet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, vel ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; talos, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timorem, *to lay aside*; in acta, *to register, to record*; sanguinem, vel emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timoris, *to shew*; vocem, *to utter, to speak*; habēnas, vel remittere, *to slacken*; manu, & emittere, *to free a slave*; filium emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father*; sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke*; inferias manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods*; rem, vel de re, *to omit*; mitto rem, *I say nothing of fortune*, Ter.; in possessionem bonorum, *to give the possession of the debtor's effects*; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, vel causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose*, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit*; equum immittere, & permittere, *to gallop*; delictum in se, *to commit a fault*; aves non admitterunt, *have not given a favourable omen*, Liv.

COMMITTERE facibus, *to commit*; se alicui, vel in fidem alicujus, *to entrust*; prælium, *to engage*; exercitum pugnæ, rem in casum ancipitis eventus prælîi, *to risk a battle*, Liv.

homines inter se, *to set at variance*, or *by the ears*; rem eo, *to bring to that pass*; gladiatores, pugiles Græcos cum Latinis, *to match or pair*; committere ut, *to cause*; incommoda sua legibus, & judiciis, *to seek redress by law*.

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingēnis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitrato, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement*, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband*; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium, v. repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce*.

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise*; capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow*; divis cætera, *to leave*, Hor.; se in fidem, vel fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, *to let the people decide*; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecuniâ, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; justitium, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, neglects, Sall.

SUBMITTERE fascēs populo, *to lower*; se, v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca, vel ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; cratēram, *to empty*, Virg.; stilum, *to correct*, Hor. (A. 508.) Salus, v. causa in eo

vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, sc. se, *had changed*, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat; Di bene vertant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg.; oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, ostener animadvertere, *to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem venēno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat*; candelâbrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum et receptum, (sc. Dolabellæ consulatium,) intervertit, ad seque transulit, *treacherously withheld*.

PREVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip*; desiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, super eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchōris, ad anchōram, *to ride at anchor*; frigōre, *to be frozen*, Ov. Spes in vellis consistebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliquâ, in rem, vel rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge*.

OBSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still*; sumptui, *to bear*.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versuram, *to pay debt by borrowing*

from another, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise*, or according to others, *to perform*, Ter. Andr. IV. 1, 19; *litem aestimatam, to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. *Votum, to discharge*; *obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, to raise a siege*; *navem, é portu, to set sail*; *epistolam, v. resignare, to break open*; *aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, to*

free from; *solvitur in somnos*, Virg. *Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris nonastricta & devincta, prose*; *solve metus, dismiss*, Virg. Æn. i. 457.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, *vel ora, to break silence*, Virg.; *jura, to violate*; *vectigal, to take off taxes*, Tac.; *in pulvèrem, to reduce to*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex, v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one*; as, Sæpe hoc audiivi de patre, *for ex patre*, Cic. *Audire bene, v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; *rexque paterque audisti, you have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pacationem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c.; in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c.; in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, *scribito, occurs*, Cic.

ADVENIRE, & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, *to get before*, Sall.; rei, Plaut.; tempus, consilia, & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*; ego et frater conveniemus; copie convenient, *will meet together*; convēnit mihi cum fratre de hac re; inter

me et fratrem; inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, *I and my brother are agreed*; sævis inter se convēnit ursis, Juv.; ipsi secum non convēnit, v. ipse, *he is inconsistent*; pax convēnit, v. conventa est, *is agreed upon*; rem conventuram putamus, Cic.; conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus, v. ad pedes conveniunt, *fit, suit*; hoc in illum convēnit; Catillinam interfectum esse convenit, *ought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in manum, *to come into the power of a husband*; the usual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matres-familias. (A. 460.)

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene vel malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him*.

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de, vel in aliquâ re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; So, dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Sen.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery*, Sall.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; sometimes alicui, ad, v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliquâ re, *to speak*.

SEQUI feras, *to follow*; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assēqui, consēqui, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to attain*. Consēqui hæreditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad, v. in summa, *to aim at*; in veltum, in adversum,

contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive*; gradibus, *to ascend*.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni robôris, v. -no -re; ejus opiniois, v. eâ opinione; in maximâ spe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinère, &c.; cum telo, in, v. cum imperio; magno periculo, *vel in periculo*; in tuto; apud se, *in his senses*; sui juris, v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in suâ potestate, *to be at his own disposal*. Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Est in animo, Liv. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quòd, quin, &c. *there is cause*; bene, malè est mihi, *with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*; Quid est tibi? sc. rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. *for si velit, &c.* Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, *I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat, CUI BONO FUEBIT: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADESSE pugnæ, in pugnâ, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present*; alicui, *to favour, to assist*; scribendo, v. esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic.; consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent*; alicui, v. deesse, *to be wanting, not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus funëri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv.; abesse a

persônâ principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep.; paulum, v. parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, v. in convivio, *to be at a feast*; anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus et pater interest, Id. Inter hominem et belluam hoc interest, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

PRÆESSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, quæstioni, *to preside in or at*.

OBSSE ei, *to hurt, to hinder*.

SUPERESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modo vita supersit, sc. mihi, *if I live*; superest ut, *it remains that*.

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus insententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam vel viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, *passes*.

ABIRE magistratu, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *go to the mischief, a form of imprecation*.

ADIRE periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

EXIRE vitâ, e, v. de vitâ, *to die*; *ære alieno*, Cic. Verbum ex ore, Id.; *tela*, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exiërat, *had expired*, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum, *vel ab eo, to gain his favour*: Ineunte ætate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of*; but we seldom say, ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years*.

OBIRE diem edicti, v. auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic.; negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg.; mortem, *vel morte*; diem supremum, *vel diem, to die*.

PRÆIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, v. sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying*, Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, *is past*, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses*.

SUBIRE murum, *vel -o, ad montes, to come up to*; laborem *vel -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into*.

VELLE aliquem, *sc. aliquid, vel conventum, to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny, or refuse*, Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid rectè curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again*, Cic.; nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nol-

lem huc exitum, *sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose, or make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic.; rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum, hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter.; lætitiâ de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend, or declare openly*; aliënâ personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.; manus in prælia, *to engage*, Virg.; acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent, or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic.; animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in, v. erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium, ad, v. in rem, & impendêre, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthium, Nep.; pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, v. ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, *vel cum aliquo, to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc confërunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quintil.

DEFERRE situlam, *vel sitellam, to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ad patrônos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic.; aliquem ambitûs, *de ambitu*,

nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas (*sc. partes*) ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE, *vel transferre rem in annum*: post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter.; pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funère, & cum funère, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cælum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras pecatatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem, *vel* periculum capitis alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicæ suis commōdis, & anteferre, antepōnere, *to prefer*. Prælatum equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomcerium, terminos, *to enlarge*; in me-

dium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem Illo, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum, v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter.; victoriam ab, *vel* ex aliquo, & reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliquâ re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas et expensas; nomina, *vel* summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in, v. inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in, *vel* inter deos, & reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Hor. Od. iii. 5, 27.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum, & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homines*: *Dic mihi, Damæta, cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (eum hominem,) cujum pecus, (est hoc pecus,)* Virg. E. 3, 1. *Abërant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinère*. *Decies sestertiũm*, sc. *centēna millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtīnes*, sc. *morem, v. institutum*, Ter. Andr. iv. 5, 22. *Hodie in ludum occæpi ire literarium, ternas scio jam*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. AMO, Plaut. Merc. ii. 2, 33. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone*: so, *Complecti, respondere, &c. brevi*. *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant*; *Rhodum volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum, v. classicum canere*, sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civica donatus*, sc. *coronâ*: so, *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c.* Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDETON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tectum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*: so, *Abiit, excessit, evāsīt, erūpit*, Cic. Cat. 2, 1. *Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. Æn. iv. 694. *Velis nolis*, sc. *seu*; *plus minus*, for *plus minusve*.

When by a Greek construction, instead of the ablative, an accusative is put after a passive verb, a participle, or an adjective, with (κατά) *secundum* or *quoddam ad* understood, it is called *SYNECDOCHE*; as, *Expleri mentem nequit*, Virg. Æn. i. 713. *Deiphobum videt lacrum crudeliter ora*, ib. vi. 495. *Flores inscripti nomina regum*, Id. E. 4, 106. *Adversum femur traguld graviter ictus*, Liv. xxi. 7. *Qui purgor bilem sub verni temporis horam*, Hor. A. P. 302. (See page 159.) The join-

ing of two different substantives in the same case is by some reckoned a kind of *ellipsis*; having the unusual participle *ENS*, being, or the like understood; which by the ancients was called *EXEPEGESIS*, i. e. *declaratio*, and by the later grammarians, *APPOSITIO*; as, *Anna soror, arbor laurus, Taurus mons, Homērus poēta, Socrātes vir sapientissimus, &c.* *Tulliōla, deliciōla nostrā, tuum munusculum flagitat*, Cic. Att. i. 8. *Tungri, civitas Gallia, fontem habet insignem*, Plin. xxxi. 8. *Coriā oppidum captum*, Liv. ii. 33. *Celtibēri, novus miles, diffugerunt*, Id. xxviii. 2. *Annibal peto pacem*, Id. xxx. 30, prope fin. *Audi tu, populus Albanus*, (al. *populus*, for *popule*; see p. 28.) Id. i. 24, &c.

To the figure *ELLIPSIS* may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; *ANTIPTOSIS*, i. e. the putting of one case for another; *HELLENISM* or *GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the GREEKS; *SYNESIS*, i. e. referring the construction not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.—thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerunt homines) cæsi*, Liv. So, *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum quæ*, scil. *mulier*, Hor. Od. i. 37, 21. *Scelus qui*, sc. *homo*, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. *secundum*, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque legati*; i. e. *Missi legati (et) uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Hor. Sat. i. 5, 28. *Servitia repudiabat, cujus*, scil. *servitii*, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra, quorum*, &c. sc. *hominum*, Id. Jug. 14. *Concursus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optat*, for *ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem*, for *regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for *milites*; *Classis stabat Rhegii*, for *ad Rhegium*, Liv. *Latium Capuæque agro multati*, sc. *homines*, Id. *Utræque formosæ*, sc. *mulieres*, Ov. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delapsus*, sc. *se esse*, Virg. Æn. ii. 377. *Vestras quisque redite domos*, Ov. Ep. 13, 130.

Under the *ELLIPSIS* are comprehended the figures called *Zeugma*, *Syllepsis*, and *Prolepsis*.—1. *ZEUGMA* is, when an adjective or verb, applied to different substantives, agrees with the nearest, and is supplied to the rest; as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algæ est*, Hor. Sat. ii. 5, 8. *Utinam aut hic surdus, aut hæc muta facta sit*, Ter. Andr. iii. 1, 5; cf. Eun. iii. 4, 3.—*Huc ades, ô Melibæ: caper tibi salvus, et hædi*, Virg. E. 7, 9. *Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit*, Id. Æn. i. 16. cf. v. 343. *Pene ille timore, ego risu corruï*, Cic. Q. fr. ii. 10. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esses*, Virg. E. 2, 16. *Clinia serpillum misit, et ego nostrum undè Syrum*, Ter. Heaut. i. 2, 17.—2. *SYLLEPSIS* (i. e. *conceptio seu comprehensio*,) is, when an adjective or verb, added to different substantives, agrees with that which is the more

worthy; that is, with the masculine gender, rather than the feminine; with the first person rather than the second, &c., and with the plural rather than the singular; as, *Attoniti novitate patent, manibusque supinis Concipiunt Baucisque preces, timidusque Philémon*, Ov. Met. viii. 681. *Ut templi tetigere gradus, procumbit uterque Pronus humi*, i. e. Deucalion et Pyrrha, Ov. Met. i. 375. *Miscuimus lacrimas mæstus uterque suas*, i. e. Oenone et Paris, Ov. Ep. 5, 46. *In magnis læsi rebus uterque sumus*, i. e. Phædra et Hippolytus, ib. 4, 114. *Una dolo dicam si femina victa duorum est*, i. e. Venëris et Cupidinis, Virg. Æn. iv. 95. *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*, Cic. Fam. vii. 5. *Ipsæ cum fratre Capuam ad Consules adesse jussi sumus*, Cic. Att. vii. 18. (See page 208.)—*Zeugma*, by some grammarians, is included under *Syllepsis*.—3. *PROLEPSIS* is, when the parts are subjoined to the whole, in different numbers or persons from the whole, without the verb or adjective being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam ciebant; ab Sabînis Mettus Curtius, ab Romanis Hostus Hostilius*, Liv. i. 12. *Exercitus hostium duo, unus ab urbe, alter a Galliâ, obstant*, Sall. Cat. 58. *Ego vapulando, ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus*, Ter. Ad. ii. 2, 5. *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, Tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus*, Virg. E. 5, 1. *Add.* Liv. ix. 29; Virg. E. 7, 2; Ter. Ad. i. 2, 50; Ov. Ep. 13, 130.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est; adest præsens; nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit?* Hor. Ep. i. 3, 15. *Fac me ut sciam*, &c. Ter. Heaut. i. 1, 32. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Id. Ad. v. 8, 35. *Suo sibi succo vivunt*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called *POLYSYNDETON*; as, *Unâ Eurisque Notusque ruunt*, Virg. Æn. i. 85. *Add.* Cic. Manil. 6.

When that which is in reality one, is expressed as if there were two, it is called *HENDIADYS* (ἢ διὰ δύοιν); as, *Patëris libamus et auro*, for *aureis patëris*, Virg. G. ii. 192.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called *PERIPHRAÏSIS*; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. Æn. i. 565. So, *urbs Patavî*, for *Patavium*, ib. 247. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*, Hor. Od. iii. 1, 42; *genus piscium*, for *pisces*, ib. i. 2, 9; *cum flore rosarum*, for *cum rosis*, ib. iii. 29, 3.

The annexing of a syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs, without adding any thing to their signification, unless perhaps a certain emphasis, is called **PARELCON**; as, *egomet, tute, hujusce; agēdum, adēdum; agēsis, vidēsis, capsis; quisnam, ubīnam, numnam, numne, &c.*

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBĀTON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language.—It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided are, *Anastrōphē, Hystēron protēron, Hypallāgē, Synchēsis, Tmesis, and Parenthēsis.*

1. **ANASTRŌPHE** is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii*: for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem, &c.* Virg. *Terram sol facit are, for arefacit*, Lucr. vi. 962.

2. **HYSTĒRON PROTĒRON** is when that is put in the former part of a sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit, for vivit atque valet*, Ter. Heaut. iii. 1, 21. Add. Virg. *Æn.* ii. 353; iii. 662.

3. **HYPALLĀGE** is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros, for dare classes austris*, Virg. *Æn.* iii. 61. Add. E. iii. 43.

4. **SYNCHĒSIS** is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itālī mediis quæ in fluctibus aras; for quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itālī vocant aras*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 109. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ov. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes, scil. oro vos per liberos, &c.* Sall. Jug. 14, ad fin.

5. **TMESIS** is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens, for Septemtriōni*, Virg. G. iii. 381. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere, for quæcunque*, Ter. Andr. i. 5, 28. *Quem sors dierum cunque dabit, lucro appōne, for quemcunque*, Hor. Od. i. 9, 14.

6. **PARENTHĒSIS** is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Titÿre, dum redeo, (brevis est via), pasce capellas*, Virg. E. 9, 23. Add. Hor. Sat. i. 1, 13.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious; but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him tho Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us.—In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of

English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observance of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take, *first*, the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. iii. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences: 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*; 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio), 4. si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me; 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

In translating from Latin into English, the learner at first must be taught to construe the words in their natural order; but after he has made some progress, he should be accustomed to retain the arrangement of the author, unless when some difficulty or obscurity occurs.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur, &c.*; thus,

Vale, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well; Second person singular of the imperative mood, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valéo, valui, valitum, valēre*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third Rule of Syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus*, -a, -um, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 9. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero*, -onis, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo*, -si, -sum, -dēre, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *sua-deo*, -si, -sum, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, fui, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear: Comparative degree, *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2, and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *fōrem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*; thus, *te fore*, Rule 4, or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 6, Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially, in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2, or Rule 5.

Si, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mood, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60, Obs. 2.

Latabere, thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lātor*, *latātus*, *latāri*, to rejoice: Future, *latābor* -abēris or -abēre, -abitur, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -ti, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, -ui, -itum, -ēre, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -ti, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum, -cipere, to instruct, to order; compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cāpio*, cēpi, *captum*, *capere*, to take. The *æ* of the simple verb *capio* is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyse the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these ; Of Cicero ? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero ? *Cicerōne*. A dear son ? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son ? *Cari filii*. O my dear son ? *Mi*, or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons ? *Cariorem filiorum*, &c.

Of thee ? or of you ? *Tui*. With thee or you ? *Te*. Of you ? *Vestrum*, or *vestri*. With you ? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade ? *Persuadēbunt*. I can persuade ? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently, *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded ? *Persuadētur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade ? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded ? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded ? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded ? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi* ;—that he will be persuaded ?—*Ei persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects ; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words, and of thought ; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three ; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*) ; the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*) ; and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style ; as *the diffuse* and *concise* ; *the feeble* and *nervous* ; *the simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition : the style of the

Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies ; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives ; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial Discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner* ; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, of Tacitus, &c.

But what deserves particular attention, is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax : 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity* : 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate*, and *feeble* sentence : 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names :

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word is made use of ; as, *croftus*, for *agellus* ; *rigorosos*, for *rigidus* or *sevērus* ; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody, are transgressed ; as, *charus*, for *carus* ; *stavi*, for *steti* ; *tibīcen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed ; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri* : *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another ; as an *Anglicism* in Latin ; thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *Ego sum scripturus* ; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum* : Or a *La-*

knism in English; thus, *Est sapientior me*, he is wiser than me, *for* than I; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? *for who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*, O descendant of *Æacus*, I say that you may conquer the Romans; *or*, that the Romans may conquer you. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figūræ* or *schemāta*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figūræ verborum*,) and figures of thought, (*figūræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is applied only from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his

anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be described by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, Od. i. 14; where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the Sacred Scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs*, (*Proverbia*, v. *Adagia*); thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, to carry timber into a wood, Hor. Sat. i. 10, 34.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio*); as, *a leaf of paper*, *of gold*, &c.; *the empire* flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregis ipse caper*, Virg. E. 7, 7. *Altum ædificat caput*, Juv. 6, 502. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. Eun. v. 9, 57. *Eurus per Sicūlas* equitavit *undas*, Hor. Od. iv. 4, 43.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper, and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*comprehensio*); as, *Galatēa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. E. 7, 37. *Immò ego Sardōis videar tibi amarior herbis*, ib. 41.

2. **METONYMY** (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes ; but is commonly restricted to the following particulars :—1. When the cause is put for the effect ; or the inventor, for the thing invented ; or the author, for his works ; as, *Boum labores*, for *corn* ; *Mars*, for *war* ; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain* or *bread* ; *Bacchus*, for *wine* ; *Venus*, for *love* ; *Vulcānus*, for *fire* ; thus, *Sine Cerere et Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcānus*, Virg. So a *general* is put for his *army* ; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their works ; *Moses* and the *Prophets*, for their *books* ; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido*, *Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Rubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their pictures.—2. When the effect is put for the cause ; as, *Pallida mors*, *pale death*, because it makes pale ; *atra cura*, &c.—3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary ; as, *Hausit patēram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink* : *Secundam mensam servis dispartit*, i. e. *fercula in mensā*, Nep. (A. 447 & 448.) So, *Roma*, for *Romani* ; *Europe*, for the *Europeans* ; *Heaven*, for the Supreme Being : *Secernit Eurōpen ab Afro*, for *Africā* ; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum* ; *Incolūmi Jove*, for *Capitolio* ; *Janus*, for the temple of Janus, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalēgon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So, *Sergestus*, for *his ship*, Id. *Æn.* v. 272.—4. The sign, for the thing signified ; as, *the crown*, for *royal authority* ; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory* ; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concēdat paci*, Pis. 30. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, Stat. *Sylv.* v. i. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete ; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custōdes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi* ; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles* ; *juventus*, for *juvēnes* ; *vicinia*, for *vicīni* ; *vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ov. *Fast.* i. 560.—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them ; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address* ; as, *habet cor* ;—*vir cordatus*, a man of sense, Plaut. But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom ; thus, *a stout heart* ; *a*

warm heart ; a sound head, &c. So, to have a well-hung tongue, for to speak fluently or with ease, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*) ; thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for to be dead, lost, or absent. So, *Fuimus Troës ; fuit Ilium, et ingens gloria Teucrorum*, i. e. are no more, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 325.

3. *SYNECDOCHE* (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense ; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary ; thus, *Mortāles*, for *homines* : *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arbōris* ; *Priusquam pabūla gustāssent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabūli*, & *flumīnis Xanthi*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 473. *Nat uncta carīna*, for *navis*, ib. iv. 398. *Centum puppes*, a hundred sail, for a hundred ships ; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house ; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines* ; *ungūla*, for *equus* or *equi*, Hor. Sat. i. 1, 114 ; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple ; *Tum foribus divæ*, for in *templo divæ*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 505. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c.—2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary ; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for, in a book of some one of the prophets ; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times.—3. When the materials are put for the things made of them ; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money ; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c. ; *ferrum*, for a sword ; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, Virg. *Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia*, (*pronominatio*) ; as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle* ; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero* ; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil* ; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon* ; *Astu*, for *Athens* ; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country ; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal* ; a *Nero*, for a cruel Prince ; a *Mæcēnas*, for a patron of learning ; as, *Sint Mæcenātes, non deerunt, Flacce, Marōnes*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poëtæ*, Martial. viii. 56, 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrāsis* ; as, *Pelōpis parens*, for *Tantālus* ; *Anjti reus*, for *Socrates* ;

Trojani belli scriptor, for *Homer*; *Chirōnis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Hor. &c.; or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiādes*, for *Ænēas*; *Tyndāris*, -*idis*, for *Helēna*, &c.; or by an epithet; as, *Impiūs reliquit*, for *Ænēas*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 496: sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatālis incestusque judex, famōsus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor. Od. iii. 3, 19.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*, Juv. 2, 40.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM; as, *Satia te sanguine, quem sistsi*, Justin. i. 8. *Hesperiam metire jacens*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 360.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba*; *non indecōro pulvĕre*, for *decōro*, Hor. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrāsis*; as, *Auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Æn.* iii. 56. *Pontus Euxīni falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitālis*, Ov. Trist. iii. 13, 28.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere*: *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. Mil. 10, fin. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrāsis*.

The PERIPHRAISIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopæia*, (*nominis fictio*); as, the *whistling*

of winds, *purling* of streams, *buz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless.—It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other.—These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent; and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Inte-riore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Hor. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer. (A. 453 & 510.)

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of Words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHŌRA*; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. Cat. 1, 1. *Te, dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te decedente canebat,* Virg. G. iv. 465.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTRŌPHE*, or *Conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE*, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus,* Cic. Rull. 2, 9.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vidimus tuam victoriam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. Marcell. 6.

The reverse of the former is called *ANADIPLŌSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit? immo verò etiam in senatum venit,* Cic. Cat. 1, 1;

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANŌDOS*, or *Re-*

gressio; as, *Crudēlis tu quoque mater*; *Crudēlis mater magis, an puer imprōbus ille*? *Imprōbus ille puer, crudēlis tu quoque, mater*, Virg. E. 8, 48.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab infēris*, Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus*, &c. Id. *Me, me, (adsum qui feci,) in me convertite ferrum*, Virg. Æn. ix. 427. *Bella, horrida bella*, ib. vi. 86. *Ibimus, ibimus*, Hor. Od. ii. 17, 10.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX*, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmūlos comparavit*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called *POLYPTOTON*; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas*, Cic. Arch. 6. *Littōra littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprēcōr, arma armis*, Virg. Æn. iv. 628. To this is usually referred what is called *SYNONYMIA*, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*, Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*, Id. And also *EXPOLITIO*, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called *ANTANACLASIS*; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit amari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the *PARONOMASIA*, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium*; *Consul pravo animo et parvo*: *De oratore aratur factus*, Cic. *Inceptio est amentium, haud amantium*, Ter. Andr. i. 3, 13. This is also called a *PUN*.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called *HOMOIOTOTON*, i. e. *similiter eadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called *HOMOIOTELEUTON*, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, et vivere turpiter*, Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are, the *Hyperbōle*, *Prasopopœia*, *Apostrōphe*, *Simile*, *Antithēsis*, &c.

1. *HYPERBOLE* is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as when Virgil speaking of *Polyphēmus* says, *Ipse arduus, altāque pulsat sidera*, Æn. iii. 619. So, *Contracta pisces æquōra sentiunt*, Hor. Od. iii. 1, 33. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. PROSOPOPŒIA, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. Cat. 1, 7. *Virtus sumit aut ponit securē*, Hor. Od. iii. 2, 19. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, &c. Id. iii. 1, 30.

3. APOSTROPHE, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense or reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojæque nunc stares, Priamique aræ alta manēres*, Virg. Æn. ii. 56.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the more striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Cat. 2, 11. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōron*, i. e. *acute dictum*; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. Amic. 7. *Impietate pia est*, Ov. Met. viii. 477. *Num capti potuere capi?* Virg. Æn. vii. 295.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*;) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. Cat. 1, 1. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. Æn. ii. 43. *Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, ib. 69. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minimè*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION, (*Ecphonēsis*); as, *O nomen dulce libertatis!* &c. Cic. Ver. v. 63. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. Cat. 1, 1. *O patria! O divum domus Ilium!* &c. Virg. Æn. ii. 241.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*;) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before

our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision* ; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem vidēre*, &c. Cic. Cat. 4, 6. *Audire magnos jam videor duces*, *Non indecōro pulvĕre sordidos*, Hor. Od. ii. 1, 21. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence ; as, Hannibal *peto pacem*, Liv. xxx. 30. *Proh Jupiter ! ibit hic !* i. e. Æneas, Virg. Æn. iv. 590.

10. EPANORTHŌSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he has last said ; as, *Filium habeo : ah ! quid dixi habere me ? immō habui*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1, 42.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together ; as,

*Faces in castra tulissem,
Implēssemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxēm, memet super ipsa dedissem.*
Virg. Æn. iv. 604.

14. INCREMENTUM, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one member rises above another to the highest ; as, *Facinus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. Ver. v. 66.—When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXĒSIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the *Simile* and the *Climax*.

15. TRANSITION, (*Metabāsis*), is when a speech is abruptly introduced ; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another ; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13, 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used ; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. ; xi. 406, &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense ; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another ; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilēgus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. Verr. 5, 1.—**PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. **ANACONNŌSIS**, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers ; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*.—**LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering ; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. Ligar. 3.—**APOSIOPĒSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete ; as, *Quos ego—sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg. Æn. i. 135.

18. **SENTENTIA**, (*Gnomè*), a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms ; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Sen. *Adeo in teneris consuescere multum est*, Virg. G. ii. 272. *Probitas laudatur et alget*, Juv. 1, 74. *Misera est magni custodia censûs*, Id. 14, 304. *Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv. 8, 20.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers : 2. The *Narrative* or *Explication* : 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics ; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic ; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of Grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of Verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short ; as, *tēndĕrĕ*.

Some syllables are *common*, that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short ; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or, *Antepenult*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long ; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious ; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi* ; *relēgo*, *-ĕre* ; *relēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as,

Mĕus, *altius* : so *nĭhil* ; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fĭo*, unless when followed by *r* ; as, *fĭo*, *fĭebam*, *fĭam* ; *fĭĕri*, *fĭĕrem* ; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fĭĕri quæ posse negabam, Ov. Trist. i. 7, 7.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long ; as, *speciĕi*. So is the first syllable in *ĕer*, *dĭus*, *ĕĕeu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. ; in *Pompĕi*, *Cāi*, and such like words ; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, Hor. Od. ii. 7, 5.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius, unius, ullius, nullius, &c.* to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genitive, is always long, as being contracted for *alius*; *alterius* is always short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danæ, idæ, sophia, symphonia, Simois, Hyades, Geryon, Phaon, Deucalion, Pygmalion, Thebais, &c.*

Often it is long; as, *Lycæon, Machæon, Didymæon*; *Amphion, Arion, Ixion, Orion, Pandion*; *Nais, Laïs, Achæia*; *Briséis, Cadméis*; *Latôus, & Latôis, Myrtôus, Nerëus, Priamëus*; *Achelôius, Minôius*; *Archelâus, Menelâus, Amphiarâus*; *Ænëas, Penëus, Epëus, Acrisio-nëus, Adamantëus, Phœbëus, Gigantëus*; *Darfus, Basillus, Eugenius, Bacchius*; *Cassiopëa, Cæsarëa, Chæronëa, Cytherëa, Galatëa, Laodi-cëa, Medëa, Panthëa, Penelopëa*; *Clio, Enyô, Elegia, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Antiochia, idololatria, litania, politia, &c.* *Læertes, Dêiphôbus, Dêijanira, Trôes, herôes, &c.*

Sometimes it is common; as, *chorea, platea, Malea, Nereides, conopeum, Eôus, &c.* So in foreign words, *Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.*

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphëa, Salmo-nëa, Capharëa, &c.*; but sometimes long; as, *Idomenëa, Iliomëa, Virg.* Instead of *Elëgia, Cythërëa*, we find *Elëgëia, Cythërëia, Ov.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idëa.*

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by POSITION, as it is called*); as,

ârma, fâllo, âxis, gâza, mājor; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijûgus, quadrijûgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants, or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi ferrum, date telâ, scandite muros, Virg. Æn. ix. 37.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;

as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*; thus,

Et primo similis volūcri, mox vera volūcri, Ov. Met. xiii. 667.
Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So, *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebra, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long, because they are derived from *salus, salutis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluc*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nīl, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen*; *it*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*; *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, Cæsar, Eubæa, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ, Virg. *Æn.* v. 186.
Stipitibus duris agitur audibusve præustis, Ib. vii. 524.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

— *cûm vacuus domino præiret Arion*. Stat. Theb. vi. 519.

In English, we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *vēni, vīdi, vici*.

Except *bībi*, *scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *vīsum, cāsum, mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cīeo* ; *lītum*, from *līno* ; *sītum*, from *sīno* ; *stātum*, from *sisto* ; *ītum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first Syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as,

Cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpūli, pēpēri, dīdīci, tūtūdi : except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* ; and when two consonants intervene ; as, *fēfelli, tētendi, pēpendi, mōmordi, &c.*

Other verbs of two syllables, in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present : except *pōsui, pōstūm*, from *pōno* ; *pōtui*, from *possum* ; *sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has one or more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex, rēgis* ; *sermo, sermōnis* ; *interpretēs, interpretīs*. Here *re, mo, pre*, is called the *increase* or *crement* ; and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter, itinēris* ; *anceps, ancipitis*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum* ; *regibus, sermonibus, &c.*

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another ; as, *fructus, fructūi* ; *res, rēi* ; which fall under Rule I.

Nouns of the second declension, which increase, shorten the crement ; as, *tener, tenēri* ; *vir, vīri* ; *duumvir, -vīri* ; *satur, satūri* : except *Iber*, a Spaniard, *Ibēri* ; and its compound *Celtibēri*.

CREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e*, *i*, and *u* short ; as,

Pietātis, honōris ; muliēris, lapīdis, murmūris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *ātis* in the genitive ; as, *dogma, -ātis ; poēma, -ātis.*

O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis* ; as, *cardo, -inis ; virgo, -inis ; Anio, -ēnis ; Cicero, -ōnis.* Gentile or patril nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive ; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis ; Saxo, -ōnis* : so, *Lingōnes, Senōnes, Tentōnes, v. -ōni, Vangiōnes, Vascōnes.* Some are long ; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes.* *Brittones* is common ; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, xi. 21, 9.

I. C. D.

I shortens *itis* ; as, *hydromēli, -itis.* *Ec* lengthens *ēcis* ; as, *halec, -ēcis.*

A noun in D shortens the crement ; as, *David, -idis ; Bogud, -ūdis.* —Ecclesiastical poets often length *Davidis.*

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis* ; as, *sal, sālis ; Hannibal, -ālis ; Hasdrubal, -ālis* ; but neuters lengthen it ; as, *animal, -ālis.*

Sōlis from *sol* is long ; also Hebrew words in *el* ; as, *Michaēl, -ēlis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement ; as, *vigil, -ilis ; consul, -ūlis.*

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it ; as, *Helicon, -ōnis ; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it ; as, *Memnon, -ōnis ; Actæon, -ōnis.*

En shortens *inis* ; as, *flamen, -inis ; tibicen, -inis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN, *ānis* ; as, *Titan, -ānis* : EN, *ēnis* ; as, *Siren, -ēnis* : IN, *inis* ; as, *delphīn, -inis* : YN, *ynis* ; as, *Phorcyn, -ynis.*

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *āris* ; as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following, *bacchar, -āris ; jubar, -āris ; nectar, -āris* : also the adjective *par, pāris*, and its compounds, *impar, -āris, dispar, -āris, &c.*

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive : *Nar, Nāris*, the name of a river ; *fur, fūris ; ver, vēris* : also *Recimer, -ēris ; Byzer, -ēris*, proper names ; and *Ser, Sēris ; Iber, -ēris*, names of peoples or states.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *tēris* ; as, *crater*, -*ēris* ; *character*, -*ēris*. Except *ather*, -*ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *ōris* ; as, *amor*, -*ōris*. Except neuter nouns ; as, *marmor*, -*ōris* ; *aquor*, -*ōris* ; Greek nouns in *tor* ; as, *Hector*, -*ōris* ; *Actor*, -*ōris* ; *rhetor*, -*ōris*. Also *arbor*, -*ōris*, and *memor*, -*ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive : AR, *āris*, masc. ; as, *Cæsar*, -*āris* ; *Hamilcar*, -*āris* ; *lar*, *lāris*. ER, *ēris*, of any gender ; as, *aēr*, *aēris* ; *mulier*, -*ēris* ; *cadāver*, -*ēris* ; *iter*, anciently *itīner*, *itinēris* ; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR, *ūris* ; as, *vultur*, -*ūris* ; *murmur*, -*ūris*. YR, *ŷris* ; as, *Martyr*, -*ŷris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS which have *atis*, lengthen the crement ; as, *pietas*, -*ātis* ; *Mæcēnas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement ; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *ādīs*, *ātis*, and *ānis* ; thus, *Pallas*, -*ādīs* ; *artocreas*, -*eātis* ; *Melas*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So, *vas*, *vādīs* ; *mas*, *māris* : but *vas*, *vāsis*, is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement ; as, *miles*, -*ītis* ; *Ceres*, -*ēris* ; *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locūples*, -*ētis* ; *quies*, -*ētis* ; *mansues*, -*ētis* ; *hæres*, -*ēdis* ; *merces*, -*ēdis* : also Greek nouns ; as, *lebes*, -*ētis* ; *Thales*, -*ētis*.

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement ; as, *lapis*, -*īdis* ; *sanguis*, -*īnis* ; *Phyllis*, -*īdis* ; *cinis*, *cinēris*.

Except *glis*, *glīris* ; and Latin nouns which have *ītis* ; as, *lis*, *lītis* ; *dis*, *dītis* ; *Quiris*, -*ītis* ; *Samnis*, -*ītis*. But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the crement : *Crenis*, -*īdis* ; *Peophis*, -*īdis* ; *Nesis*, -*īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *is* in the nominative ; as, *Salāmis*, or -*in*, *Salamīnis*.

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement ; as, *nepos*, -*ōtis* ; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *bos*, *bōvis* ; *compos*, -*ōtis* ; and *impos*, -*ōtis*.

US.

US shortens the crement ; as, *tempus*, -*ōris* ; *vellus*, -*ēris* ; *tripus*, -*ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis* ; as, *incus*, -*ūdis* ; *jus*, *jūris* ; *salus*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris* ; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis* ; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the Comparative has *ōris* ; as, *melius*, -*ōris*.

YS.

YS shortens *ŷdis* or *ŷdos* ; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdis*, or -*ŷdos* ; and lengthens *ŷnis* ; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive ; as, *calebs*, -*ībis* ; *inops*, -*ōpis* ; *hiems*, *hiēmīs* ; *auceps*, *aucēpis* ;

Dolops, -ōpis; also *anceps*, *ancīpītis*; *biceps*, *bicīpītis*; and similar compounds of *caput*.

Except *Cyclops*, -ōpis; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grȳphis*; *Cercops*, -ōpis; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, -ōpis.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -ītis: so, *sinciput*, -ītis.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjug*, -ūgis; *remex*, -igis; *Allobrox*, -ōgis; *Phryx*, *Phrȳgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, -icis: except *vibex*, v. *vibix*, -icis.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, -icis; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -ūcis; *Syphax*, -ūcis, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *cilicis*, *pīcis*, *forācis*, *nīvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onȳchis*, *Ērȳcis*, *mastix*, -ichis, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich-tree*; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *sandix*, -icis, or -īcis; *Beryx*, -ȳcis, or -ȳcis.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

Musārum, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgibus*, *portūbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the Indicative Active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmīni*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third* increase.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēderunt* and *stēterunt*; and lengthen *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future of the Subjunctive; as, — *transieritis aquas*, Ov. DO, with its compounds, is the only verb of the first conjugation that shortens the first crement, but not the second; as, *dāre*, *dāmus*, *dābam*, &c.; *circumdāre*, *-āmus*, *-ātis*, *-ābam*, *-ābāmus*, *-ābo*, *-ārem*; *-āris*, *-ātur*, &c. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS ON THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULT OF WORDS.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamīdes*, *Atlantiādes*, &c.; unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes*, *Tydīdes*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis*, *Ptolemāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Ænēis*, *Memphitis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerine*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocāis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academicus*, *lepīdus*, *legitīmus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissīmus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *postīcus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fīdes*, is short,) *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īmus*, *prīmus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstīvus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agīlis*, *facīlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis*, *subtīlis*; and names of months; as, *Aprīlis*, *Quīntīlis*, *Sextīlis*. Except *humīlis*, *parīlis*; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatīlis*, *volatīlis*, *umbratīlis*, *plicatīlis*, *fluviatīlis*, *saxatīlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c.; also from adverbs of time, commonly

shorten the penult ; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus* ; *adamantīnus*, *crystallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *pristīnus*, *perendīnus*, *carīnus*, *annotīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long ; as, *agnīnus*, *canīnus*, *leporīnus*, *bīnus*, *trīnus*, *quīnus*, *austrīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM* ; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult ; as, *urceōlus*, *filiōla*, *musæōlum* ; *lectūlus*, *ratiuncūla*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult ; as, *oppidātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affātīm*, *perpētīm*, and *stātīm*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult ; as, *esūrīo*, *esūrīs*, *esūrīt*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable ; as, *ligūrīo*, *ligūrīs* ; *scatūrīo*, *scatūrīs*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult.—*Abdēra*, *Abūdus*, *Adōnis*, *Æsōpus*, *Ætōlus*, *Ahāla*, *Alaricus*, *Alcīdes*, *Am̄yclæ*, *Andronicus*, *Anūbīs*, *Archimēdes*, *Arlarāthes*, *Ariobarzānes*, *Aristīdes*, *Aristobūlus*, *Aristogiton*, *Arpīnum*, *Artabānus* ; *Brachmānes*, *Busīris*, *Buthrōtus* ; *Cethēgus*, *Chalcēdon*, *Cleobūlus*, *Cyrēne*, *Cythēra*, *Curētes* ; *Darīci*, *Demonīcus*, *Diomēdes*, *Diōres*, *Dioscūri* ; *Ebūdes*, *Eriphyle*, *Eubūlus*, *Euclīdes*, *Euphrātes*, *Eumēdes*, *Eurīpus*, *Euxīnus* ; *Gargānus*, *Gætūlus*, *Granīcus* ; *Heliogabālus*, *Henricus*, *Heraclīdes*, *Heraclītus*, *Hippōanax*, *Hispānus* ; *Irēne* ; *Lacýdes*, *Latōna*, *Leucāta*, *Lugdūnum*, *Lycōras* ; *Mandāne*, *Mausōlus*, *Maximīnus*, *Meleāger*, *Messāla*, *Messāna*, *Milētus* ; *Nasica*, *Nicānor*, *Nicētas* ; *Pachynus*, *Pandōra*, *Pelōris*, & -us, *Pharsālus*, *Phœnice*, *Polītes*, *Polyclētus*, *Polynīces*, *Priāpus* ; *Sarpēdon*, *Serāpis*, *Sinōpe*, *Stratonīce*, *Stymphālus*, *Suffētes* ; *Tigrānes*, *Thessalonīca* ; *Verōna*, *Veronīca*.

The following are short.—*Amāthus*, *Amphipōlis*, *Anabāsīs*, *Anticyra*, *Antigōnus*, & -ne, *Antilōchus*, *Antiōchus*, *Antiōpa*, *Antīpas*, *Antipāter*, *Antiphānes*, *Antiphātes*, *Antiphilla*, *Antīphon*, *Anýtus*, *Apūlus*, *Areopāgus*, *Arimīnum*, *Armēnus*, *Athēsis*, *Attālus*, *Atlica* ; *Bitūrix*, *Bructēri* ; *Calāber*, *Callicrātes*, *Callistrātus*, *Candāce*, *Cantāber*, *Carneādes*, *Chœrīlus*, *Chrysostōmus*, *Cleombrōtus*, *Cleomēnes*, *Corýcos*, *Constantinopōlis*, *Cratērus*, *Cratylus*, *Cremēra*, *Crustumēri*, *Cybēle*, *Cyclādes*, *Cyzicus* ; *Dalmātæ*, *Damōcles*, *Dardānus*, *Dejōces*, *Dejotārus*, *Demerītus*, *Demīpho*, *Didymus*, *Diogēnes*, *Drepānum*, *Dumnōrix* ; *Empedōcles*, *Ephēsus*, *Evergētes*, *Eumēnes*, *Eurymēdon*, *Euripylus* ; *Fucīnus* ; *Geryōnes*, *Gyārus* ; *Hecyra*, *Heliopōlis*, *Hermiōne*, *Herodōtus* ; *Hesiōdus*, *Hesiōne*, *Hippocrātes*, *Hippotāmos*, *Hypāta*, *Hypānis* ; *Icārus*, *Iceātas*, *Illyris*, *Iphītus*, *Ismārus*, *Ithāca* ; *Laodice*, *Laomēdon*, *Lampsācus*, *Lamyrus*, *Lapīthæ*, *Leucretīlis*, *Libānus*, *Lipāre*, v. -a, *Lysimāchus*, *Longimānus* ; *Marāthon*, *Mænālus*, *Marmarīca*, *Massa-*

gētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Mellitus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutina, Mycōnus; Neōcles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphāle; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pisistrātus, Polydāmas, Polyxēna, Porsēna or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteōli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmātæ, Sarsina, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, & -a, Seriphos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongyle, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophīlus, Tomýris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zollus, Zopýrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*, Lucan. *Batāvi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuītus*, Hor. *Fortuītus*, Mart. Some make *fortuītus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuītus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă*, *templă*, *Tydeă*, *lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musă*, *Ēnēă*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Ēnēă*, *O Pallă*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *amă*, *frustră*, *prætereă*, *ergă*, *intră*.

Exc. *Ită*, *quiă*, *ejă*, *posteă*, *pută*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra*, *ultra*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintă*, &c. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as, *Natě*, *sedilě*, *ipsě*, *currě*, *possě*, *nempě*, *antě*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mě*, *tě*, *sě*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quě*, *vě*, *ně*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptě*, *cě*, *tě*; as, *suaptě*, *hujuscě*, *tutě*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long; as, *Calliōpě*, *Anchisě*, *fidě*. So *rě* and *diě*, with their compounds, *quarě*, *hodiě*, *pridiě*, *postridiě*, *quotidiě*; also

Greek nouns which want the singular, *ceťē, melē, Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *docē, manē*; but *cave, vale, and vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē*. To these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē*. But *benē, malē, infernē, and supernē*, are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Pallādi, Minoīdi*.

Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also common: so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicūtī, sicūbī, and necūbī*, are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *virgo, amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative singular of the second declension are long; as, *librō, dominō*; also Greek nouns; as, *Didō, Sapphō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paubō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, idcircō, citrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short: *egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *vultū; molŷ*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short ; as, *ăb, apŭd, seměl, precôr, capŭt*.

The following words are long : *sāl, sōl, nil* ; *pār*, and its compounds, *impār, dispār, &c.* ; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr* ; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive ; as, *cratēr, vēr, Ibēr* ; likewise *aēr, æthēr* : to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb, Daniël* : but *David, Bogud, &c.* are common.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short ; as, *Militān octo, Ennius*. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *milit' octo* ; except in compound words ; as, *circŭmāgo, circŭmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. *C and N*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *āc, sīc, illŭc* ; *ēn, splēn, nōn, &c.*

So Greek nouns in *n* ; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn* ; *Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn* ; *Lacedæmōn, &c.*

The following words are short : *nēc* and *donēc* : *forsitān, ĩn, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn* ; likewise nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive ; as, *carmēn, crimēn* ; also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on*, when written with a small *o* (*ο μικρόν*) ; as, *Iliōn, Pylōn, Erotiōn* ; and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short ; as, *Maiān, Æginān, Orpheōn, Alexīn, Ibīn, chelyñ* : so the dative plural in *sin* ; as, *Arcāsīn, Troāsīn*.

The pronoun *hic*, and the verb *fac*, are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *mās, quiēs, bonōs*.

The following words are short : *anās, ěs* from *sum*, and *penēs* ; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs* and *impōs* ;

also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations ; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōās*, *Phrygēs*, *Arcādōs*, *Tenēdōs*, *Mēlōs*, &c. ; and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short ; as, *alēs*, *hebēs*, *obsēs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Turrīs, *legīs*, *legimūs*, *annūs*, *Capŷs*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long ; as, *pennīs*, *librīs*, *nobīs*, *omnīs* for *omnes*, *fructūs*, *manūs* : also the genitive singular of the fourth declension ; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dative and ablative plural is short ; as, *floribūs*, *fructibūs*, *rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is*, which have the genitive in *ītis*, *īnis*, or *entis*, are long ; as, *lis*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, *Simoīs*. To these add the adverbs *grātis* and *forīs* ; the noun *glīs*, and *vis*, whether it be a noun or a verb ; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītis* ; as, *audīs*, *abīs*, *possīs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, *Fast.* i. 17 ; but is always shortened by Horace, *Od.* iv. 7, 20 ; *Sat.* i. 4, 41 ; ii. 3, 220 ; ii. 6, 39 ; *A. P.* 47.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grūs*, *sūs* : also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ōdis* ; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *Amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o* ; as, *Cliūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthūs* :—so *Iēsūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcŷs* or *Phorcŷn*, and *Trachŷs* or *Trachŷn*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common ;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COM- POUND WORDS.

1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

Āmicus,	from āmo.	Decōro,	from decus, -ōris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,	exul, -ūlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus,	pāveo.
Auditor,	audītum.	Quirīto,	Quiris, -ītis.
Auspīcor,	auspex, -īcis.	Radīcītus,	radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,	sospes, -ītis.
Compēlitor,	compēlītum.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,	māter.
Castōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.	lēgo.
Decōrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.	lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, from dēcem.	Suspīcio, from suspīcor.	Mōbilis, from mōveo.
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmanus, hōmo.	Sēcūs, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo.
Rēgula, rēgo.	Pēnuria, pēnus.	Vox, vōcis, vōco, &c.

2. Short from long.

Ārena and ārista, from āreo.	Lūcerna, from lūceo.
Nōta and nōto, nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis. dūco.
Vādum, vādo.	Stābilis, stābam.
Fīdes, fīdo.	Dītio, dis, dītis.
Sōpor, sōpio.	Quāsillus, quālus, &c.

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *ēnōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exsūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from

diffindo, and *diffidit* from *diffido* ; *indico -āre*, and *indico -ēre* ; *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno* ; *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect ; so, *exēdit* and *exēdit* ; *devēnit* and *devēnit* ; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus* ; *reperimus* and *reperimus* ; *effūgit* and *effugit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity ; as, *incido*, from *in* and *cādo* ; *incido*, from *in* and *cādo* ; *suffoco*, from *sub* and *fauz*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule ; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējero*, *pējero*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpitus* ; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dico*, *hilum*, and *sōpio* : *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long ; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Obs. 1. The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short ; as, *prōphēta*, *prōlōgus* : *PRO* in Latin words is long ; as, *prōdo*, *prōmitto*, &c. ; but it is short in the following words : *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage : *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful : *propāgo*, to propagate ; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Obs. 2. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long ; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello* : except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short ; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfēro* : except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Obs. 3. *I* and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word, are usually shortened ; as, *Capricornus*, *omnipōtens*, *agricōla*, *significo*, *biformis*, *aliger*, *Trīvia*, *tubicen*, *vaticinor*, *architectus*, *bimēter*, *trimēter*, &c. ; *duōdecim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, *Arctōphylax*, *Argōnauta*, *bibliōthēca*, *philōsōphus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases ; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. ; and when the compounding words may be taken separately ; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrifacio*, *siquis*, &c. ;—or when a contraction is made by *Crasis* or *Syncōpē* ; as, *trigæ*, for *trijūgæ* ; *ilicet*, for *ire licet*, &c.—So in the compounds of *dies* ; as, *bīduum*, *trīduum*,

meridies, pridie, postridie; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotidie* & *quotidianus*. *Idem* in the masculine is long, (in the neuter short); also *ubique, ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

O is lengthened in the compounds of *intro, retro, contro*, and *quando*; as, *intrōduco, intrōmitto, retrōcedo, retrōgrādus, contrōversus, contrōversia, quandōque, quandōcunque*; but *quandōquidem* has the second syllable short. O is also long in *aliōquin, ceterōquin, utrōbique*: so likewise in Greek words, written with a large o, or ο *μύα*; as, *geōmetra, Minōtaurus, lagōpus*.

Obs. 4. A in the former compounding part of a word is long; as, *quāre, quāpropter, quācunque*: so, *trādo, trādūco, trāno* for *transdo*, &c. *Eādem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *eādem*.

E is short; as, *nēfas, nēfastus, nēfandus, nēfarius, nēque nēqueo; trēddēim, trēcenti, ēquidem, sēlibra, valēdīco, madēfacio, tepēfacio, patēfacio, &c.; hujuscēmōdī, ejuscēmōdī*.—Except *sēddēim, sēmōdius, nēquis, nēquam, nēquitia, nēquando, nēmo, crēdo, mēmēt, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum; venēficus, vidēlicet*.

U also is short; as, *dūcenti, dūpondium; quadrupes, centūplam, Trojūgēna, cornūpēta*: but *jūdico* is long.—Y likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Polýdōrus, Polýdamas, Polýphēmus, dorýphōrus*.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony or a uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsīs*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute, grave, and circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [']; as, *prósēquor, prósecute*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone, and is thus marked [˘]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is there-

fore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquò, continuò, doctè, und,* &c., to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So, *poëtà, glorià*, in the ablative; *fructûs, tumultûs*, in the genitive; *nostrûm, vestrûm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*; *ergò*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompilî*, for *Pompilii*; *amâris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A **VERSE** is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it has its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables.—When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two Syllables.

Spondëus, consists of two long; as, *omnēs*.

Pyrrhichius, two short; as, *dëus*.

Iambus, a short and a long; as, *amāns*.

Trochæus or *Chorëus*, a long and a short; as, *sërvûs*.

2. Feet of three Syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short; as, *scribërë*.

Anapæstus, two short and a long; as, *pïëtās*.

Amphimæcer, a long, a short, and a long; as, *cārītās*.

Tribrächys, three short; as, *däminûs*.

The following are not so much used :

Molossus,	<i>dēlēctānt.</i>	Antispastus,	<i>Ālēxāndēr.</i>
Amphibrāchys,	<i>hōnōrē.</i>	Ionīcus minor,	<i>prōpērābānt.</i>
Bacchius,	<i>dōlōrēs.</i>	Ionīcus major,	<i>cālcārībūs.</i>
Antibacchius,	<i>pēlluntūr.</i>	Pæon primus,	<i>tēmpōribūs.</i>
3. Feet of four Syllables.		Pæon secundus,	<i>pōtēntiā</i>
Proceleusmaticus,	<i>hōmīnībūs.</i>	Pæon tertius,	<i>ānimātūs.</i>
Dispondēus,	<i>ōrātōrēs.</i>	Pæon quartus,	<i>cēlērītās.</i>
Dijambus,	<i>āmānitās.</i>	Epitritus primus,	<i>vōlūptātēs.</i>
Choriambus,	<i>pōntificēs.</i>	Epitritus secundus,	<i>pænītēntēs.</i>
Dichorēus,	<i>Cāntilēnā.</i>	Epitritus tertius,	<i>dīscōrdiās.</i>
		Epitritus quartus,	<i>fōrtūnātūs.</i>

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee: all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdērē | quæ vël- | lēm cālā- | mō pēr- | mīst ā- | grēstī. Virg.
Infān- | dūm, Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place; whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvis | Incrē- | mēntūm. Virg.

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it, so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omniā | Mērcūrī- | ō almi- | lis vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque,
Et flavos crines ————— Virg.

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. Virg.
Pinguis et ingratus premeretur caseus urbi. Id.

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. Virg.
Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. Id.
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. Id.
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. Id.

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse, is the *CÆSURA*.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vī jā-m-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*; when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*; when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimēris*; and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneemimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-li fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō. Virg.

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the *penthemim*; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of

the voice, in reading an hexameter verse thus composed; whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. Virg.

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse depends, in a great measure, on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*.—Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Römæ mœniâ terrûit impīgēr Hännibāl ārmis. Ennius.

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense.—All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth an anapæstus; as,

Nātū | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quī- | quē sūæ. Propert.
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs in ōm- | nē mēis. Ov.

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemistichs or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a *cæsura*; the latter always of two dactyles, and another *cæsura*; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ.
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs in | ōmnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet ; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius ; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībūs. Hor. Od. i. 1, 1.

But this verse may be more properly measured thus : in the first place, a spondee ; in the second, a dactyle ; then a cæsura ; and after that two dactyles ; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet : a spondee, a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius ; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. Hor. Od. i. 3, 5.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles ; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC AND ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet ; viz. a trochee, a spondee, dactyle, and two trochees ; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. Hor. Od. i. 22, 1.

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and a spondee ; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. Hor. ib. v. 20.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet : a spondee, a dactyle, and a spondee ; thus,

Nigrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs. Hor. Od. i. 5, 7.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet ; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees ; as,

Sūmamūm | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptēa. Mart. x. 47, 13.

8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet : a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles ; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | sē | nēscīā | sōrdīdē,
Intā | mīnā- | tīs | fūlgēt hō- | nōribūs. Hor. Od. iii. 2, 17.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or an iambus ; in the second and fourth, always an iambus ; and in the end, a cæsura ; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. Hor. ib.

10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet ; namely, two dactyles, and two trochees ; as,

Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūrēs. Ib.

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist.—All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured ; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimēter* ; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse ; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quatrenarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Origi-

nally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, Īnār- | sīt sē- | stūō- | sīūs. Hor.

Trimeter, Sūs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mǎ vī- | rībūs | rūīt. Id.

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places ; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth ; for the last foot must always be an iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs. Hor.

Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. Id.

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlē- | stī rūī- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tēris. Id.

Pāvidūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ād- | vēnām | lāquēō | grūēm. Id.

Ālītī- | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd' Hē- | ctōrēm. Id.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1. **SYNALÆPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel ; as,

Conticuere omnes, intenteque ora tenebant. Virg.

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected ; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei* ; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas ! Virg.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened ; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.

Credimus ? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt ? Id.

Victor apud rapidum Sîmoënta sub Illo alto. Virg.
 Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. Id.
 Glauco et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ. Id.

2. **ECTHLIPSIS** is when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel ; as,

O curas hominum ! O quantum est in rebus inane ! Pers.
 thus,

O cū- | rās hōml- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst in | rēbūs in- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthipsis are found at the end of the verse ; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
 Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.
 Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
 Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. Id.

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line ; thus, *q't' Adspicit ; r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNÆRĒSIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis* ; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phæëthon*. So *eī* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei* ; *uī* in *huic*, *cui* ; *oī* in *proinde* ; *ēā* in *aureā* ; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. Ov.
 Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—Virg.
 Filius huic contrā, torquet qui sidera mundi. Id.
 Aureā percussum virgā, versumque venenis. Id.

So in *antehac*, *eādem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semi-homo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. ; as,

Unā eādemque viā sanguisque animusque ferentur. Virg.
 Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. Id.
 Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. Hor.
 Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulentia deerit. Virg.
 Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. Hor.
 Te semper anteit sæva Necessitas. *Alcæic*, Hor. Od. i. 35, 17
 Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. Virg.
 Cum refluit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. Id.
 Inde, ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. Id.
 Bis patriæ cecidêre manus : quin protinus omnia. Id.
 Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. Id.
 Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. Virg.

Flaviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. Virg.
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. Id.
 Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. Ov.

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel ; as in *genva*, *tenvis*, *arjētat*, *tenvia*, *abjēte*, *pitvita* ; *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus* ; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. ; as,

Propterea, quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenuis. Lucr.
 Genva labant, gelidus concrevit frigore sanguis. Virg.
 Arjetat in portas, et duros objice postes. Id.
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. Id.
 Ædificant, sectæque intexunt abjete costas. Id.
 Præciquè sanus, nisa cum pitvita molesta est. Hor.
 Parjetibusque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. Virg.
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati ? Hor.

4. **DIÆRĒSIS** divides one syllable into two ; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ* ; *Troïæ*, for *Trojæ* ; *Persëus*, for *Perseus* ; *miliūs*, for *milvus* ; *solūit*, for *solvit* ; *volūit*, for *volvit* ; *aquæ*, *süetus*, *süasit*, *Süevos*, *relangūit*, *reliquās*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. ; as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. Virg.
 Stamina non ulli dissolüenda Deo. *Pentam.* Tibull.
 Debuerant fusos evoluïsse suos. Id. Ov.
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. Lucr.
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque süetæ. Hor.
 Atque alios alii inident, Veneremque süadent. Lucr.
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Süevos. Lucan.
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangūit ore. Ov.
 Reliquās tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. Lucr.

5. **SYSTÖLE** is when a long syllable is made short ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

Matri longa decem tülērunt fastidia menses. Virg. E. 4, 61.

6. **DIASTÖLE** is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse ;

Confidant, si tantus amör, et mœnia condant. Virg. Æn. xi. 323.

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called **PROSTHĒSIS** ; as, *gnavus*, for *navus* ;

tetŭli, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHĒSIS ; as, *relligio*, for *religio* ; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGŌGE ; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHERĒSIS ; as, *natus*, for *gnatus* ; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant* : if from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCŌPE ; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti* ; *deŭm*, for *deorum* : if from the end, APOCŌPE ; as, *viden'*, for *videsne* ; *Antōnī*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHĒSIS ; as, *pistris*, for *pristis* ; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHĒSIS ; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum* ; *olli*, for *illi* ; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poëma* vel *Carmen*).

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM ; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION ; in praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN ; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM ; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE ; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE ; whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems*. A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE ; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM ; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an Epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC ; as the following on our Saviour :—

I nter cuncta micans	I gniti sidera cæl	I,
E xpellit tenebras	E toto Phæbus ut orb	E ;
S ic cæcas removet	S V S caliginis umbra	S,
V ivificansque simul	V ero præcordia mot	V,
S olem justitia	S eesse probat esse beati	S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixed*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle), and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the Eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixed* kind is where the Poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC Poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles, in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy, in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man, in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of Poetry, as of Prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphoses, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse; Plantus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter Poems, particularly in those which are called Lyric Poems, as the Odes of Horace, and, in modern times, the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A Poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON, sc. *poema* v. *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICŌLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICŌLON DISTRŌPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiæcum*.) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegeia, solve capillos;

Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ov.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrōphon*; when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrōphon*; as when, after three *Sapphic* verses, an *Adonian* verse is subjoined:

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. Hor.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrōphon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetrastrōphon*; as when, after two greater dactylic alcaic verses, are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic; which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ. Hor.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See No. 3, p. 275. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus. Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic Trimeter*, No. 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, No. 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 11.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No. 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, and anapæstus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyle; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimæcer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iamboes and a syllable: in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapæstus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, No. 4 and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, *Dactylico-Trochaic*, consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last; every second verse, *Iambic Archilochian*, consisting of an iambus or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsure, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28, Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimæcer; every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, *Trochaic*, consisting of three trochees and a cæsure; or an amphimæcer, and two iamboes. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, No. 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Dactylic Ar-*

chilochian, consisting of two dactyles and a cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimēter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimēter*, No. 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimēter*; the second, *Sapphic*, consisting of two dactyles, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondeus, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, No. 2, and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexamēter*; the second, *Iambic Dimēter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.

10. *Hexamēter* and *Iambic Trimēter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, No. 5, and the second, *Iambic Dimēter*, No. 11. Buch. Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimēter* and *Pentamēter*. Buch. Ps. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexamēter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable, or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexamēter* and *Pentamēter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, *Trochaic*: three trochees and a syllable; admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c.; the second line, *Iambic Dimēter*, No. 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, No. 5. Hor. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Seculare*.—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, and the fourth,

Glyconian. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyle, &c.; the third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No. 4; admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, No. 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, No. 3; the third line, *Pherecratian*, No. 6; and the fourth, *Glyconian*, No. 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No. 8; the third, *Archilochian Iambic*, No. 9; the fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, No. 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third, a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyles and a syllable. Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one, or inverted; as Buch. Ps. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or

short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank Verse*.

In Rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three, in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In Blank Verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse, we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately;—and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ălōft, crēāte*: or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *hōlj, lōftj*. In verses of the former kind, the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. LAMBIIC MEASURE COMPRISES VERSES,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet*; as,

With ravish'd ears,
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet*; as,

Aloft in awful state,
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet*; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,
No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Horace.*

4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*; which is the common measure of Heroic and Tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,
And still I seem to tread on classic ground;
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse; thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join }
The varying verse, the full resounding line, } *Pope.*
The long majestic march, and energy divine. }

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet; but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, } *Dryden.*
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. }

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine restor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord; } *Rowe.*
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. }

Obs. 2. The more strictly Iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapæstus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

The manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *o'er* for *over*; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE COMPRISES VERSES,

1. Of three syllables; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of five syllables; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. *Of seven syllables ; as,*

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, i. e. a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
'Till the roofs all around,
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
How the nightingales warble their loves ! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The sword or the dart
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c. *Shenstone.*

I wó'd to the Muses my time and my care,
Since néither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric Odes*. Of this kind are

several of the poems of Cowley. But in the Odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here, for the most part, the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys ;
Transported with the view, I'm lost
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod ;
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank Verse.

'Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why, take it ;
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deploing,
All on a rock reclin'd.

Gay.

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
 Prais'd the sly musician's art ;
 Love, his light disguise rejecting,
 Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
 Bards delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother ;
 Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*
 Now with furies surrounded,
 Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in Blank Verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country ;
 Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*
 The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
 Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX I.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman month.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought.—The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation.

of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel lines* (||); *Paragraph* (§); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* []; *Brace* (}); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (^); which last is used only in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a smaller letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*; C. *Caius*; D. *Decimus*; L. *Lucius*; M. *Marcus*; P. *Publius*; Q. *Quinctius*; T. *Titus*. So, F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*; M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatûs Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, a silver coin, equal in value to two pounds and a half of brass; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two are added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word ; as, i. e. *id est* ; h. e. *hoc est* ; e. g. *exempli gratiâ* ; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were, C. I. L. V. X. ; which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two* ; III. *three* ; XX. *twenty* ; XXX. *thirty* ; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater ; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater ; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* is marked thus, CIO. ; which in later times was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of c to IO. makes its value ten times greater ; thus, IOO. marks *five thousand* ; and IOOO. *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of c, together with the annexing of c to the number of CIO. makes its value ten times greater ; thus, CCIOO. denotes *ten thousand* ; and CCCIOOO. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition ; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, III. denotes *three thousand* ; X. *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits* ; 1. *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*,

0 *nought, nothing.* The first nine are called *Significant figures.* The last is called a *Cypher.*

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left ; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times ; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand.

2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures ; thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two.*

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the year seventeen hundred and ninety-eight, both in letters and in figures, and comparing them together ; CIO, IDCCXCVIII. or M, DCCXCVIII. 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends, Nones, and Ides.* The first day of every month was called the *Kalends* ; the fifth day was called the *Nones* ; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides* ; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *Nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *Ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante.* The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante* ; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* And so on till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the Ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus* or *Decembris* ; the day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante* ; the day before that,

Tertio Id. Dec. and so back to the Nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*; the day before the Nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c.; and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse Kalendas.
Sex MAIUS, Nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit Idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post Idus lucem dic esse Kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September, and November*, was marked XVIII. *Kal.* of the following month; the 15th, XVII. *Kal.* &c. The 14th day of *January, August, and December*, XIX. *Kal.* &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July, and October*, was marked XVII. *Kal.* &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. *Kal. Martii* or *Martias*. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

APPENDIX II.

As the declension of substantives joined with adjectives in the different degrees of comparison, and the conjugation of similar verbs in different conjugations, occasion difficulty to learners, it may be of advantage to subjoin several examples of these; and likewise to enumerate other words, similar in sound, but different in sense.

1. DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES JOINED WITH ADJECTIVES.

Nom. Sing. Clarus poëta, *a famous poet*; *Gen. Sing.* clari poëtæ, *Dat.* claro poëtæ, *Acc.* clarum poëtam, *Voc.* clare poëta, *Abl.* claro poëtâ; *Nom. Plur.* Clari poëtæ, *G.* clarorum poëtarum, *D.* claris poëtis, *Ac.* claros poëtas, *V.* clari poëtæ, *A.* claris poëtis. So, Clarior vir, *a more famous man*; clariōris vīri, clariōri vīro, clariōrem vīrum, clarior vir, clariōre, *v.* -i vīro; clariōres vīri, clariōrum virōrum, clariōribus vīris, clariōres vīros, clariōres vīri, clariōribus vīris. Clarissīma mulier, *a very famous woman*; clarissimæ mulieris, clarissimæ muliēri, clarissimam muliērem, clarissīma mulier, clarissimâ muliēre; clarissimæ muliēres, —marum muliērum, —mis muliēribus, —mas muliēres, —mæ muliēres, —mis muliēribus.

Lenis aura, *a gentle breeze*; lenis auræ, leni auræ, lenem auram, lenis aura, leni aurâ; lenes auræ, lenium aurarum, lenibus auris, lenes auras, lenes auræ, lenibus auris. So, lenior ventus, *a gentler wind*; leniōris venti, leniōri vento, &c. Lenissimum flabrum, *a very gentle blast*; —mi flabri, —mo flabro, &c.

Docilis puer, *a docile or teachable boy*; docilis puēri, docili puēro, docilem puērum, docilis puer, docili puēro; dociles puēri, docilium puērorum, docilibus puēris, dociles puēros, dociles puēri, docilibus puēris. So, docilior puer, *a more docile boy*; dociliōris puēri, &c. valde or maximè docilis puer, *a very docile boy*.

Ferox aper, *a fierce boar*; ferōcis apri, ferōci apro, ferōcem aprum, ferox aper, ferōce or -ōci apro; ferōces apri, ferōcium aprorum, ferōcibus apriis, &c.

Pulcher flos, *a beautiful flower*; pulchri floris, pulchro fiori, &c. So, pulchrior, & pulcherrimus flos.

Facile opus, *an easy work*; facilis opēris, facili opēri, facile opus, —, facili opēre; facilis opēra, faciliū opērum, facilibus opēribus, &c. So, facilius opus, faciliōris opēris, &c.; facillimum opus, —mi opēris, &c.

Nova editio, *a new edition of a book*; novæ editiōnis, &c. So, novissīma editio, *the newest or last edition*; —imæ editiōnis, —imæ editiōni, &c.

Dulce pomum, *a sweet apple*; *G.* dulcis pomi, *D.* dulci pomo, *Ac.* dulce pomum, *V.* dulce pomum, *Abl.* dulci pomo; *N. Plur.* dulcia po-

ma, *G.* dulcium pomorum, *D.* dulcibus pomis, *Ac.* dulcia poma, *V.* dulcia poma, *Abl.* dulcibus pomis.

So, dulcius prum, *a sweeter pear*; dulciōris piri, &c.—dulcissimum mel, *very sweet*, or *the sweetest honey*; dulcissimi mellis, &c.

Meus filius, *my son*; mei filii, meo filio, meum filium, mi (*rar. meus*) filii, meo filio; mei filii, meorum filiorum, meis filiis, &c. Mea filia, *my daughter*; meæ filiæ, &c. *Dat. & Abl. plur.* meis filiabus.

Lenis auster, *a gentle south wind*; lenis austri, leni austro, lenem austrum, &c. Patens pelāgus, *the open sea*; patenti pelāgi, patenti pelāgo, patens pelāgus, —, patente & -i pelāgo. *Not used in the plural.* So, ignobile vulgus, *the ignoble populace*; -lis vulgi, -li vulgo, -le vulgus, &c.

Totus orbis, *the whole world*; totius orbis, toti orbi, totum orbem, —, toto orbe; *Plur.* Ætherei orbis, *the celestial orbs*; -eorum orbium, -eīs orbibus, &c. Illa rēgio, *that country*; illius regiōnis, illi regiōni, illam regiōnem, illa regio, illā regiōne; illæ regiōnes, *those countries*; illarum regiōnum, &c. Hæc urbs, *this city*; hujus urbis, huic urbi, hanc urbem, hæc urbs, hac urbe; hæ urbes, *these cities*; harum urbium, his urbibus, &c. Durum os, *a hard bone*; duri ossis, duro ossi, durum os, duro osse; dura ossa, durorum ossium, duris ossibus, &c.

Latum os, *a broad mouth*; lati ōris, lato ori, latum os, lato ore; lata ōra, (*Gen. plur. not in use,*) latis oribus, lata ora, &c.

Dextra manus, *the right hand*; dextræ manūs, dextræ manui, dextram manum, dextra manus, dextrā manu; *Plur.* dextræ manus, dextrarum manuum, dextris manibus, &c. Pulchra facies, *a beautiful face*; pulchræ faciēi, (*for the Gen. and Dat.*) pulchram faciem, pulchra facies, pulchrā facie; *N. plur.* pulchræ facies, *Ac.* pulchras facies. Faciērum and faciēbus, are not found in any Classic author.

It will be of use also to accustom the learner to decline an adjective by itself, through all the degrees of comparison, and then to join it with various substantives in the different declensions, with or without a numeral or pronominal adjective prefixed; thus,

Nom. Sing. Bonus, melior, optimus; bona, melior, optima; bonum, melius, optimum; *Gen.* Boni, meliōris, optimi; bonæ, meliōris, optimæ; boni, meliōris, optimi; *Dat.* Bono, meliōri, optimo; bonæ, meliōri, optimæ; bono, meliōri, optimo; *Acc.* Bonum, meliōrem, optimum; bonam, meliōrem, optimam; bonum, melius, optimum; *Voc.* Bone, melior, optime; bona, melior, optima; bonum, melius, optimum; *Abl.* Bono, meliōre v. -i, optimo; bonâ, meliōre v. -i, optimâ, &c.

So, Magnus, major, maximus, &c. Parvus, minor, minimus, &c. Tener, tenerior, tenerrimus, &c. Pulcher, pulchrior, pulcherrimus, &c. Similis, similior, simillimus, &c.—Gravis sarcina, *a heavy bundle or burden*; gravis sarcinæ, &c. So, gravior sarcina, graviōris sarcinæ, &c. Gravissimum onus, *a very heavy load or burden*; gravissimi onēris, gravissimo onēri, &c.

Aspera hiems, *a rough winter*; asperæ hiēmis, &c. Rapidum flumen, *a rapid river*; rapidi fluminis, rapido flumini, &c. [Formosus Alexis, *fair Alexis*; -si Alexis, -so Alexi, -sum Alexim or -in, -se

Alexi, -so Alexi. So, Formōsa Venus, -sæ Venēris, &c. Molestæ tussis, a *troublesome cough*; molestæ tussis, -tæ tussi, -tam tussim, -tā tussis, -tā tussi. Mala febris, a *bad fever*; malæ febris, malæ febri, malam febrem & febrim, malâ febre & febri, &c.; malæ febres, malârum febrium, &c. So, Pejor febris, pessima febris, &c. Nulla acūta febris, no *acute fever*; nullius acūtæ febris, &c. Tutus portus, a *safe harbour*; tuti portûs, tuto portui, &c. Plur. tuti portus, tutōrum portuum, tutis portibus & portûbus, &c. Longus dies, a *long day*; longi diēi, longo diēi, longum diem, &c. Alta arx, a *high citadel*; altæ arcis, altæ arcis, altam arcem, &c. Plur. altæ arces, altārum arcium, altis arcibus, &c. Acer vel ācris arcus, a *strong bow*; acris arcûs, acris arcui, acrem arcum, &c. Plur. acres arcus, acrium arcuum, acris arcibus, &c. Unus niger bos, one *black ox*; unius nigri bovis, uni nigro bovi, unum nigrum bovem, —, uno nigro bove; duo nigri boves, duōrum nigrōrum bovum, duōbus nigris bobus vel bubus, duos vel duo nigros boves, &c. Hæc nigra bos, *this black cow*; hujus nigræ bovis, &c. Ille celer equus, *that swift horse*; illius celēris equi, illi celēri equo, &c. Multæ celēres equæ, *many swift mares*; multārum celērum equārum, multis celēribus equābus, &c. Idem parvus mus, *the same small mouse*; ejusdem parvi mûris, eidem parvo muri, &c. So, iste minimus mus, istius minîmi muris, &c. Quædam alta domus, a *certain high house*; cujusdam altæ domûs, cuidam altæ domui, v. domo, &c. Nullus certus vas, no *certain surety*; nullius certi vādîs, nulli certo vādî, nullum certum vādem, &c. Plur. Nulli certi vādes, nullōrum certōrum vādium, &c.

Æreum vas, a *brazen vessel*; æreī vāsîs, æreo vāsi, æreum vas, &c. Plur. ærea vāsa, æreōrum vāsōrum, æreis vāsîs, &c. Altērum jugērum, another *acre*; altērius jugēri & jugēris, altēri jugēro, altērum jugērum, altēro jugēro & jugēre: Tria jugēra, *three acres*; trium jugērum, tribus jugēribus, &c. Aliquis error, *some mistake*; alicujus errōris, -cui errōri, -quem errōrem, aliquo errōre; aliqui errōres, aliquōrum errōrum, aliquibus (*rar. aliquois*) errōribus, &c. So, aliqua pars, *some part*; alicujus partis, &c. Aliqua sublimis anima, *some or any exalted soul*; alicujus sublimis animæ, &c. Dat. & Abl. plur. aliquibus sublimibus animābus. Aliquod nomen decusque, *some name and honour*; alicujus nomînis decōrisque, &c. Plur. aliqua nomîna decōrāque, &c.

GREEK NOUNS DECLINED WITH ADJECTIVES.—Gelidus Boreas, *the cold north wind*; gelidi boreæ, gelido boreæ, gelidum boream, & -an, galide borea, gelido boreâ. So, sacer tiārâs, a *sacred turban or diadem*; sacri tiāræ, &c.

Fortis Pelides, *the brave son of Peleus*, i. e. Achilles; fortis Pelidæ, forti Pelidæ, fortem Peliden, fortis Pelide, forti Pelide:—So, fortis Dardanides, *the brave descendant of Dardānus*, i. e. Ænēas;—Plur. fortes Dardanidæ, *the brave descendants of Dardānus*, i. e. *the Trojans*; fortium Dardanidārum, contracted Dardanidūm, fortibus Dardanidis, &c.—Dardanius Ænēas, *the Trojan Æneas*: -nii Ænēæ, -nio Ænēæ, -ium Ænēam or -an, -ie Ænēâ, -nio Ænēâ: So, Dardanius Paris, -nii Paridîs or -idos, -nio Paridî, -nium Paridem, Parim, or Parin, -nie Pari or Paris, -nio Paride. Dardānis māter, a *matron descended from Dardānus*, i. e. a *Trojan matron*; Dardanidis or -idos mātris, &c.—Plur.

Dardanides matres, -idum matrum, -idibus matribus, -ides or -idas matres, &c. So, *Dardanides nurus, Trojan or Phrygian daughters-in-law; Dardanidum nuruum, &c.*

II. CONJUGATION OF SIMILAR VERBS IN DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS, and sometimes in the same Conjugation, resembling each other chiefly in the parts formed from the present.

Mānāre, to flow; and mānēre, to stay; Pres. Mān-o, -as, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant: Mān-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent. Imp. mān-ābam, -ābas, &c. mān-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. Fut. mān-ābo, -ābis, &c. mān-ēbo, -ēbis, &c. Pres. Subj. mān-em, -es, &c. mān-eam, -eas, &c. Imp. mān-ārem, -āres, &c. mān-ērem, -ēres, &c. Imperat. Mān-a or mān-āto, -āto; -āte or -ātōte, -anto: Mān-e, or mān-ēto, -ēto; -ēte or -ētōte, -ento: Part. & Gerunds, mān-ans, -andum, -andi, &c. mān-ens, -endum, -endi, &c. So in the Compounds: *Permān-o, -as, -at, &c. Permān-eo, -es, -et, &c.—Mānēri is used impersonally in the Passive; mānētur, mānēbatur, &c.; but not mānāri.*

LEGARE, to send as an ambassador; & LEGERE, to read:—Lēg-o, -as, -at, &c. Lēg-o, -is, -it, &c. — In the Passive Voice; Lēg-or, -āris or -āre, &c. Lēg-or, -ēris or -ēre, &c. — So the Compounds, Rēlēgāre, to send away; Rēlēgēre, to read again:—Rēlēg-o, -as, -at, &c. Rēlēg-o, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt, &c. — Passive, Rēlēg-or, -āris or -āre, -ātur, &c. Rēlēg-or, -ēris or -ēre, -itur, &c.

So, Dēlēgāre, to send as a messenger; Dēlligāre, to bind; Dēlligēre, to choose; and Diligēre, to love. — Col- (or con-) ligāre, to bind; Colligēre, to gather together.—Dōlāre, to hew; Dōlēre, to grieve, to be sorry.—Lactāre, to suckle, to nurse with milk; Lactēre, to suck milk, to draw the breast. — Pendēre, to hang, to be suspended; Pendēre, to weigh: Pend-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent: Pendo, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt, &c.

MAND-ARE, to command, to commit; Mand-ēre, to chew; Mand-o, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant: Mand-o, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt: Mand-ābam, -ābas, &c. Mand-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. Mand-ābo, -ābis, &c. Mand-am, -es, -et, &c. Mand-em, -es, &c. Mand-am, -as, &c. Mand-ārem, -āres, &c. Mand-ērem, -ēres, &c. Mand-a or -āto, &c. Mand-e or -ito, &c. Mand-ans, -andum, -andi, &c. Mand-ens, -endum, -endi, &c. Passive, Mandāri, & Mandi.—Mand-or, -āris or -āre, -ātur, &c. Mandor, -ēris or -ēre, -itur, &c. So, Fundāre, to found; & Fundēre, to pour forth.—Cōlāre, to strain through a cloth; & cōlēre, to till, to worship.—Dicāre, to dedicate; Dicēre, to say.—Indicāre, to discover; Indicēre, to proclaim.—Educāre, to train up, to educate; Educēre, to lead forth.—Aggērāre, to heap up; Aggērēre, to bring together.—Appellāre, to call; Appellēre, to drive to, to apply:—Compellāre, to address; Compellēre, to drive together.—Consternāre, to astonish; Consternēre, to strew.—Obecrāre, to lock; Obecrēre, to beset.—Fūgāre, to put to flight; & fūgēre, to fly; Fūgo, -as, -at, &c. Fugio, fugis, fugit, fugimus, fugitis, fugiunt: Fugābam, & Fugiēbam: Fugābo, & Fugiam, -ies, &c.

Ciēre, & Cīre, to stir up, to rouse; which will be better distinguished in the Compounds, Conciēre & Conciēre; thus, Con-cīeo, -cies, -ciet, -ciēmus, -ciētis, -cient: Con-cio, -cis, -cit, -cīmus, -cītis, -ciunt: Con-

ciēbam, -ciēbas, &c. *the same in both* ; Con-ciēbo, ciēbis, &c. Con-ciam, cias, &c. Con-cieam, cieas, &c. Con-ciam, -cias, &c. Con-ciērem, -ciēres, &c. Con-clrem, -clres, &c. Con-eis or -ciēto, -ciēto ; -ciēte or -ciētōte, -ciento : Conci, or -clto, -clto ; -clte or -cltōte, -ciumto. *In the present participle and gerunds both are the same* ; conciens, concierendum, -do, &c.—*So in the Passive Voice* : Con-cieor, -ciēris or -ciēre, &c. Con-cior, -clris or -clre, &c. Conciēbar ; Conciēbor, & Conciar ; Conciēar, & Conciar ; Conciērer, & Conclrer ; Conciēre, or concieōtor, &c. and Conclre or concitor, &c. Conciendus. *So*, Censēre, *to judge* ; Sentire, *to perceive* :—Cens-eo, -es, -et, &c. Sent-io, -is, -it, &c. *So also*, Vincēre, *to conquer* ; Vincire, *to bind*.

Sēdāre, *to allay* ; sēdēre, *to sit* ; and sldēre, *to sink, to light like a bird* ; Con-sldēre, & Con-sldēre, *to sit down together* ; Con-sldeo, -sldes, &c. -sldent : Con-sldo, -sldis, &c. -sldunt : Con-sldēbam, & Con-sldēbam ; Con-sldēbo, -bis, &c. Con-sldam, -es, &c. ; Consldeam, & Consldam ; Consldērem, & Consldērem ; Con-sldo or -sldēto, &c. Con-sldo, or con-sldito, &c. Conslens, & Conslens, &c. *In the Passive impersonally*, Consldētur, &c. Conslditur, &c. *There are no Compounds of Sēdāre*.

Cānēre, *to be hoary* ; Cānēre, *to sing* ; Cān-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent ; Cān-o, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -unt ; Cānēbam, & Cānēbam, &c. Frigēre, *to be cold* ; Frigēre, *to fry* ; Frig-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, &c. Frig-o, -is, -it, -Imus, &c. Jācēre, *to lie* ; Jācēre, *to throw* ; Jāc-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent ; Jāc-io, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -iunt :—Jācēbam, & Jāciēbam :—Jācēbo, & Jāciam, -ies, &c.—Jācērem, & Jācērem ;—Jāce or jācēto, jācēto ; jācēte, or jācētōte, jācento ; Jāce or jāclto, jāclto, jāclte, or jācltōte, jāciunto ;—Jācens, jācendum, -di, &c. Jāciens, jāciendum, -di, &c.—*In the Passive Jāceo is not used* ;—Jācior, jācēris, or jācēre, jācltur, jāclmur, jāclmīni, jāciuntur : Jāciēbar, &c.

The Compounds of Cādēre, to fall ; cādēre, to cut or kill ; cādēre, to yield ; as, Rēclēre, to fall back ; Rēclēre, to cut down ; Rēcēdēre, to retire : — Rēclō-o, -is ; Rēclō-o, -is ; Rēcēd-o, -is.—*So the Compounds of Scandēre, to climb, and Scindēre, to cut ; conscendo, -is ; conscindo, -is, &c.—The Compounds of Cāpēre, to take, and Sāpēre, to be wise, are similar in sound* ;—Dēcīpēre, *to deceive* ; Dēsīpēre, *to be foolish* ; Decīpio, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -iunt ; Desīp-io, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -iunt : Decīpiēbam, &c.—*So, Cēlāre, to conceal, and Caelāre, to carve* : ēdēre, *to eat* ; and ēdēre, *to bring forth*.

PARARE, *to prepare* ; Pārēre, *to obey* ; Pārēre, *to get* : Pār-o, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant : Pār-eo, -es, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent : Pār-io, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -iunt :—Pār-ābam, -ābas, &c. Pār-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. Pār-iēbam, -iēbas, &c.—Pār-ābo, -ābis, &c. Pār-ēbo, -ēbis, &c. Pār-iam, -ies, &c.—Pār-em, -es, &c. Pār-eam, -eas, &c. Pār-iam, -as, &c.—Pār-ārem, -āres, &c. Pār-ērem, -ēres, &c. Pār-ērem, -ēres, &c.—Pār-a or -āto, &c. Pār-e or -ēto, -ēto ; -ēte or -ētōte, -ento : Pār-o or pār-lto, -lto ; -lte or -ltōte, -iunto :—Pārans, pārandum, -di, &c. Pārēns, pārēndum, -di, &c. Pāriens, pāriendum, -di, &c.

In the Passive, Pār-or, -āris or -āre, &c. Pār-ētur, Impersonal : Pār-ior, pār-ēris or pār-ēre, -Itur, -Imur, -Imīni, -iuntur :—*The other parts may be easily formed from the Active. In like manner, the Compounds, Ap- for ad-pārāre, to make ready ; Appārēre, to appear ; Apērīre, to open* : Appār-o, -as, &c. Appār-eo, -es, &c. Apēr-io, -is, -it, -Imus, -Itis, -iunt :—Appār-ābam, -ābas, &c. Appār-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. Apēr-iēbam,

—Appār-ābo, ābis, &c. Appār-ēbo, -ēbis, &c. Apēr-iam, -ies, &c.—Appār-em, -es, &c. Appār-eam, -eas, &c. Apēr-iam, -ias, &c.—Appār-ārem, -āres, &c. Appār-ērem, -ēres, &c. Apēr-irem, -ires, &c.—Appār-a or -āto, &c. Appār-e or -ēto, &c. Apēr-i or -ito, -ito, -ite or -itōte, -iunto.—Appārāns, appārāndum, -di, &c. Appārens, appārēndum, -di, &c. Apēriens, apēriendum, -di, &c.—*In the Passive*; Appār-or, -āris or -āre, &c. Appāreo is not used in the *Passive*. Apēr-ior, -iris or -ire, &c.

MŌRARI, to delay; Mōrāri, to be foolish, to act foolishly.—Mōr-or, -āris or -āre, &c. Mōr-or, -āris or -āre, &c. So, Re-mōrāri, to tarry or stay; rēmōror, -āris or -āre, &c. There are no compounds of mōrāri; and itself rarely occurs.—MŌRI, & mōriri, to die: Mōrior, morēris, or morēre, moritur, morimur, morimini, moriuntur; & Mōrior, moriris or morire, moritur, morimur, &c.—So, Oriri, to rise; ōrior, orēris or orēre, oritur, &c. Orior, oriris or orire, oritur, &c.

MISERARI, & misērēri, to pity; Misēr-or, -āris or -āre, -atur, &c. Misēr-eor, -ēris or -ēre, -etur, &c.—Also, Misērēre, & misērescēre, to pity. But the former of these almost always, and the latter sometimes, is used impersonally.

METAXI, & Mētiri, to measure; Mentiri, to lie, to utter a falsehood: Mēt-or, mētāris or mētāre, &c.—mētantur; Mētior, mētiris or mētire, &c.—mētiuntur, &c.: Mentior, mentiris or mentire, &c.—Mētēre, to reap; Mētūēre, to fear: *Passive*, Mēti, & Mētui:—Mētor, mētēris or mētēre, &c. Mētuo, mētūēris or mētūēre, &c.—Liquāre, act. to melt, to dissolve; lliquēre, neut. to be liquid or clear; lliqui, dep. to melt or to be melted, to waste or wear away;—Liquo, -as; lliqueo, -es, &c. (Liquet, imp. it is clear or manifest;) Liquor, -ēris or -ēre, &c.—Inflcio, -ēre, to stain. *Passive*: Inflicior, inflici, to be stained; Inflicior, inflicari, dep. to deny.

Reddēre, to render; & Rēdīre, to return: Redd-o, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt: Rēd-eo, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -eunt:—Redd-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. Rēd-ibam, -ibas, &c. Red-dam, -des, &c. Rē-dībo, -dībis, &c. Red-dam, -das, &c. Rē-deam, -deas, &c. Red-dērem, -dēres, &c. Rēd-irem, -ires, &c.—Redd-e or -ito, -ito, -ite or -itote, -unto: Rēd-i or rēd-ito, -ito, -ite or -itote, -eunto:—Reddens, reddendum, di, &c. Rēdiens, (-euntis,) rēdeundam, -di, &c.—*Passive*: Redd-or, -ēris or -ēre, -itur, &c. Rēditur, rēdībatur, &c. *impersonal*.

In like manner, Addēre, to add; & Ādire, to go to: Prōdēre, to betray; & Prōdīre, to go forth; Vōlāre, to fly; & Velle, to be willing:—Vōlo, vōlas, &c. Vōlo, vis, vult, &c.—Vōlābam, & Vōlēbam:—Vōlābo, & Vōlam, vōles, &c. Vōlem, vōles, &c. Vēlim, vēlis, &c.

FERRERE, to strike; FERRERE, to bring:—Fēr-io, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -iunt; Fēro, fers, fert, fērīmus, fertis, fērunt:—Fēriēbam, & fērēbam; Fēr-iam, -ies, &c. Fēram, fēres, &c. Fēr-iam, -ias, &c. Fēr-am, -as, &c. Fēr-irem, -ires, &c. Ferrem, ferres, &c.—Fēri or fērīto, &c. Fer or ferto, &c. Fēriens, fēriendum, -di, &c. Fērens, fērendum, -di, &c.—*Passive*: Fēr-ior, -iris or -ire, &c. Fēror, ferris or ferre, &c. So, Rēfērīre, to strike again; & Rēferre, to bring back:—Rēfēr-io, -is, -it, -imus, &c. Rēfēro, rēfers, rēfert, rēfērīmus, rēfertis, rēfērent, &c.—Rēfert, it concerns; rēfērēbat, &c. *impersonal*.

Efferāre, to enrage; Efferre, to bring out:—Effēr-o, -as, -at, &c.

Effēro, offers, &c. Passives: Effēror, -āris or -āre, &c. Effēror, offeris or offerre, effortur, &c.

Vēnāri, to hunt; Vēnīre, to come; Vēnīre, to be sold: Vēnor, -āris v. -āre, -ātur, &c. Vēnio, vēnis, vēnit, vēnimus, vēnitis, vēniunt: Vēneo, vēnis, vēnit, vēnimus, vēnitis, vēneunt:—Vēniēbam, & Vēnībam:—Vēniam, -ies, &c. Vēnībo, &c. *But it is of most importance to distinguish the Present and Preterite Tenses of Vēnio, and its compounds:*—*Pres. Ind.* Vēn-io, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -iunt;—*Perf.* Vēni, vēnisti, vēnit, vēnimus, vēnistis, vēnērunt, & -ēre:—*Imp.* Vēni or vēnīto, &c.—*Advēnio, advēnis, advēnit, advēnimus, advēnitis, advēniunt:*—*Advēni, advēnistī, advēnit, advēnimus, advēnistis, advēnērunt, & -ēre:* *Imp.* Advēni or advēnīto, &c.—*So, Convēnio, dēvēnio, ēvēnio, invēnio, &c.*

III. WORDS SIMILAR IN SOUND, BUT DIFFERENT IN SENSE.

Ācer, ēris, n. a maple-tree; ācer, v. ācris, e, sharp; ācus, ēris, n. chaff; ācus, ūs, f. a needle: aestas, ātis, f. summer; aestus, ūs, m. heat: āger, agri, m. a field; agger, -ēris, m. a heap of earth or stones, a rampart: āmans, ntis, loving, a lover; āmens, ntis, mad: ānas, ātis, f. a duck; annus, i, m. a year; ānus, i, m. the orifice of the intestines; ānus, ūs, f. an old woman: āpis, is, f. a bee; g. pl. āpum or āpium; āpium, i, n. parsley: arca, æ, f. a chest; arcus, ūs, m. a bow; arx, arcis, f. a fortress: āsilus, i, m. a gad-fly; āsylum, i, n. a sanctuary.—Bellum, i, n. war; bellus, a, um, pretty; bello, āre, to make war.—Cādo, ēre, to fall; cādus, i, m. a cask: cālīga, æ, f. a kind of shoe set with nails; cālīgo, lnis, f. darkness: callis, is, m. a beaten path; callus, i, m. hard flesh; cālo, -ōnis, m. a soldier's slave; cāleo, ēre, to be warm; cālor, -ōris, m. heat; calleo, ēre, to be hard by long use, to know well or by experience; cālīdus, a, um, warm or hot; callīdus, a, um, skilful by long experience, sly, cunning: cānis, is, c. a dog; tu cānis, thou singest; tu cānes, thou art hoary; cānus, a, um, hoary: cāro, carnis, f. flesh; cārus, a, um, dear; cāreo, ēre, to want; cāro, ēre, to card or tease wool: cassis, ldis, f. a helmet; casses, ium, m. nets; cassus, a, um, empty, void: clāva, æ, f. a club; clāvis, is, f. a key; clāvus, i, m. a nail: caula, æ, f. a sheep-cote; caulis, is, m. the stalk of an herb: claudus, a, um, lame; claudio, ēre, to shut: cœna, æ, f. a supper; cœno, āre, to sup; cœnum, i, n. mire: cōma, æ, f. the hair; cōmes, ldis, c. a companion; cōmis, e, mild, affable; cōmo, ēre, to comb.—Dēcor, ōris, m. grace, comeliness; dēcōrus, a, um, graceful; dēcus, ōris, n. an ornament, honour; dēcōro, āre, to adorn, to decorate: dīco, āre, to dedicate; dico, ēre, to say; dīca, æ, f. a law-suit; dīcis gratiā, for form's sake.—Æs, æris, n. brass; tu ēs, thou art; tu ēs, thou eatest.—Fīdes, is, f. a fiddle, a violin, abl. fīdē; fīdes, ēi, f. faith, abl. fīdē; fīdē tu, trust thou: fōris, is, f. a door; fōre, to be hereafter; fōri, ōrum, the gangways of a ship; fōro, āre, to bore; fōrum, i, n. a market-place: fornax, -ācis, f. a furnace; fornix, -icis, m. a vault: frons, ntis, f. the forehead; frons, ndis, f. the leaf of a tree.—Hēres, ēdis, c. an heir; hēros, ōis, m. a hero; hērus, i, m. a master.—Ira, æ, f. anger; iris, ldis, f. the rainbow.—Jūgum, i, n. a yoke; jūgis, e, perpetual.—Lābo, āre, to totter, to fail or faint; lābor, lābi, to fall gently, to glide; lābes, is, f. a great fall of rain, a stain; lābor, v. lābes, ōris, labour: lātus, ēris, n. the side; lātus, a, um, broad; part. from fēror, brought; tu lātes, thou lurkest: lens, dis,

f. a nit ; *lena, lentis, f. lentiles, a kind of pulse* : *lēpor, v. lēpos, ōris, m. wit* ; *lēpus, ōris, m. a hare* : *lævis, v. lēvis, e, smooth* ; *lēvis, e, light* ; *lævāre, to smooth* ; *lěvāre, to lighten* ; *lævus, a, um, left, on the left side* : *lībo, āre, to taste* ; *lībum, i, n. a sweet cake* : *līceo, ēre, to be lawful* ; *līcēri, to bid a price* ; *līcium, i, n. the woof of a web* : *līgo, ōnis, m. a spade* ; *līgo, āre, to bind* : *līma, æ, f. a file* ; *līmo, āre, to file, to polish* ; *līmes, itis, m. a limit* ; *līmus, i, m. mud* ; *līmus, a, um, awry* : *līra, æ, f. a furrow* ; *līra, æ, f. a lyre or harp*.

Māla, æ, f. the cheek-bone ; *mālus, i, f. an apple-tree* ; *mālum, i, n. an apple* ; *mālus, a, um, evil, wicked* ; *mālum, i, n. an evil, mischief* ; *mālo, I am more willing* : *māne, n. ind. the morning* ; *māne tu, stay thou* ; *mānes, ium, m. the souls of the dead* ; *tu mānes, thou stayest* ; *tu mānes, thou mayest flow* ; *mānus, ūs, f. the hand* : *māre, is, n. the sea* ; *mās, māris, m. the male of any creature* : *mensa, æ, f. a table* ; *mensis, is, m. a month* ; *mentor, ōris, m. a measurer* ; *mensus, a, um, part. having measured* : *merx, cis, f. merchandise* ; *merces, ōdis, f. hire* : *messis, is, f. harvest* ; *messor, ōris, m. a reaper* ; *messus, a, um, part. reaped* : *mēta, æ, f. a goal* ; *mētus, ūs, m. fear*.

Mīca, æ, f. a crumb ; *mīco, āre, to shine* : *mōla, æ, f. a mill* ; *mōlère, to grind* ; *mōles, is, f. a heap* : *mōra, æ, f. a delay* ; *mōrus, i. f. a mulberry-tree* ; *mōrum, i, n. a mulberry* ; *mos, mōris, m. a custom* ; *mōrus, a, um, foolish* ; *mōrātus, (part. from mōrāri,) having tarried* ; *mōrātus, (adj. from mos,) endowed with morals either good or bad, of good morals* : *mundus, i, m. the world* ; *mundus, a, um, neat* : *mūtus, a, um, dumb* ; *mūto, āre, to change* ; *mūtuus, a, um, mutual*.

Nāvis, is, f. a ship ; *nāvus, & gnāvus, a, um, active* : *nēbūla, æ, f. a cloud* ; *nēbūlo, ōnis, m. a knave* : *nīteo, ēre, to shine* ; *nītor, ōris, brightness, neatness* ; *nītor, nīti, to strive* ; *nītère, v. nīltor, strive thou* : *nāto, āre, to swim* ; *nātus, a, um, born* ; *nātus, & gnātus, i, m. a son* : *nōta, æ, f. a mark* ; *nōtus, a, um, known* : *nōvus, a, um, new* ; *nōvi, I know, or have known*.—*Obex, icis, m. & f. a bar or bolt* ; *abl. obīce or objīce, from objīcio, ēre, to throw in the way, to obstruct* ; *imperat. objīce v. -lto, &c. Oblītus, part. from oblīno, besmeared* ; *oblītus, from oblīviscor, having forgotten* : *occa, æ, f. a harrow* ; *occo, āre, to harrow* : *ōlea, æ, f. an olive-tree* ; *ōleum, i, n. oil* ; *ōleo, -ēre, to smell* ; *olla, æ, f. a pot* ; *ōlor, ōris, m. a swan* ; *ōlus, ēris, n. pot-herbs* : *ōpis, (gen. from the obsol. ops,) f. of help* ; *pl. ōpes, um, power, wealth* : *ōpēra, æ, f. labour, service* ; *ōpus, ēris, n. a work* ; *ōpus, n. ind. need* ; *adj. ind. needful* : *ōpērio, Ire, to cover, to shut* ; *Passive, ōpēriri, to be covered* ; *oppēriri, dep. to wait for* : *ōra, æ, f. a coast* ; *ōra, the plur. of os, ōris, n. the mouth* ; *ōro, āre, to entreat* : *orbis, is, m. a circle or globe* ; *orbus, a, um, deprived of, void* : *ornus, i, f. a wild ash* ; *orno, āre, to adorn* : *ōvis, is, f. a sheep* ; *ōvum, i, n. an egg*.

Pāla, æ, f. a shovel ; *pālea, æ, f. chaff* ; *palla, æ, f. a mantle or cloak* ; *palleo, ēre, to be pale* : *palma, æ, f. a palm* ; *palmus, i, m. a span* ; *palmes, -itis, m. a vine-branch or shoot* : *pālus, ūdis, f. a fen or morass* ; *pālus, i, a stake* ; *pālari, to straggle* : *pānis, is, m. bread* ; *pannus, i, m. cloth* : *pār, pāris, equal* ; *pār, āris, n. a pair or match* ; *pārens, ntis, from pāreo, ēre, obeying* ; *pārens, ntis, c. from pārio, ēre, a parent* : *pāvi, from pasco, I have fed* ; *from pāveo, I have been afraid* ; *pāvo, ōnis, m. a peacock* : *pellex, icis, f. a courtesan* ; *pellicia,*

from pellicio, thou enticest : pēdum, i, n. a shepherd's crook or staff ; pēs, ēdis, m. a foot, gen. pl. pēdum : pīca, æ, f. a magpie ; pīcus, i, m. a woodpecker : pellis, is, f. a skin ; pellis, from pello, thou drivest : pīlla, æ, f. a ball ; pīla, æ, f. a pillar ; pīlum, i, n. a javelin ; pīlus, i, m. a hair ; pīleus, i, m. & pīleum, i, n. a cap : pīrus, i, f. a pear-tree ; pīrum, i, n. a pear : pōpūlus, i, m. the people ; pōpūlus, i, f. a poplar-tree ; pōpūlo, āre, & pōpūlor, āri, to lay waste, to pillage : præda, æ, f. plunder, booty ; prædo, ōnis, m. a robber ; prædor, āri, to plunder ; prædium, i, n. a farm : prōcēres, um, m. the nobles ; prōcērus, a, um, tall : prōfectus, ūs, m. (from prōficio,) profit, progress ; prōfectus, a, um, (part. from prōficiſcor,) having set out or marched : pruīna, æ, f. hoar-frost ; pruīna, æ, f. a live-coal ; pruīnus, i, f. a plum-tree ; pruīnum, i, n. a plum : pūbes, is, f. youth ; pūbes, & pūber, ēris, adj. come to the age of puberty : pugnus, i, m. the fist ; pugna, æ, f. a fight : pullus, i, m. the young of any creature, a chicken, &c. ; pullus, a, um, blackish : pūto, āre, to lop, to think ; pūteo, ēre, to stink ; pūtus, a, um, pure, without mixture.

Quālus, i, m. a basket ; quālis, e, of what kind : quæror, quæri, to be sought ; quæror, quæri, to complain.—Rōgus, i, m. a funeral pile ; rōgo, āre, to ask : rūbus, i, m. a bramble-bush ; rūbeo, ēre, to blush : rēgis, (from rex,) of a king ; rēgis, from rēgo, ēre, thou rulest : rūdo, ēre, to bray like an ass ; rūdis, is, f. a rod ; rūdis, e, rude, raw ; rūdus, ēris, n. rubbish.—Sācer, cra, um, sacred ; sacra, ōrum, n. sacred rites ; sacro, āre, to consecrate : sentis, is, f. a thorn ; sentis, (from sentio,) thou perceivest ; sentus, a, um, overgrown with briars, rough, thorny : sēpes, is, f. a hedge or fence ; sēpio, ire, to hedge : sēra, æ, f. a lock ; sērus, a, um, late ; sērum, sc. tempus, the evening ; sērum, i, n. whey ; sēro, ēre, to sow ; sērius, a, um, in earnest ; serra, æ, f. a saw : simlla, æ, f. flour ; similis, e, like ; simūlo, āre, to make like, to pretend : sinus, ūs, m. the bosom ; sinum, i, n. & sinus, i, m. a milk-pail ; alno, ēre, to allow : sōl, ōlis, m. the sun ; sōleo, ēre, to use ; sōlor, āri, to comfort ; sōlea, æ, f. a slipper ; sōlum, i, n. the ground ; sōlus, a, um, alone : spēro, āre, to hope ; spīro, āre, to breathe ; spīra, æ, f. a wreath : stīpes, itis, m. a stake ; stīps, īpis, f. a small coin, an alms ; stīpo, āre, to stuff, to cram : sūdes, is, f. a stake ; sūdus, a, um, fair, without clouds ; sūdo, āre, to sweat.

Tābes, is, f. a consumption ; tābeo, ēre, to pine or waste away ; tābum, i, n. putrid gore : tālus, i, m. the ankle, a dye ; tālis, e, such : tēla, æ, f. a web ; tēlum, i, n. a weapon : tergum, i, n. the back ; tergus, ōris, n. a hide ; tergeo, ēre, & tergo, ēre, to wipe : tendo, īnis, m. a tendon ; tendo, ēre, to stretch : testa, æ, f. an earthen pot ; testis, is, c. a witness.—Vallis, is, f. a valley ; vallum, i, n. a rampart ; vallus, i, m. a stake : vannus, i, f. a sieve ; vānus, a, um, vain : vēles, itis, m. a light-armed soldier ; vēlum, a sail ; vēlo, āre, to cover ; vellus, ēris, n. a fleece : vēna, æ, f. a vein ; vēnia, æ, f. pardon ; vēnum, i, n. a sale ; Vēnus, ēris, the goddess of love : verres, is, m. a boar-pig ; verro, ēre, to sweep : villus, i, m. shaggy hair ; villum, i, n. (dimin. from visum,) small wine : viscus, ēris, n. an entrail ; viscus, i, m. bird-lime. Vīta, æ, f. life ; vītis, is, f. a vine ; vīto, āre, to shun : vōla, æ, f. the hollow of the hand ; vōlo, āre, to fly ; vōlo, vōlui, velle, to be willing ; vōle, ōnis, m. a volunteer.—Unguis, is, m. a nail ; unguo, ēre, to anoint.

Short and easy DETACHED SENTENCES, which may be translated by the Learner, and varied with *dico* or *scio*, &c. put before them, and different adjectives joined with the substantives, as an exercise on the inflection of nouns and verbs, and on the Rules of Syntax.

Domus stat. Lapides cadunt. Sol lucet. Puëri ludunt. Umbra fugit. Cera liquescit. Silvæ frondent. Ager aret. Altaria fumant. Vaccæ mugiunt. Canes latrant. Argentum splendet. Nubes fugiunt. Luna fulgebat. Nox erat. Arma sonabant. Milites pugnabant. Ignis uret. Arbôres crescent. Tempôra venient. Nives diffugêre. Tempôra mutantur. Onus fertur. Carmina laudantur. Flos carpitur. Fabûla narratur. Saxa voluebantur. Bella parabantur. Domus ædificabitur. Epistôla scribêtur. Naves mersæ sunt. Hostes victi erant. Libri amissi sunt.

Garrûla lingua nocet. Fugâces anni labuntur. Litëra scripta manet. Fugit irreparabile tempus. Venit glaciâlis hiems, (*icy winter.*) Nix alta jacet. Brevis est voluptas. Mora non tuta est. Semper avârus eget. Omnis spes in Deo est. Amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur.

Nauta secat mare. Dat medicîna salutem. Dolôres levat questus. Gramina carpet equus. Spargit silva frondes. Alit æmulatio ingenia. Nidum ponit avis. Deus dat vitam. Virtutem doctrîna parat. Ventus agit nubes. Flores amat apis. Dido condidit Carthaginem. Romulus Romam condidit. Scipio Carthaginem delëvit. Cervus fugit lupum. Ossa tegit tumulus. Littus habet conchas. Tenet anchôra navem. Terra parit flores. Poma dat autumnus. Alexander Dariûm fugavit. Brutus Cæsarem occidit. Audentes fortuna juvat. Labor omnia vincit. Cyrus imperium Persicum fundavit. Græcum imperium fundavit Alexander. Quercus ingentes tendit ramos. Mercator reficit (*repairs*) quassas naves. Necessitas non habet leges. Crescentem sequitur cura pecuniam. Aurum avidas mentes polluit. Mollis pax arva colit. Feriunt summos fulmina montes. Atra

nubes condidit lunam. Rediens fugat astra Phœbus. Sol decedens crescentes duplicat umbras. Mors et fugacem persequitur virum. Scandit ærâtas vitiôsa naves cura. Fretum recipit de totâ flumina terrâ. Flumina pauca vides de magnis fontibus orta.

Ira furor brevis est. Virtus est optima nobilitas. Forma bonum fragile est. Virtus est sua merces. Exercitatio optimus est magister. Fames est optimus coquus. Res est forma fugax. Prima navis fuit arbor cavata.

Crescit amor nummi. Mater artium est necessitas. Hellenica causa fuit belli Trojani. Scipio fudit Hannibalis copias. Jussa dei fient. Villarum culmina fumant. Canis lepôris vestigia sequitur. Est calcanda semel via lethi. Numen divinum est fons bonitatis. Vita hominis sine literis mors est. Omnium rerum vicissitudo est. Angustam pauperiem pati puer discat. Dici beatus ante obitum nemo debet. Æquam memento rebus in arduis servare mentem.

Deus solus potest esse architectus et rector cœli et terræ. Justitia virtus est omnium virtutum domina et regina. Accipere præstat, quàm facere injuriam. Major est animi voluptas, quàm corporis. Sapientem neque paupertas, neque mors, neque vincula terrent. Juno erat Jovis et soror et conjux. Nox erat, et fulgebat luna. In prælio cita mors venit, aut victoria læta. Lethi vis rapuit, rapietque gentes. Non formosus erat, sed erat facundus Ulysses.

Non solum nobis nati sumus. Arma fecit Vulcânus Achilli. Oves nobis suam lanam præbent. Auxilium tu mihi ferre potes. Prospéra vobis maneat fortuna. Non placidam membris dat cura quietem. Nil sine magno vita labore dedit mortalibus.—Cito pede præterit ætas. Veniet tacito curva senecta pede. Pastor carmine mulcet oves. Ventis agitur ingens pinus. Omnes patriæ dulci tanguntur amore. Deteriores omnes sumus licentiâ. Desidiâ corpus animusque corrumpitur. Otium multa mala adolescentes docet. Ferreus assiduo consumitur annulus usu. Sperne voluptates; nocet empta dolore voluptas.

Est Deus in mundo, qui omnia videt. Fortis est, qui se vincit. Is amicus est, qui nos juvat in rebus adversis. Virtute qui præditi sunt, soli sunt divites. Tutus ille non est, quem omnes odêrunt. Proprium est humani generis odisse, quem læsêris. Ingratus est homo, qui non beneficium reddit. Solem e mundo tollunt, qui amicitiam e vitâ tollunt. Pompeius, a Cæsare victus, fugit ad Ægyptum. Civis bonus est

is, qui patriam suam diligit. Quis est, qui non admiretur splendorem virtutis?

Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus. Dei providentiâ mundus administratur. Mors est certa, tempus incertum. Codrus pro patriâ mortuus est. Jam seges est, ubi Troja fuit. Dulce et decôrûm est pro patriâ mori. Mors ultîma linea rerum est. Non, quæ præteriit, hora redire potest. Felix, qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas. Morti nihil est tam simîle, quàm somnus. Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli. Stultus non novit silentium servare. Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori. Bona existimatio (*reputation* or *character*) divitiis præstat. Quot homines, tot sententiæ. Da locum melioribus. Dictum sapienti sat est. Jucunda est memoria præteritorum malorum et laborum. Beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest. Nihil semper floret: ætas succêdit ætati. Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. Memoria nihil est, nisi exerceas eam. Virgilius patulæ cecinit sub tegmine fagi. Miltiades Persas vicit in pugnâ Marathoniâ. Regûlus in Africâ victus est. Nemo sine vitiis nascitur. Facile in morbos incidunt adolescentes. Pauci veniunt ad senectutem. Adolescentis est majores natu revereri. Verecundia (*modesty*) bonum in adolescente signum est. Fortuna simillima vento est. Quod tibi fieri non vis, altèri ne feceris. Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. Pudore amisso, omnis virtus ruit. Vitanda est imprôba Siren, desidia. Amicus verus thesaurus est magnus. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. Animum rege, qui nisi paret, imperat. Dum felis dormit, saliant mures. Disce parvo esse contentus. Parvum parva decent. Parturiunt montes, nascetur ridicûlus mus.

Est profectò Deus, qui omnia, quæ gerimus, audit et videt. Nemo vir magnus sine afflatu divino (*without divine inspiration*) unquam fuit. Homo doctus in se semper divitias habet. Intra fortunam debet quisque manere suam. Ut amèris, amabilis esto. Sol locatur in mediâ mundi sede. Terra circa solem vertitur. Quatuor sunt elementa, ignis, aer, terra, aqua. Gratum est laudari a laudato viro. Vitæ summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoare longam. Nulla est sincera voluptas. Decipimur specie recti. Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere. Heu, quàm difficile est crimen non prodere vultu! Omnia peccâta non sunt paria. Maximè admiramur eum, qui pecuniâ non moveatur. Mors omnium malorum sensum adimit. Condiebant Ægyptii mortuos, et

eos domi servabant.—Cupiditates animi sunt morbi. In voluptatis regno virtus non potest consistere. Linguam compescere virtus non minima est. Certa amittimus, dum incerta petimus. Est aliqua sapientiæ pars, stultitiam silentio tegere. Res omnium rerum nocentissima est calumnia. Non scire fas est omnia. Culpam pœna premit comes. Dum vitant stulti vitia, in contraria currunt. Gutta cavat lapidem : consumitur annulus usu ; et teritur pressâ vomer aduncus humo. Quid magis est saxo durum ? quid mollius undâ ? Dura tamen molli saxa cavantur aquâ. Viris fortibus non opus est mœnibus. Plaustra vagas trahunt domos Scytharum. Suam quisque conditionem miserrimam putat. Obsequium amicos, veritas odium parit. Nomen pacis dulce est, et ipsa res salutâris. Piêtas grata est Deo.

APPENDIX III.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S GRAMMAR, which will be found explained in the pages of this book that are marked before each Rule.

I. CONCERNING THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

Names of Males and Females, &c. p. 11.

QUÆ maribus solùm tribuuntur, mascùla sunt.

Esto femineum, quod femina sola reposit.

Sit commune duùm, sexum quod signat utrumque.

Names of Brute Animals, p. 12.

Multa, quibus sexus promiscuus, unaque vox est,

Nomina sunt, quorum genus est a fine petendum.

Names of Months and Winds, p. 12.

Menses cum Ventis genèri conjunge virili.

Names of Rivers and Mountains, p. 12.

Masculum Fluvii nomen Montisque reponet;

Sæpe tamen norma est finalis syllaba utrique.

Names of Countries and Cities, p. 12.

Jungito femineis nomen Regionis et Urbis,

Præcipue quod in *n* ternæ fit, *us* osve secundæ.

Est *Tuder* atque *Argos* neutrum, quibus adjice *Gadir*.

Rariùs hic *Marathon* capit, et *Pharsalus*, *Abidos*.

Masculum in *us* ternæ, *Pontus*, *Sasonque*, *Canopus*,

Atque *Tunes*, *Tecmon*. Hic, at hoc vult sæpius *Anaxur*.

Cætera turba suos fines plerumque sequuntur.

Names of Ships and Poems, p. 12.

Femineum Naves genus atque Poëmata quærant.

Names of Trees, p. 13.

Arbor femineis dabitur; sed mas *oleaster*,

Et *rhamnus*: petit hic potiùs *cythusque rubusque*:

Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *cupressus*:

Hoc quod in *um*, *suberque*, *siler*, dant, *robur*, *acerqua*.

Nouns in A of the First Declension, pp. 13 and 18.

HÆC dat A quod primæ est ; sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit :
Hadria mas æquor, pariterque comēta, planēta ;
 Mascūla et interdum talpam, damamque, videbis.

Nouns in US, of the Second and Fourth Declensions,
 pp. 20, 27, 39, and 48.

Nomen in US mas est, seu quartæ sive secundæ.

HÆC domus et vannus, pro fructu *ficus*, et *alvus*,
 Sic humus atque manus poscunt ; acus addito quartæ,
 Porticus atque tribus. Capit hoc virus pelagusque.

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini
 Sæpe solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :
 Feminæum sed multa petant ; ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,
Antidotusque, *pharus*, *dialectus*, *carbāsus* : adde
 Ex odos et phithongos genitum, quæque a generali
 Voce genus plantæ et gemmæ capiunt muliebre.

Hic aut HÆC donant *balānus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,
Barbitus, atque *penus*, *grossus* ; sed *grus*, *atomusque*
 Feminæum potiùs cupiunt ; colus adde, virile
 Quod rarè invenies : muliebre at contrà *camelus*
 Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,
 Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* et *penus* addito neutris.

Nouns of the Third Declension in A, E, I, and Y,
 pp. 29 & 30, Rule 1.

Sit neutri generis per A quicquid tertia flectit.
 HÆC petit E primæ, neutrum deponit E ternæ.
 Dant quibus I fines, Y, vel U, sunt omnia neutra.

Nouns in O, pp. 30, 31, Rule 2.

Hic dat O : femineis halo cum caro dantur et echo ;
 Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,
 Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.

Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula cudo,
Harpago, sic ordo, simul udo, tendo, ligoque.
 Rariùs HÆC margo vati est, hic sæpe cupido.
 Arrhæbo cum cardo muliebria vix imitanda.

Nouns in C and L, p. 32, Rule 3.

Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M,* neutralibus adde :
Mascŭla sol, mugil, ceu sal, quod rariŭs hoc vult.

Nouns in N, p. 32, Rule 4.

Masculum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,
 Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* et *inguen* et *unguen* :
 Addidēris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit HÆC, et *aëdon* :
Alcyōnem junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

Nouns in AR and UR, p. 33, Rule 5.

Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculum *salar* optat.
 Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vultŭre turtur*.

Nouns in ER and OR, p. 33, Rule 6.

ER capit HIC. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :
 At *tuber* HIC fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem
 Significans neutrale petit, cumque *ubère spinther*,
Verque, cadāver, iter. Dabit HIC aut HÆC tibi *linter*.
 HIC dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : cor, *adorque* hoc *marmor* et
æquor.

Nouns in AS, p. 34, Rule 7.

AS petit HÆC. Neutrum est *vas, vasis*, queisque Pelasgi
 Dant *ātis* in patrio : quibus *antis*, mascula sunt.
 AS partesque dabis maribus ; sit at *uncia* dempta.

Nouns in ES, p. 35, Rule 8.

HÆC dabit ES. Capient *ales* HIC HÆCve, *palumbes*,
 Atque *dies* : sed mas proles : mas *poples* et *ames*,
Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum *limite stipes* :
 Queis addes *trames, termes*, cum *gurgite cespes* ;
 Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio : sed neutra capessunt
Hippomānes, panāces, nepenthes, sic *cacoëthes*.

Nouns in IS, p. 36, Rule 9.

IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis* et *axis*,
Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,
Mugilis et *postis*, cum *sanguine, fascis*, et *orbis*,

* M is not a termination of nouns in the third declension, but only in the second ; see p. 19.

Fustis item, *collis*, *caulisque*, et *folliis*, et *ensis*,
Serpentemque notans *cenchris*, cum *vomere*, *torris*,
In NIS finitum Latium, *lapis*, *unguis*, *aqualis*.

Hic aut HÆC *finis*, *clunis*, cum *torque*, *canalis*,
Dant *scrobis*, ac *anguis* : *corbis* muliebre præoptat :
Masculleo potius gaudent *pulvis*, *cinis*, *amnis*.

Nouns in OS, p. 38, Rule 10.

OS maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos*, *melos*, *os*, *os*.
Postulat HÆC *arbos*, *cos*, *dos*, et origine Græcâ
Orta *eos*, *arctos*, *perimetros* cum *diametro*.

Nouns in US, p. 38, Rule 11.

Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.

Femineum voluere *palus*, *subscusque*, *salusque*,
Quæque *senex*, *juvenis*, cum *servio*, nomina formant,
Et *virtus*, *incus*. At mascula sunt *lepus*, et *mus*,
Et *pus* compositum : petit at muliebre *lagopus*.

Nouns in YS, ÆS, and AUS, p. 39, Rules 12 and 13.

Nomen in YS Græcum est, genus et sibi femineum vult.

Æs neutrale petit : *laus*, *fraus*, muliebria sunt.

Nouns in S, with a Consonant before it, p. 40, Rule 14.

S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.

Mascula sed *pons*, *fons*, *mons*, *seps* dum denotat anguem ;
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, *forcipe* dempto,
Densque, *chalybs*, cum *gryphe*, *rudens*, quod rarius HÆC vult.
Hic aut HÆC *serpens* dat, *scrobs*, *stirps* truncus, *adepsque*.
Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebre præoptat.

Nouns in X, p. 41, Rule 16.

Hæc petit X. *Ax*, *ex* maribus polysyllaba jungere :
Dic tamen HÆC *fornax*, *smilax*, *carex*, velut *halex*,
Et cum prole *panax*, et *forfex*, atque *supellex*.

Mascula sunt *calix*, *phœnix*, pro vermēque *bombyx*,
Et *coccyx*, *fornix*, et *onyx* vas, aut lapis unde
Vas fit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex* his adijunge *calyxque*.
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum grege cernes.

Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis :
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris, et *hystrix*,
Imbrex ; *sardonÿchem* jungas, *rumicem*, *silicem*que :
 Hic magè vult *cortex* et *obex*, cum *pumice varix* :
 HÆC potiùs *limax*, *lynx*, et cum *sandice perdis* :
Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabo quàm muliebre.

GENDER OF DEFECTIVE NOUNS, pp. 50, 51, &c.

Adjicito neutris quodcunque inflexile nomen.

Literæ amant neutrum : sic pars pro nomine sumpta ;
 Et verbum quodvis pro nudâ voce repostum.

GENDER OF PLURAL NOUNS.

I, Æ, A, & E, Plural.

I maribus plurale dabis : muliebre sed *Æ* vult :
 Ast *A*, et *E* Græcum, cupiunt neutralibus addi.

In reliquis primo numero primive carentûm
 Recto, animo qualem vocum natura reposcat,
 Concipito talem : sic a *prece prex* tibi forma.
 Hic dat *casse* tamen, dat et *impête* : *verbère* vult hoc ;
 Hic *veprem*, *pecûdis* capit HÆC ; HÆ postulat *Idus*.
 Cætera sunt alio meliùs memoranda libello.

II. RULES CONCERNING THE OBLIQUE CASES.

Vocative Singular in all the Declensions, p. 9.

Est primo quintus similis. Sed Græcus *s* aufert
 Sæpe ; velut *Thoma, Theseu, Panthu, Pari, Palla*.

Vocative of Nouns in the Second Declension, pp. 19 & 27.

US si rectus habet casus, per *e* vertito quintum.
 At *populus* dat et *us*. DEUS immutabile perstat.
Filius i *Genius*que petunt, in IUSque Latina
 Propria. Sed quintum, doctas imitatus Athenas,
 Servat in US recto similem quandôque Poëta.

Dative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 42.

Exit in *i* ternus casus ; per *e* flexus et olim.

Accusative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis*, *amussis*,
Vis, *cucumis*que simul, *tussis*, *sitis* atque *sinapis*,
Cannābis et *gummi*, *buris*, conjunge *mephitim*.
 Adde *urbes*, *aliosque locos*, *amnesque*, *deosque*,
 IS quibus est recto: sed et hæc dant *in* quoque quarto.

Sæpiùs *im*, *turris*, *puppis*, cum *reste securis*:
Em, sed et *im* quandōque, volunt sibi *febris*, *aqualis*,
 Et *navis*, *pelvis*, *clavis*; sic *lens*, *strigilis*que,
*Sementis*que, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,
 Sæpe et *Tros*, *Minos*, *heros*, quartum per *a* formant.
 EUS *ea* vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan*, cumque *æthère*, *delphin*.

Ablative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 44.

Sextus *e* vult: quibus at rectus per E clauditur *i* dant,
 (Propria ni fuerint:) AL et AR neutralia jungē.
 Deme *jubar*, *sal*, *far*, *par* fixum, *nectar*, et *hepar*.
 Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

I quoque dant *in* et *im* tantum facientia quarto.
Cannābis at *Bætis*, *Tigris*, voluistis utrumque.
Ym quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt.

Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, quæ quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit.
 Excipe sed *restis*, quod *e* semper, cum *cute*, donat.
 I magè *sementis*, *strigilis* petit, atque *securis*.
 Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi rarò.

Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i*: *finis*, cum *rure*, *supellex*,
Occiput et *vectis*: per UBI cum quæritur, *urbes*,
 Et *pugil* et *mugil* jungas. Per *e* sæpiùs effer,
I raro, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *anguis*, et *imber*,
Unguis, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, simul *amnis* et *ignis*.
 Usus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas
 Cultior. *I* tantum sexto retineto *canalis*.

Genitive Plural of the Third Declension, p. 45.

Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.
 Tolle *vigil*, *vetus*, *uber*, *inops*, *supplex*que, *memor*que,

Mugilis et *consors*, quibus et *pugil* et *celer* adde;
Atque gradus medios; (sed *ium plus* poscit.) Adhærent
His composita *genus*, *capio*, *facioque*, *caputque*.

Sextus *e* si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.
AS sed *ium* Latiale petit: polysyllaba deme,
Queis magis *um* placuit. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde
Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens: jungito et NS:
Tolle *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvenisque*, *canisque*.

Donat *ium* *Samnis*, *linter*, *caro*, *dos*, et *os ossis*,
Glis, *nix*, *noxque*, *cohors*, *mus*, *fauz*, *uter*: adde *Quiritem*,
Atque *larem*, *litem*, *cotem*, *cor*; compositumque
Uncia, quod simul *as* genuit: monosyllaba junge
Consõna quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* ritè *boum* dat.

Plural Cases of the Fourth Declension, p. 48.

Primus pluralis cum quarto semper in *us* fit.
Dat genitivus *uum*. Per *ibus* tibi tertius exit.
Partus ÛBUS, *specus*, *artus*, *acus*, dant, et *lacus*, *arcus*,
Atque *tribus*: sed utrumque *genu*, *portusque*, *veruque*.

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

Compositum simplexque modo flectuntur eodem.
Demitur *exsanguis*, nec non *Capricornus*, et *angi-*
portus, et orta *manus*: quæ pluræque postea dicam.

Compound nouns are declined like the simple nouns of which they are compounded; as, *bipes*, adj. two-footed, *bipèdis*; like *pes*, *pèdis*, m. a foot:—except *exsanguis*, *is*, adj. bloodless, dead; *capricornus*, *i*, m. the sign Capricorn; *angiportus*, *ús*, & *i*, m. a narrow lane; *unimānus*, *i*, that has one hand; *longimānus*, *i*, that has long hands, &c.

Rectum in compositis tantum variato: priorem
Immotum *alteruter* crebrò tenet, ac *olusatrum*.

The nominative only of a compound noun is declined, whether in one or in both of its parts; as, *juris-pēritus*, *juris-pēriti*, *juris-pērito*, &c. a lawyer: so, *tribunus-plebis*, a tribune of the commons; *senatūs-consultum*, *i*, a decree of the senate, &c.; *res-publica*, *rei-publicæ*, *rem-publicam*, &c. the commonwealth, a republic; *iusjurandum*, *iusjurandi*, &c. an oath, &c.—Except *altēr-ūter*, adj. *alter-utrius*, *alter-utri*, &c. and sometimes *alterius-utrius*, *alteri-utri*, &c. any one of two; *olus-ātrum*, *olus-ātri*, &c. and sometimes, *olēris-ātri*, the herb alisander.

III. RULES CONCERNING ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives wanting the Positive, p. 71.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo :
Ultimus, ulterior ; prior, et primus ; propiorque,
Proximus ; ocyor atque ocyssimus adjiciantur :
Deterior jungi quibus et *detrerrimus* ambit.

Adjectives wanting the Comparative, p. 71.

Orba gradu medio *nupërus, meritusque, novusque ;*
Par, sacer, invictus, persuasus, et inclÿtus adde.

Adjectives wanting the Superlative, p. 71.

Hæc Superante carent : *satur, et diuturnus, et ingens,*
Atque senex, juvënis, adolescens, pronus, opïmus ;
 Et finita *BILIS* propè cuncta, vel *ILIS, et ALIS :*
Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Adjectives wanting the Positive and Superlative, p. 71.

Anterior solum, sequior, satiorque leguntur.

IV. RULES CONCERNING VERBS.

Verbs of the First Conjugation wanting both Preterite
and Supine, p. 108.

———— *Labo, nexo, cum plico, nil dant.*

Verbs of the Second Conjugation wanting the Supine
p. 108.

Quod dat *UI* neutrum, *timeo, sileoque, supina*
Nulla dabunt. Valeo, placeo, caret, et licet aufer,
Paret, item jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque ;
Queis coălet, latet atque meret sociabis, oletque.

Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :
Quod retinent taceo, lateo, sobolique recusant.

————— *Viduata supinis*
SI capiunt urget, cum fulget, turget, et alget.

Verbs of the Second Conjugation, wanting both Preterite and Supine, p. 111.

Nil formant *lactet, livet, scateoque, renidet, Mæret, avet, pollet, flavet, cum denseo, glabret.*

Verbs of the Third Conjugation wanting the Supine; and some wanting also the Preterite, p. 113.

UO, p. 113.

Nulla Supina dabunt *metuo, pluo, congruo*, sicut *Annuo*, cum sociis; quibus *ingruo, respuo* junges.

BO, p. 114.—Scabo, lambo, carento supinis.

SCO, p. 114.

—————*Disco*

Vult *didici* primam geminans; sic *posco, poposci*; *Dispescit, compescit* *UI* dant; cuncta Supinis Orba. Nihil *glisco*, nihil Inceptiva creârunt.

DO, p. 116.

Tundo facit *tutūdi, tunsum*, compostāque *tusum*. Et *cado* vult *cecīdi, casum*: sed nata Supinum (*Incīdo* si demas, *recīdo*, simul *occīdo*) spernunt. Præterito *DI strido, rudo* dant, absque Supinis, *Sido*que, sed sobōli *sedeo* dat mutuū *sedi*.

GO, p. 118.

—————Nil *vergo* capessit.

XI clango, ningo dat, et *ango*, Supināque nulla.

Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation wanting the Supine, p. 124.

Cæcūtīt, gestīt, glocīt, et dementīt, ineptīt, Nulla Supina dabunt, cum *prosiīt* atque *ferocīt*.

Deponent Verbs wanting the Participle Perfect, p. 127.

Nil formant *vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor, Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteor*que: Queis demum adjungas *divertor, dequefetiscor*.

Verbs wanting the first person singular, p. 134.

Dor, furo, for, der, fer, vix unquam suscipit usus.

V. RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES, &c.

I. CONCERNING FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

A Vowel before another Vowel, p. 255.

Vocalem breviant aliâ subeunte Latini.

Ni capit *r*, *fio* produc : et nomina quintæ

E servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciēi*.

Anceps *ius* erit patrio : sed protrāhe *alius*.

Alterius brevia tantum ; commune sit *ohe*.

Pompēi, *Cāi*, produc, conformia jungens.

Dianam varia : longa *āer*, *dīus*, et *ēheu*,

Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *āi*.

Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

A Vowel long by Position, p. 256.

Si postponatur vocali consōna bina,

Aut duplex, longa est positu : sin utrāque vocem

Incipiat, rarò præeunti est ultima longa.

A Vowel before a Mute and a Liquid, p. 256.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllābâ eādē,

Quæ brevis antevēnit vocalis, redditur anceps.

Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviare memento.

Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, queis rarò jungimus *m*, *n*.

Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs, p. 257.

Vocalem efficiet semper Contractio longam.

Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis :

In Græcis semper : at *FRÆ* composta sequente

Vocali brevia ; velūti *præt* atque *præustus*.

Preterites and Supines, p. 257.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllāba longam.

Tolle *bibit*, *scīdit*, et *fīdit*, ac *tūlit*, ortāque *do*, *sto*.

Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,

Ut *pario*, *pēpēri* ; vetet id nisi consōna bina.

At quod *cædo* creat tardat, ceu *pedo*, secundam.

Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllāba longam :

Præter nata *sero*, *cio*, *lino*, cum *sino*, *sisto*,

Quæ breviant ; *eo*, *doque*, *ruo*, *queo* junge, *reorque*.

Cætera Præsentis mensuram verba reservant.

Excipe sed *pōsui* *pōsitum*, *gēnui* *gēnitumque*,

Et *pōtui* ; quæ dant quoque *solvo* et *volvo* Supina.

Præ *tum* vocalem polysyllaba cuncta Supina
 Producent, *ātum* quibus, *ētum* finis, et *ūtum* :
Ivi Præterito veniens sociabis et *itum*.
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.
 In *rus* Participi semper penultima longa est.

THE INCREASE OF NOUNS.

The Crements of the First, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions,
 p. 258.

Vocalis numero coëat nisi bina priore,
 Casibus obliquis non crescunt nomina primæ,
 Nec quæ quarta dedit, dedit aut inflexio quinta.

The Crements of the Second Declension, p. 258.

Quæ sequitur primam tantum producit *Ibēri*.

The Crements of the Third Declension, p. 259.

Semper A curtat *ātis* ternæ ; sit *dogmātis* index.

O breviabit *īnis* : sed porrigit *ēnis* et *ōnis*.
 Mensuram variant at in his gentilia quædam.

I breve mittit *itis*. Sed ab EC producitur *ēcis*.

In D crementum breve nomina pauca tulerunt.

AL mas curtat *ālis* ; sed neutrum protrahit *ālis*.
Elis cum *Sōlis* produc ; reliquis brevatis.

ON nimis incertum est : EN *īnis* rape : cætera produc.

Aris ab AR neutro produc : sed demito *bacchar*,
Par cum compositis, *jubar* his cum *nectāre* jungens.
 Protrahe *Nar Nāris*, *fūris*, *vēris*, *Recimēris*,
Byzer, *Ser*, et *Iber*, in *ter* Græcum, *æthēre* dempto.

Oris ab OR longum est : cum neutris corripe Græca.
Arbōris et *memōris* brevis, indictæque cuncta.

Atis ab AS tardant, *anātis* nisi, quæque Latina.
 Cætera, sed *vāsīs* dempto, correpta dabuntur.

ES patrium breviat : demas *locuplesque*, *quiesque*,
 Et *mansues*, *hæres*, *merces*, et Græca per *ētis*.

Corripit IS crescens patrium : sed porrige *gliris*,
 Et quod Romuleum genitivum format in *itis*,
 Et *Psophis*, *Crenis*, *Nesis*, Græcumque quod in dat.

OS patrii crementa dedit producta : sed aufer
Quæ tria correptis gaudent, *bos, compos, et impos.*

US crementa rapit : sed in *ūris*, et *ūtis*, et *ūdis*,
Quod præit u longum est : *Ligus* hinc at tolle, *pecusque*,
Intercusque. Gradus medius producit US *ōris*.

YS celerabit *ȳdos* : sed tardè proferet *ȳnis*.

Consona cūm præit S, patrii penultima curta est.
Hinc *Cyclops, seps, gryps, Cercops, plebs*, aufer, et *hydrops*.

T breve crementum patrii per *itis* sibi poscit.

Præ *gis* vocalem rapit X. Producito *lex, rex*.

EX *icis* abbreviat, *vibex* nisi. Cætera produc.

Præter *abax, smilax, atrax*, cum *dropæce*, et *anthrax*.

Fax, et *Atax, climaxque, panaxque, styraxque, colaxque* ;

Quæque *phylaxque, coraxque* creant, et cum *nece*, rectis

Orba suis, *vīcis* atque *prēcis* ; cum *appendice, fornix*,

Coxendix, chænixque, Cilix, natrīque, calixque,

Pix, et *onyx, ilix, histrix*, cum *mastīche, varix*,

Queis *Erȳcis, filicis, salicis, laricisque, nīvisque*,

Cappadōcis, calȳcis, cum *Narȳce, præcōce* nectes :

Adde *dūcis*, pariterque *crūcis, nūce* cum *trūce* junctis ;

At patrio variato *Syphax*, cum *Bebryce, sandix*.

The Crements of the Plural Number, p. 261.

Pluralis casus, si crescit, protrahit A, E,

Et simul O. *Būbus* dempto, sed corripit I, U.

THE INCREASE OF VERBS, p. 261.

A verbum crescens auctu producit in omni.

Excipe crementum *dāre* primum quod breve poscit.

E quoque producant verba incrementa : verūm

Prima E corripiunt ante *r* duo tempora ternæ.

Rēre sit et *rēris* longum, *bēris* at *bēre* curtum.

Semper E corripitur præ *ram, rim, roque* locatum.

Curtat et interdum *steterunt, dederuntque* Poëta.

Corripit I crescens verbum : sed deme *velimus*,

Nolimus, simus, quæque his sata cætera ; jungens

Ivi præteritum, prima incrementaque quartæ.

Præterito curtabis *imus* tamen undique : vates

Exacto variant *rimus, ritisque* futuro.

O produc verbis crescentibus ; U breve profer.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A final, p. 264.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in As fit.
Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ită*, cum *quiă*, et *ejă*,
Et *pută* non verbum, subduxeris, *hallequelujă*.
Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, et *ginta* creata.

E final, p. 264.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ
Cum natis. Addes pluralia cuncta : secundæ
Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis
Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.
Adde a mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi
Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.
Sed *beně* cum *malě* corripies, *inferně*, *superně*.
Productis *fermē* atque *ferē* jungantur, et *ohē*.

I final, p. 265.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.
His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.
Sic variato *mihi*, *tibi*, cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis
Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.
Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi* vates.

O final, p. 265.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
Græcâque ceu *Didō*, ternum sextumque secundæ
Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata
Quō jungens et *ēō*. Variant at *denuō*, *serō*,
Mutuō, *postremō*, *verō* : *modō* sed breve pones.
Sæpius *ambo*, *duo*, *scio* corripe, et *illicō* et *imō*,
Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* quis *homo*, cum *citō* junge.
Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
Ergō pro *causâ* produc : secus editur anceps.

U and Y final, p. 265.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, final, p. 266.

Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis-

L breve sit. Cum *sōl, sāl, nīl*, tolluntur Hebræa.

M p̄unc vocalis perimit : rapuêre vetusti.

R brevis. Produc cujus dat patrius *ēris* :

Addito *Ibēr, aēr, æthēr*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *pār, fār, lār, Nār*, quoque *cūr, fūr*, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit : nisi quondam Syncopa tardet.

C and N final, p. 266.

C produc, præter *nēc, donēc* : sed variabis

Hic bene pronomen : *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas EN *īnis* dans, quæque priore

Græca per ON casus numero tenuêre secundæ ;

Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.

Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :

Forsitān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn' insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS final, p. 266 & 267.

AS produc. Patrio sed *ādis* quod flectit, *anasque*,

Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corripe Græca

Quæ crescunt ; velut *ēs* de *sum* : *penēs* additur illi ;

Cum neutris ; et queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs, pēs*.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, et *compōs*, et *impōs*,

Osque ossis præbens. Rectos breviato secundæ,

(*O* nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito Graiūm.

IS, US, and YS final, p. 267.

IS brevio. Verūm plurales protraho casus ;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *ītis*, et *īnis*,

Aut *entis* ; *gratisque, foris, glīs, vīs* quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut et persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties *ītis* plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis

Ternæ vel quartæ produc ; numerique secundi

In quartâ primum, quartum, quintumque ; et in *ūrīs*

Dumve *ūtis* patrius, vel in *ūdis*, et *untis, ōdisve* est ;

Aut quintus fit in *u* ; longus tum rectus habetur.
Ergo produces venerabile nomen Iesus.

YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.
Longæque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus YN dant.

The last Syllable of a Verse, p. 267.

Ultima cujusque est communis Syllaba versûs.

III. THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

1. *The Quantity of Derivatives, p. 268.*

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :
Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio, rēgula, sēdes,*
Sēciûs, hūmanus, pēnuria, mōbilis, hūmor,
Jumentum, fōmes, primam producere gaudent.
Corripiunt sed *ārīsta, vādum, sōpor,* atque *lūcerna,*
Duxque dūcis, stābilisque, fīdes, dītioque, quāsillus,
Nata licet longis ; quæ pluræque suggeret usus.

2. *The Quantity of Compounds, p. 268, &c.*

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,
Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.
At breviant *nihilum,* cum *pejēro, dejēro,* nec non
Veridīcus, sociis junctis, et *semisōpitus.*
Cognītus his addes, velut *agnītus, innūbus,* atque
Pronūbus : at longis *ambītus* mobile junges,
Imbēcillus item ; sed *connubium* variabis.

Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,
Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.

Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.
At rape quæ *fundus, fugio, neptisque, neposque,*
Et *festum, fari, fateor, fanumque* creârunt.
Hiæc *prōfectò* addes, pariterque *prōcella, prōtervus,*
Atque *prōpago* genus ; *prōpago* protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum *propago, profundo* :
Cum *pello, curo* genitis, *Proserpina* junge.

SE produc et DI, præter *dīrimo* atque *dīsertus.*
Est RE breve : at viduum personis protrahe *rēfert.*

Pars si componens fini prior *i* vel *o* donat, *Arctōphylaxque.*

I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.
Idem masculineum produc, et *ubique*, et *ibidem* ;
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composita *diei*.
 His *intro*, *retro*, *controque* et *quando* creata
 (*Quandōquidem* excepto,) bene junxeris, atque *aliōquin*,
 Quæque per o magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

Synalæpha and *Ecthlipsis*, pp. 277 and 278.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis* et in quoque tollit,
 Altera cūm voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

Synæresis and *Diæresis*, pp. 278 and 279.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

Systölè and *Diastölè*, p. 279.

Systōla præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastōla* corripiendas.

FIGURES OF DICTION, p. 279.

PROSTHĒSIS *apponit capiti, sed* APHÆRĒSIS *aufert.*
 SYNCŌPA *de medio tollit, sed* EPENTHĒSIS *addit.*
Abstrahit APOCŌPE *fini, sed dat* PARAGŌGE.
Constringit CRASIS, *distracta* DIÆRĒSIS *effert.*
Litera si legitur transposta, METATHĒSIS erit.
ANTITHĒSIN dices, tibi litera si varietur.

FINIS.

1

1

1

1

1

MAR 4 - 1930



MAR 4 - 1930

MAR 4 - 1930

MAR 4 - 1930

